

# Vibe 4.0.6 Administration Guide

March 2019

## **Legal Notice**

For information about legal notices, trademarks, disclaimers, warranties, export and other use restrictions, U.S. Government rights, patent policy, and FIPS compliance, see <https://www.microfocus.com/about/legal/>.

**Copyright © 2016 – 2019 Micro Focus or one of its affiliates.**

---

# Contents

<b>About This Guide</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Part I Site Setup</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>1 Logging In as the Vibe Site Administrator</b>	<b>17</b>
Logging In	17
Changing the Vibe Administrator User ID or Password	17
Changing the Administrator Password	17
Changing the Administrator User ID and Other Profile Information	18
Creating Additional Vibe Administrators	18
Assigning Administrative Rights to a User or Group	19
Creating an Administration Group	19
<b>2 Planning and Controlling User Access to Workspaces and Folders</b>	<b>21</b>
Understanding Access Control	21
Inheritance	22
Navigation	22
Default Access Control Behavior in Workspaces	23
Default User Rights	23
Default Roles	23
Default Users and Groups	25
Controlling User Access in Workspaces	26
Controlling User Access to Personal Workspaces	26
Controlling User Access to Team Workspaces	27
Controlling User Access to Global Workspaces	28
Controlling User Access throughout the Vibe Site	29
Controlling User Access to Administrative Functions	29
Controlling User Access to Workspaces, Folders, and Entries	30
Managing Roles to Refine Access Control	31
Defining a New Role	31
Modifying Existing Roles	34
Deleting Existing Roles	35
Understanding the Various Rights for Roles	36
Restricting Access Rights of Users Outside the Firewall	38
Creating a New Role Condition	38
Associating the Role Condition with a New or Existing Role	40
Assigning the Role Condition to Users and Groups	40
Example	41
Enabling Users to Send Messages to All Users	41
Enabling Users to Send Messages to All Users	41
Enabling Users to Access Entries via the Workspace Tree When They Do Not Have Access to the Parent Folder or Workspace	42
Enabling Folder Administrators to Apply Definition Settings to Sub-Folders and Entries	43
<b>3 Setting Up Initial Workspaces</b>	<b>45</b>
Understanding Workspaces	45
Setting Up Users' Personal Workspaces	46

Understanding Personal Workspaces . . . . .	46
Customizing the Default Personal Workspace View . . . . .	47
Enabling Users to Create Landing Pages on Personal Workspaces . . . . .	49
Customizing the Default User Profile View . . . . .	50
Adding LDAP Elements to the User Profile View . . . . .	55
Customizing the Default Profile Quick View . . . . .	55
Managing Team Workspaces . . . . .	57
Understanding Team Workspaces . . . . .	57
Creating a Team Workspace Root Workspace . . . . .	58
Creating a Team Workspace . . . . .	58
Managing Share Rights for Team Workspaces . . . . .	58
Deleting Top-Level Team Workspaces . . . . .	58
Viewing Team Membership of Top-Level Team Workspaces . . . . .	59
Creating Global Workspaces . . . . .	60
Using Workspace and Folder Templates . . . . .	60
Understanding Templates . . . . .	61
Understanding Default Workspace and Folder Templates . . . . .	62
Creating Workspace and Folder Templates . . . . .	64
Importing Workspaces . . . . .	67

#### **4 Setting Up Site-Wide Customizations 69**

Creating High-Level Landing Pages . . . . .	69
Creating a Site-Wide Brand . . . . .	69
Setting a Default Home Page . . . . .	71
Setting a Default Home Page for All Licensed Vibe Users . . . . .	71
Setting a Default Home Page for Guest Users . . . . .	72
Removing the Default Home Page . . . . .	74
Re-Branding the Login Dialog Box . . . . .	75
Enabling User ID Auto-Completion for the Login Dialog Box . . . . .	75
Customizing Vibe Styles . . . . .	76
Customizing Icons on Your Vibe Site . . . . .	77
Replacing Existing Icons . . . . .	77
Adding New Icons . . . . .	78
Configuring How Items Are Displayed in the What's New Page . . . . .	79
Understanding the Configuration Settings You Can Customize for the What's New Page . . . . .	79
Changing the Configuration Settings for the What's New Page . . . . .	81
Sorting Names throughout the Vibe Site by Last Name . . . . .	82
Managing How Group Names Are Displayed during Name Completion . . . . .	83
Changing the Number of Recent Places That Are Displayed . . . . .	84
Configuring File Associations for Edit in Place Applications . . . . .	84
Changing Global File Associations for Edit in Place Applications . . . . .	85
Configuring Vibe to Support Additional File Types for Edit in Place Applications . . . . .	85
Understanding and Configuring Search Functionality . . . . .	86
Removing Frequently Used Words That Have No Inherent Meaning . . . . .	86
Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word . . . . .	87
Searching for Words That Contain Accents . . . . .	87
Increasing the Number of Words That Are Indexed for Each Document . . . . .	87
Modifying Configuration Settings . . . . .	87
Supported Languages for Indexing and Searching for the Root Form of Words . . . . .	92
Understanding and Configuring Document Conversions with Micro Focus KeyView . . . . .	93
Configuring Which File Formats Can Be Viewed as HTML . . . . .	93
Excluding File Types from Being Indexed . . . . .	93
Customizing the Simple URL Prefix . . . . .	94

<b>5</b>	<b>Setting Up User Access to the Vibe Site</b>	<b>97</b>
	Adding New Users to Your Vibe Site . . . . .	97
	Creating Groups of Users . . . . .	97
	Creating Static Groups . . . . .	98
	Creating Dynamic Groups . . . . .	99
	Restricting Groups of Users from Seeing One Another . . . . .	103
	Allowing Guest Access to Your Vibe Site . . . . .	104
	Guest Access Limitations . . . . .	104
	Understanding the Guest User . . . . .	105
	Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site . . . . .	105
	Configuring Any Workspace to Be the Default Home Page for Guest Users . . . . .	107
	Enabling Individual Users to Grant Guest Access throughout the Vibe Site . . . . .	107
	Monitoring Guest User Access . . . . .	108
	Allowing Users Limited External Access to Your Vibe Site . . . . .	108
	Allowing Web Crawler Access to Your Vibe Site . . . . .	108
	Disabling User Access to the Vibe Site on the Web . . . . .	109
	Disabling Access for All Users . . . . .	109
	Disabling or Enabling Access for Individual Users . . . . .	110
	Disabling or Enabling Access for Individual Groups . . . . .	111
	Managing Mobile Device Access to Your Vibe Site . . . . .	111
	Restricting Mobile Device Access to Your Vibe Site . . . . .	112
	Changing the Default View for Tablets . . . . .	112
	Configuring Mobile Device Access with NetIQ Access Manager . . . . .	114
<b>6</b>	<b>Configuring Single Sign-On to the Vibe Site</b>	<b>115</b>
	Configuring Single Sign-On with NetIQ Access Manager . . . . .	115
	Configuring Single Sign-On with KeyShield . . . . .	115
	Prerequisites . . . . .	115
	(Conditional) Allowing the Authorization Connectors to Access the API Key . . . . .	116
	Configuring Vibe for KeyShield SSO Support . . . . .	116
	KeyShield Attribute Alias Support . . . . .	119
	Configuring Two-Factor Authentication . . . . .	120
	Downloading and Installing the KeyShield SSO SSL Certificate . . . . .	121
	Testing the KeyShield SSO Configuration . . . . .	123
<b>7</b>	<b>Setting Up Sharing</b>	<b>125</b>
	Understanding Sharing . . . . .	125
	Understanding External Users . . . . .	125
	Users Can't Grant Share Roles That They Don't Have . . . . .	125
	Enabling Users to Share . . . . .	126
	Enabling Sharing for All Users . . . . .	127
	Modifying Share Rights on a User Basis . . . . .	130
	Enabling Sharing on Workspaces . . . . .	131
	Enabling Sharing for Top-Level Global Workspaces . . . . .	131
	Enabling Sharing for Top-Level Team Workspaces . . . . .	133
	Managing Shares . . . . .	135
	Managing Shares for the Vibe Site . . . . .	135
	Managing Individual Shares . . . . .	136
<b>8</b>	<b>Allowing Access to the Vibe Site through NetIQ Access Manager</b>	<b>137</b>
	Configuring a Protected Resource for a Micro Focus Vibe Server . . . . .	137
	Configuring the Micro Focus Vibe Server to Trust the Access Gateway . . . . .	137
	Configuring a Reverse-Proxy Single Sign-On Service for Micro Focus Vibe . . . . .	139
	Forwarding Cache Control Headers . . . . .	143

<b>9</b>	<b>Providing File Access and Editing for Vibe Users</b>	<b>145</b>
	Vibe Desktop Application for Windows and Mac . . . . .	145
	Providing Access to the Vibe Desktop Application . . . . .	145
	Vibe Desktop—Server Configuration . . . . .	146
	Vibe Desktop—Windows Configuration . . . . .	149
	Load Balancing Vibe Desktop and the Vibe Add-In for MS Office Traffic . . . . .	154
	Vibe Add-in for Microsoft Office: . . . . .	156
	Providing Access to the Vibe Add-in for MS Office . . . . .	156
	Configuring Vibe to Allow MS Office Add-in Usage . . . . .	156
	Web Browser Access to Files Through Edit-in-Place . . . . .	157
	MS URI-Based File Editing . . . . .	157
	Vibe URI-Based File Editing . . . . .	157
	Mobile App Access to Files . . . . .	158
	Distributing File-Access Applications to Users . . . . .	158
	Providing Application Downloads from the Vibe Server . . . . .	159
	Providing Application Downloads from a Non-Vibe Web Server . . . . .	161
<b>10</b>	<b>Configuring Email Integration</b>	<b>163</b>
	Enabling/Disabling Outbound Emailing of Folder Digests . . . . .	163
	Disabling/Enabling Inbound Email Postings . . . . .	164
<b>11</b>	<b>Configuring Weekends and Holidays</b>	<b>167</b>
	Configuring Vibe to Recognize Weekends and Holidays . . . . .	167
	Using Weekend and Holiday Information in Tasks and Workflows . . . . .	168
	When Calculating Task Durations . . . . .	168
	When Configuring Workflow Transitions . . . . .	168
<b>12</b>	<b>Configuring Real-Time Communication Tools</b>	<b>169</b>
	Integrating Messenger with Vibe . . . . .	169
	Defining an Allowed Service User in ConsoleOne . . . . .	169
	Configuring Messenger Integrations in the Vibe Installation Program . . . . .	169
	Configuring Presence . . . . .	170
	Integrating Skype with Vibe . . . . .	170
<b>13</b>	<b>Enabling Custom JSPs to Be Used on Your Vibe Site</b>	<b>171</b>
	Enabling JSP Files to Be Used on Your Vibe Site . . . . .	171
	Dynamically Updating JSP Files by Running Vibe in Development Mode . . . . .	171
	Using Sample Custom JSPs to Modify the Behavior of a Landing Page . . . . .	172
	Listing Folder Entry Titles in a Bulleted List . . . . .	172
	Displaying Entry Replies on a Landing Page . . . . .	173
	Enabling Users to Take a Survey Directly from a Landing Page . . . . .	173
<b>14</b>	<b>Enabling Custom JAR Files to Be Used on Your Vibe Site</b>	<b>175</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>Adding Software Extensions to Your Vibe Site</b>	<b>177</b>
	Creating a Software Extension . . . . .	177
	Deploying the Extension in Your Vibe Site . . . . .	177
	Viewing Your Vibe Extensions . . . . .	178
	Removing an Extension from Your Vibe Site . . . . .	179

<b>16 Using Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site</b>	<b>181</b>
Adding a Remote Application to Your Vibe Site	181
Creating an Application Group	183
Managing Access Controls for Remote Applications	184
Implementing Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site	185
<b>17 Setting Up Mirrored Folders</b>	<b>187</b>
Manually Setting Up More Than Three Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers	187
Editing the installer.xml File	187
Updating Your Vibe Site Configuration	189
Creating a Mirrored Files Folder for a Mirrored Folder Resource Driver	190
<b>18 Setting Up Zones (Virtual Vibe Sites)</b>	<b>193</b>
Creating a New Vibe Zone	193
Configuring DNS to Support the New Zone	194
Accessing the New Zone	195
Setting Up Access Control for the New Zone	195
<b>19 Managing a Multiple-Language Vibe Site</b>	<b>197</b>
Accommodating Multiple Languages	197
Understanding the Vibe Site Default Language	197
Setting Up a Multilingual Workspace Name	197
Changing the Default Language on the Login Page	198
Adding a New Language	198
Current Language Availability	198
Text to Translate	199
New Language Implementation	199
<b>Part II Site Maintenance</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>20 Managing Users</b>	<b>203</b>
Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory	203
Configuring an LDAP Connection	204
Configuring LDAP Synchronization	211
Restricting Local User Accounts from Logging In	213
Synchronizing Additional LDAP Attributes	214
Allowing Users to Log In When the LDAP Server is Down	215
Previewing and Running the LDAP Synchronization	216
Viewing Synchronization Results	217
Deleting an LDAP Configuration	217
Setting a Default Time and Locale for Non-LDAP and External Users	217
Creating a New Local User	218
Listing Vibe Users	218
Filtering Users	218
Navigating to a User's Individual Workspace	219
Adding Local Users	219
Modifying a User's Profile Information	219
Renaming a Vibe User	220
Renaming a Vibe User from LDAP	220
Renaming a Local Vibe User	220
Deleting a Vibe User	221

Deleting a Local User . . . . .	221
Deleting an LDAP User . . . . .	222
Disabling Vibe User Accounts . . . . .	222
Limiting User Visibility . . . . .	223
Creating User Visibility Limitations . . . . .	223
Managing Local Users and Groups by Importing Profile Files . . . . .	224
Enabling Users to Bypass the XSS Security Filter . . . . .	224
Enabling Groups to Bypass the XSS Security Filter . . . . .	225
Enabling Individual Users to Bypass the XSS Security Filter . . . . .	225
<b>21 Managing Groups . . . . .</b>	<b>227</b>
Creating Groups . . . . .	227
Modifying Groups . . . . .	227
Deleting Groups . . . . .	228
<b>22 Managing Workspaces . . . . .</b>	<b>229</b>
Exporting/Importing Workspaces, Folders, and Entries . . . . .	229
Understanding the Export and Import Process . . . . .	229
Exporting Workspaces . . . . .	232
Importing Workspaces . . . . .	232
Exporting Folders . . . . .	233
Importing Folders . . . . .	233
Exporting Folder Entries . . . . .	234
Importing Folder Entries . . . . .	234
Managing Workspace Disk Space Usage . . . . .	235
Modifying the Title, Description, and Branding of the Personal Workspaces Workspace . . . . .	235
Modifying the Title and Description . . . . .	235
Modifying the Brand . . . . .	235
<b>23 Managing Disk Space Usage with Data Quotas and File Restrictions . . . . .</b>	<b>237</b>
Understanding the Types of Data Quotas . . . . .	237
Understanding User Data Quotas . . . . .	237
Understanding Workspace and Folder Data Quotas . . . . .	238
Understanding Data Quota Behavior and Exclusions . . . . .	238
Understanding Default Data Quota Behavior . . . . .	238
Understanding Data Quota Exclusions . . . . .	239
Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas . . . . .	239
Enabling Workspace and Folder Data Quotas . . . . .	239
Setting Quotas on Workspaces and Folders . . . . .	240
Validating Workspace and Folder Quotas . . . . .	241
Managing User Data Quotas . . . . .	242
Planning User Data Quotas . . . . .	242
Setting User Data Quotas . . . . .	243
Modifying User Data Quotas . . . . .	246
Removing User Data Quotas . . . . .	249
Managing Your Personal Data Quota . . . . .	251
Monitoring User Data Quotas . . . . .	252
General Data Quota Management . . . . .	252
Configuring Data Quotas to Be Less Strict . . . . .	252
Permanently Deleting Files from the Trash . . . . .	253
Managing the File Upload Size Limit . . . . .	253
Modifying the File Upload Size Limit for the Vibe Site . . . . .	254
Setting a File Upload Size Limit for Individual Users and Groups . . . . .	254
Setting a File Upload Size Limit for Individual Workspaces and Folders . . . . .	255

Setting a Maximum Number of Versions for Each File . . . . .	255
Automatically Deleting Old File Versions . . . . .	255
<b>24 Managing Workspace and Folder Templates</b>	<b>257</b>
Creating Workspace and Folder Templates . . . . .	257
Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates . . . . .	257
Deleting the Template . . . . .	258
Exporting the Template . . . . .	258
Renaming the Template . . . . .	259
Adding an Existing Workspace Template . . . . .	259
Adding an Existing Folder Template . . . . .	259
Removing a Folder Template or Workspace Template from the Template . . . . .	260
Adding Access Controls to the Template . . . . .	260
Adding a Data Quota to the Template . . . . .	260
Changing the Default View for the Template . . . . .	260
Changing the Title, Description, Brand, and Icon for the Template . . . . .	261
Modifying the Accessory Panel for the Template . . . . .	261
Exporting Templates . . . . .	261
Exporting a Single Template . . . . .	261
Exporting Multiple Templates . . . . .	262
Importing Templates . . . . .	263
Reverting All Templates to the Factory Default . . . . .	263
<b>25 Creating and Managing Workflows</b>	<b>265</b>
Creating Global Workflows . . . . .	265
Downloading Existing Custom Forms and Workflows . . . . .	266
<b>26 Viewing and Updating the Vibe License</b>	<b>267</b>
Viewing the Vibe License . . . . .	267
Updating the Vibe License . . . . .	267
<b>27 Managing Email Configuration</b>	<b>269</b>
Configuring Outbound Email with TLS over SMTP . . . . .	269
Customizing Email Templates . . . . .	270
About Vibe's Email Templates . . . . .	270
Tips and Documentation . . . . .	270
Modifying the Template Files . . . . .	271
A Video Walkthrough . . . . .	271
Configuring the Field that Vibe Uses When Sending Emails . . . . .	271
Configuring the Number of Users Who Can Be Included in the Same Email Notification . . . . .	272
Configuring Vibe to Send Email Messages and Notifications from a Custom Address . . . . .	273
Configuring a Zone-Specific Email Address for Sent Messages . . . . .	273
Configuring a Site-Wide Email Address for Sent Messages . . . . .	274
Enabling Users to Configure a Folder or External Email Address to Receive Sent Emails . . . . .	275
Displaying the User's Profile Picture in Email Notifications . . . . .	275
<b>28 Managing the Lucene Index</b>	<b>277</b>
Starting and Stopping the Lucene Index Server . . . . .	277
On Linux . . . . .	277
On Windows . . . . .	277
Changing Your Lucene Configuration . . . . .	277

Optimizing the Lucene Index . . . . .	278
Optimizing a Single Search Index . . . . .	278
Optimizing the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers . . . . .	279
Rebuilding the Lucene Index . . . . .	279
Rebuilding a Single Search Index . . . . .	279
Rebuilding the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers . . . . .	280
Performing Maintenance on a High Availability Lucene Index . . . . .	281
<b>29 Managing Database Logs and File Archives</b>	<b>283</b>
Managing Database Logs . . . . .	283
Managing File Archiving . . . . .	284
<b>30 Backing Up Vibe Data</b>	<b>285</b>
Locating Vibe Data to Back Up . . . . .	285
Vibe File Repository . . . . .	285
Vibe Database . . . . .	285
Lucene Index . . . . .	286
Certificates . . . . .	286
Scheduling and Performing Backups . . . . .	287
Restoring Vibe Data from Backup . . . . .	287
Manually Restoring Individual Entries . . . . .	287
<b>31 Monitoring the Vibe Site</b>	<b>289</b>
Using JMX to Monitor the Vibe Site . . . . .	289
Installing and Configuring JMX for Vibe . . . . .	289
Requiring Authentication When Accessing Vibe through JMX . . . . .	290
Using JConsole to Monitor the Vibe Site . . . . .	291
Generating Reports . . . . .	292
Login Report . . . . .	293
User Activity Report . . . . .	294
User Access Report . . . . .	296
Content Modification Report . . . . .	298
Data Quota Exceeded Report . . . . .	300
Data Quota Highwater Exceeded Report . . . . .	301
Disk Usage Report . . . . .	302
Email Report . . . . .	303
License Report . . . . .	304
XSS Report . . . . .	305
Using Log Files . . . . .	306
Vibe Log File . . . . .	306
Tomcat Log File . . . . .	307
Checking the Vibe Site Software Version . . . . .	308
<b>32 Reconfiguring the Vibe Site</b>	<b>309</b>
Basic Installation . . . . .	309
Advanced Installation . . . . .	309

<b>Part III Interoperability</b>	<b>311</b>
<b>33 NetIQ Access Manager</b>	<b>313</b>
<b>34 Internet Information Services (IIS)</b>	<b>315</b>
<b>35 Micro Focus GroupWise</b>	<b>317</b>
<b>36 GroupWise Messenger</b>	<b>319</b>
<b>37 Skype</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>38 Twitter and Other Remote Applications</b>	<b>323</b>
<b>39 YouTube</b>	<b>325</b>
<b>Part IV Site Security</b>	<b>327</b>
<b>40 Security Administration</b>	<b>329</b>
Dealing with Security Scan Results . . . . .	329
Securing LDAP Synchronization . . . . .	330
Understanding How Vibe Uses the Root Certificate for Your eDirectory Tree . . . . .	330
Generating a Root Certificate in ConsoleOne . . . . .	330
Importing the Root Certificate into the Java Keystore . . . . .	331
Securing Email Transfer . . . . .	331
Securing HTTP Browser Connections . . . . .	332
Preparing for Secure HTTP Connections . . . . .	332
Implementing Secure HTTP Connections . . . . .	336
Forcing Secure HTTP Connections . . . . .	336
Defaulting to Secure HTTP URLs . . . . .	338
Securing against Brute-Force Attacks with CAPTCHA . . . . .	340
Securing User Passwords . . . . .	341
Securing Web Service Connections . . . . .	342
Securing Tomcat . . . . .	343
Requiring That External Users Accept Terms and Conditions . . . . .	343
Vibe Sanitizes HTML to Prevent Security Risks . . . . .	344
HTML Elements . . . . .	344
HTML Element Attributes . . . . .	344
Conditional HTML Element Attributes . . . . .	345
CSS Style Properties . . . . .	346
<b>41 Security Policies</b>	<b>349</b>
Securing the Vibe Data . . . . .	349
Limiting Physical Access to Vibe Servers . . . . .	349
Protecting the Vibe File Repository . . . . .	349
Protecting the Vibe Database . . . . .	349
Securing the Vibe Software . . . . .	350
Protecting the Vibe Configuration Files . . . . .	350
Protecting the Vibe Properties File . . . . .	350
Protecting Log Files . . . . .	350

Protecting the Vibe Process on Linux . . . . .	351
Securing the Vibe Site. . . . .	351
Configuring a Proxy Server . . . . .	351
Setting the Vibe Administrator Password . . . . .	351
Setting Up SSL Connections . . . . .	351
Shortening the Vibe Session Timeout . . . . .	352
Using Role-Based Access Control . . . . .	352
Monitoring Inbound Email . . . . .	352
Preventing Web Services Access. . . . .	352
Controlling RSS Feeds. . . . .	352
Securing Mirrored Folders . . . . .	353
Securing the Vibe Site against XSS. . . . .	353

**Part V Appendices 355**

**A Managing Product Improvement 357**

Accessing the Product Improvement Dialog. . . . .	357
About the Data That Is Collected for Product Improvement . . . . .	357
How Micro Focus Receives Product Improvement Data. . . . .	358

# About This Guide

The *Micro Focus Vibe 4 Administration Guide* provides administration information for Micro Focus Vibe 4.

- ◆ Part I, “Site Setup,” on page 15
- ◆ Part II, “Site Maintenance,” on page 201
- ◆ Part III, “Interoperability,” on page 311
- ◆ Part IV, “Site Security,” on page 327
- ◆ Part V, “Appendixes,” on page 355

## Audience

This guide is intended for Micro Focus Vibe administrators.

## Feedback

We want to hear your comments and suggestions about this manual and the other documentation included with this product. Please use the User Comments feature at the bottom of each page of the online documentation.

## Documentation Updates

For the most recent version of the *Micro Focus Vibe 4 Administration Guide* and other documentation, visit the [Micro Focus Vibe 4 Documentation website \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4).

## Additional Documentation

You can find more information in the Micro Focus Vibe documentation, which is accessible from the [Micro Focus Vibe 4 Documentation website \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4).

To access the *Micro Focus Vibe 4 User Guide* from within Vibe, click the **Settings** icon, then click **Help**.



# Site Setup

- ◆ Chapter 1, “Logging In as the Vibe Site Administrator,” on page 17
- ◆ Chapter 2, “Planning and Controlling User Access to Workspaces and Folders,” on page 21
- ◆ Chapter 3, “Setting Up Initial Workspaces,” on page 45
- ◆ Chapter 4, “Setting Up Site-Wide Customizations,” on page 69
- ◆ Chapter 5, “Setting Up User Access to the Vibe Site,” on page 97
- ◆ Chapter 6, “Configuring Single Sign-On to the Vibe Site,” on page 115
- ◆ Chapter 7, “Setting Up Sharing,” on page 125
- ◆ Chapter 8, “Allowing Access to the Vibe Site through NetIQ Access Manager,” on page 137
- ◆ Chapter 9, “Providing File Access and Editing for Vibe Users,” on page 145
- ◆ Chapter 10, “Configuring Email Integration,” on page 163
- ◆ Chapter 11, “Configuring Weekends and Holidays,” on page 167
- ◆ Chapter 12, “Configuring Real-Time Communication Tools,” on page 169
- ◆ Chapter 13, “Enabling Custom JSPs to Be Used on Your Vibe Site,” on page 171
- ◆ Chapter 14, “Enabling Custom JAR Files to Be Used on Your Vibe Site,” on page 175
- ◆ Chapter 15, “Adding Software Extensions to Your Vibe Site,” on page 177
- ◆ Chapter 16, “Using Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site,” on page 181
- ◆ Chapter 17, “Setting Up Mirrored Folders,” on page 187
- ◆ Chapter 18, “Setting Up Zones (Virtual Vibe Sites),” on page 193
- ◆ Chapter 19, “Managing a Multiple-Language Vibe Site,” on page 197



# 1 Logging In as the Vibe Site Administrator

After logging in to the Micro Focus Vibe site, you should reset the Vibe administrator's password. Also, you might want to create additional Vibe administrators.

- ♦ [“Logging In” on page 17](#)
- ♦ [“Changing the Vibe Administrator User ID or Password” on page 17](#)
- ♦ [“Creating Additional Vibe Administrators” on page 18](#)

## Logging In

After installing and configuring Vibe, you need to log in to the Vibe site to perform additional administrative tasks.

- 1 In your web browser, specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://vibe_hostname  
https://vibe_hostname
```

Replace *vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

- 2 If this is the first time you have logged in to the Vibe site, log in using `admin` as the login name and `admin` as the password.

The Change Password dialog box is automatically displayed when you first log in to the Vibe site.

If this is not your first time logging in, log in using `admin` as the login name and your password.

## Changing the Vibe Administrator User ID or Password

When you first install Micro Focus Vibe, the Vibe administrator user name is `admin` and the password is `admin`. When you first log in to the Vibe site as the administrator, you should change the administrator password from the default password to a secure password of your own choosing.

- ♦ [“Changing the Administrator Password” on page 17](#)
- ♦ [“Changing the Administrator User ID and Other Profile Information” on page 18](#)

## Changing the Administrator Password

You can change your password to a new password at any time:

- 1 In your web browser, specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

`http://vibe_hostname:8080`  
`https://vibe_hostname:8443`

Replace `vibe_hostname` with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

- 2 (Conditional) If this is your first time accessing the site, log in using `admin` as the login name and `admin` as the password.

The Change Password dialog box is automatically displayed when you first log in to the Vibe site.

- 3 (Conditional) If this is not your first time accessing the site, log in using the administrator user name and password, then change your password as described in “[Changing Your Password](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

## Changing the Administrator User ID and Other Profile Information

You might want to change the administrator User ID in addition to other information on the administrator’s user profile.

- ♦ **User ID:** As a security precaution, it might make sense to change the administrator’s user ID from the default `admin`. The administrator user ID is used only when logging in to the Vibe system.

Changing the administrator user ID requires that you restart each Vibe appliance in the Vibe system in order for the change to take effect.

- ♦ **First Name and Last Name:** Providing a first and last name for the administrator changes the name that appears in the upper-right corner of each Vibe page, as well as the name that appears in the administration console under **Administrators**.

To change the Vibe administrator user ID, as well as other profile information, follow the steps in “[Modifying Your Profile](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

## Creating Additional Vibe Administrators

Only the original (built-in) Vibe administrator can add or remove site administrator rights for users and groups.

Additional Vibe administrators have rights to administer the following:

- ♦ Users
- ♦ Groups
- ♦ Mobile Devices
- ♦ “[Assigning Administrative Rights to a User or Group](#)” on page 19
- ♦ “[Creating an Administration Group](#)” on page 19

# Assigning Administrative Rights to a User or Group

- 1 Log in to Vibe as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://vibe_hostname:8080
https://vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *vibe\_hostname* with the host name or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Administrators**.
- 4 Click **Add**, then begin typing the name of the user or group for whom you want to grant administrator rights.
- 5 Click the user or group name when it appears in the drop-down list.

To remove administrator rights from a user or group:

- 1 Select the users or groups for whom you want to remove administrator rights.
- 2 Click **Remove**.

## Creating an Administration Group

You can create an administration group and assign rights only to that group:

- 1 Log in to Vibe as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://vibe_hostname:8080
https://vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *vibe\_hostname* with the host name or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Create an administration group, described in [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#).

- 3 Assign administrator rights to that group, as described in [“Assigning Administrative Rights to a User or Group” on page 19.](#)
- 4 When you want to grant administrative rights to a user, add that user to the administrator group that you created. (For information about how to add users to a group, see [“Modifying Groups” on page 227.](#))

# 2 Planning and Controlling User Access to Workspaces and Folders

As the administrator for the Micro Focus Vibe site, you are responsible for setting up and controlling user access across the entire site. Even though workspace and folder owners are responsible for controlling user access in their individual workspaces and folders, you as the Vibe administrator have the ability to create new roles, modify existing roles, and change default access control settings for all types of workspaces and for all types of functions across the Vibe site.

- ♦ [“Understanding Access Control” on page 21](#)
- ♦ [“Controlling User Access in Workspaces” on page 26](#)
- ♦ [“Controlling User Access throughout the Vibe Site” on page 30](#)
- ♦ [“Managing Roles to Refine Access Control” on page 31](#)
- ♦ [“Restricting Access Rights of Users Outside the Firewall” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [“Enabling Users to Send Messages to All Users” on page 41](#)
- ♦ [“Enabling Users to Send Messages to All Users” on page 41](#)
- ♦ [“Enabling Users to Access Entries via the Workspace Tree When They Do Not Have Access to the Parent Folder or Workspace” on page 42](#)
- ♦ [“Enabling Folder Administrators to Apply Definition Settings to Sub-Folders and Entries” on page 43](#)

## Understanding Access Control

Access control is how you specify which users have the right to perform which tasks in which places. Because your Micro Focus Vibe site is a hierarchy of workspaces and folders and because access control settings can be inherited (or not), access control settings affect a variety of Vibe features

Micro Focus Vibe uses role-based access control. By default, there are seven roles, and each role contains specific rights. If you want a particular user to have certain rights, you can assign that user to the appropriate role.

For example, a user who has been assigned to the Participant role in a workspace or folder can add comments or replies, create entries, delete his or her own entries, modify his or her own entries, and read entries in that folder or workspace.

The following sections help you better understand how access control works in Vibe.

- ♦ [“Inheritance” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [“Navigation” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [“Default Access Control Behavior in Workspaces” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [“Default User Rights” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [“Default Roles” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [“Default Users and Groups” on page 25](#)

# Inheritance

Workspaces can inherit the access control settings of their parent workspaces. You should understand the following facts about access control inheritance:

- ◆ If you create a new workspace under an existing workspace that is inheriting its access control settings from its parent, the new workspace continues the inheritance chain. If you change any access control settings above the new workspace at a later time, the access control settings for the new workspace also change. Global workspaces inherit access control settings from the parent workspace by default.
- ◆ If you create a new workspace under an existing workspace that is not inheriting its access control settings, the new workspace retains the non-inherited settings of the parent workspace.
- ◆ If you move a workspace that is inheriting its access control settings from its original parent workspace, it inherits the access control settings of the new parent workspace into which it is moved. If the new parent workspace has different settings than the original parent workspace, the access control settings for the moved workspace change accordingly.
- ◆ Team membership is inherited separately from access control settings. If access control settings are being inherited, this does not necessarily mean that team membership is also being inherited. To edit team membership or to change the team membership inheritance settings for a team workspace, click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Edit Team**.

# Navigation

As a best practice, you should not grant users access to sub-workspaces and sub-folders while restricting access for the same users to the higher-level (parent) folders. Ignoring this best practice can be problematic for the following reasons:

- ◆ Users cannot navigate to the sub-workspace or sub-folder using the Workspace tree navigation, even though they have appropriate rights to the sub-workspace or sub-folder.

If you understand this limitation and still have a need to restrict access to a parent workspace or folder while granting access to a sub-workspace or sub-folder, users can still access the hidden sub-workspace or sub-folder by using the Search feature or by accessing the location through WebDAV.

- ◆ Users can see the name of a higher-level workspace, even though they do not have appropriate rights.

Users who use the Search feature or WebDAV to locate the sub-workspace or sub-folder that they have been granted access to are able to see the name of the parent workspace, which they would otherwise not be able to see. However, they can see only the workspace name, not the contents of the workspace.

## Default Access Control Behavior in Workspaces

By default, most places inherit the access control settings of their parent. When you establish settings for a primary space, all sub-places automatically apply the same settings, saving administration time. However, unlike other types of workspaces, Team workspaces do not retain the access control settings of the parent workspace by default. This is because the desired access control settings for Team workspaces can vary greatly depending on the objectives of the team.

Also, team membership is inherited separately from access control settings. If access control settings are being inherited, this does not necessarily mean that team membership is also being inherited. To edit team membership or to change the team membership inheritance settings for a team workspace, click **Workspace > Edit Team**.

## Default User Rights

By default, all Vibe users have rights to perform the following actions:

- ◆ Participate in any team workspaces in which they are a member (create folders and entries, make comments, and so forth)
- ◆ Create team workspaces (by default, only members of a team can view and participate in team workspaces)
- ◆ Visit all personal workspaces (read entries and comment on them)
- ◆ Participate in all global workspaces and folders

## Default Roles

Vibe includes default roles that you can assign to users and groups. The following sections describe the function of each default role, but does not describe all of the rights associated with each role. For a complete list of rights, click the name of the role in the table on the Configure Access Control page.

(Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace or folder title, then click **Access Control**.)

For information on how the administrator can assign users to various roles for the Vibe site, see [“Controlling User Access throughout the Vibe Site” on page 30](#). For a detailed description of each right that can be associated with a given role, see [“Understanding the Various Rights for Roles” on page 36](#).

Vibe enables site administrators to create their own custom roles, as described in [“Defining a New Role” on page 31](#).

- ◆ [“Understanding Default Roles for Workspaces and Folders” on page 23](#)
- ◆ [“Understanding Default Roles for Entries” on page 24](#)
- ◆ [“Understanding Default Administrative Roles” on page 24](#)

## Understanding Default Roles for Workspaces and Folders

Role	Description
Allow Sharing With Internal Users	Can share workspaces and folders with internal users.
Allow Sharing With External Users	Can share workspaces and folders with external users.

Role	Description
Allow Forwarding of Sharing Rights	When sharing, can allow users to re-share workspaces and folders.
Allow Sharing With The Public	Can share workspaces and folders with the Public.
Allow Sharing File Links	Can share File Links.
Visitor	Has read-only and comment-only access.
Participant	Can create entries and modify those entries, can download folder content as a CSV file, plus perform tasks associated with the Visitor role.
Guest Participant	Can read entries, create entries, and add comments.
Team Member	Has all the rights of a Participant. In addition, can generate reports and manage global tags.
Workspace and Folder Administrator	Can create, modify, or delete workspaces or folders; moderate participation (modify or delete the entries of others); design entries and workflows; set entry-level access controls on entries of others; and perform tasks associated with the Participant and Team Member role.
Workspace Creator	Can create sub-workspaces. In Team Workspace Root workspaces, this role lets users create their own team workspaces.

## Understanding Default Roles for Entries

Role	Description
Owner Create Entry ACLs	The owner of the entry can create entry-level access controls.
Read	Can read the entry.
Read and Reply	Can read the entry and add comments or replies to the entry.
Write	Can read the entry, add comments or replies, and modify the entry.
Delete	Can read the entry, add comments or replies, modify, and delete the entry.
Change Access Controls	Can read the entry, add comments or replies, modify, and delete the entry. Can also modify the access control settings of the entry.

## Understanding Default Administrative Roles

Role	Description
Allow Adding Guest Access	<p>Can make Vibe workspaces and folders available to Guest users in Vibe.</p> <p>By default, Guest users can access only the Guest user personal workspace, as well as any workspace or folder that the Vibe administrator has granted them rights to access.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">"Enabling Individual Users to Grant Guest Access throughout the Vibe Site" on page 107.</a></p>

Role	Description
Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In	Removes a user's ability to view other Vibe users who are not members of a group that he or she belongs to.
Override "Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In"	<p>Overrides the <b>Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In</b> role. This can simplify the administration of the <b>Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In</b> role.</p> <p>For example, you might assign the <b>Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In</b> role to a group, but at the same time you want to allow certain members of the group to retain their ability to see users that belong to groups outside of their own. In this circumstance, you can assign the <b>Override "Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In"</b> role to the members who you want to retain their ability to see users outside of their own groups.</p>
Token Requester	<p>Can make web service calls on behalf of another Vibe user.</p> <p>This functionality can enable administrators to perform proxy functions for individual Vibe users without logging in as the Vibe user. This means that the web services application does not cache individual users' credentials in order to perform operations.</p> <p>This role should not be assigned to a Vibe user, but rather to a system-level (agent) account that you want to be responsible for executing web service operations on behalf of one or more regular Vibe users.</p> <p>For more information about the web services operations that support the Token Requester role, see "<a href="#">admin_getApplicationScopedToken</a>" and "<a href="#">admin_destroyApplicationScopedToken</a>" in the <i>Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Developer Guide</i>.</p>
Zone Administration	Has all rights associated with access control.

## Default Users and Groups

You can assign default or custom access control roles to users and groups for the Vibe site if you are the Vibe administrator, or in your workspaces if you are a workspace owner. In addition to the users and groups that the Vibe administrator creates, Vibe includes four default users and groups to which you can assign roles.

Default User and Group	Description
Owner of a Workspace or Folder	The person who created the workspace, or the person assigned to be the owner of the workspace.
Team Members	<p>The individuals who are designated as team members in a given place.</p> <p>For information about how to add team members, see "<a href="#">Adding Additional Team Members to Your Workspace</a>" in the <i>Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide</i>.</p>
All Users	Every person registered within the Vibe site.
Site Administrator	The person who has rights to perform any task in any workspace or folder. Available only to Vibe administrators.

# Controlling User Access in Workspaces

The access control settings on each Micro Focus Vibe workspace determine who can see the workspace and how different types of users can participate in each workspace.

- ◆ [“Controlling User Access to Personal Workspaces” on page 26](#)
- ◆ [“Controlling User Access to Team Workspaces” on page 27](#)
- ◆ [“Controlling User Access to Global Workspaces” on page 28](#)

## Controlling User Access to Personal Workspaces

- ◆ [“Default Access Controls” on page 26](#)
- ◆ [“Restricting Access to Personal Workspaces throughout the Vibe Site” on page 26](#)

### Default Access Controls

By default, personal workspaces are created with the following access:

User or Group	Access Role	Role Description
Workspace Owner (user)	Administrator	Can create, modify, or delete workspaces or folders; moderate participation (modify or delete the entries of others); design entries and workflows; and can perform Participant tasks.
All Users group	Visitor	Has read-only and comment-only access.

### Restricting Access to Personal Workspaces throughout the Vibe Site

You might want to set up your Vibe site so users’ personal workspaces remain hidden and confidential.

**IMPORTANT:** If you configure your Vibe site to hide users’ personal workspaces as described in this section, the following side effects occur:

- ◆ Users cannot follow one another
- ◆ Users are not displayed in the Personal Workspaces workspace
- ◆ Users are not displayed under Personal Workspaces in the Workspace tree
- ◆ User workspaces and user profiles cannot be found when performing a search (this means that users cannot search for and find other Vibe users.)

When you configure your Vibe site as described in this section, you should make these configuration changes before any users are added to your Vibe system. If users are added to your Vibe system before you make these configuration changes, you must manually adjust the access control settings for each user workspace, as described in [“Controlling Access”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.

New ▾ Reset Import Export

#### Standard Templates

- **Discussion** - A Discussion folder is useful for creating a forum where users are likely to both create and reply to entries.
- **Blog** - A blog folder is a forum where entire entries are displayed in reverse chronological order, based on when they were created. Blogs typically provide information on a particular topic from an individual or small group of authors. Optionally, the blog folder can be configured so that a larger group can make comments on the entries posted by the original author.
- **Calendar** - A calendar folder is a place to post group events or display other types of entries by date.
- **Guestbook** - A guestbook folder is a simple place that individuals can "sign," indicating that they have visited a user's Personal Workspace. Visitors may also leave comments about the entries created in that personal workspace. Comments are displayed in reverse chronological order. A picture of the individual signing the guestbook is displayed with the comment. The guestbook is useful for expanding users' social networks.
- **Files** - A file folder is a place to put files. Comments or entire discussions can be posted about individual files. Additionally, the files can be automatically locked, edited-in-place, then unlocked, creating a new version of the file. A file folder can emulate a WebDAV server. This allows a user to add and delete files via any WebDAV client, such as the MS Windows File Manager.

3 Click **User Workspace**.

4 Click **Manage This Target > Access Control**.

The Configure Access Control page is displayed.

5 In the access control table, in the **All Users** row, deselect the check box in the **Visitor** column.

6 Click **Save Changes**.

7 Verify access before you start adding users to your Vibe system:

- Create a test user in the Vibe system, navigate to this user's personal workspace, then click **Workspace > Access Controls**. Ensure that no check boxes are selected in the **All users** row.
- Navigate to the Personal Workspaces workspace by clicking the Workspace tree icon  in the Action toolbar, then clicking **Personal Workspaces**. Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Access Controls**. Ensure that in the **All users** row the check box is selected in the **Visitor** column. If this check box is not selected, users cannot search for other users in the Vibe system.

For information on how to add users to your Vibe system, see ["Adding New Users to Your Vibe Site" on page 97](#).

Vibe users can adjust the access control for their personal workspaces, as described in ["Controlling Access"](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Controlling User Access to Team Workspaces

By default, new team workspaces created under the main Team Workspaces directory are visible only to members of the team workspace. Following are the default access control settings for a team workspace:

User or Group	Access Role	Role Description
Workspace Owner (team creator)	Administrator	Can create, modify, or delete workspaces or folders; moderate participation (modify or delete the entries of others); design entries and workflows; and can perform Participant tasks.
Team Members	Team Member	Has all the rights of a Participant. In addition, can generate reports and manage community tags.

After you create a new team workspace, you can configure different access control settings for it.

- 1 Navigate to the new team workspace, then click **Workspace > Access Control**.
- 2 Select **No** in the Inheritance box.

This folder does not inherit its access control settings from its parent.

Inherit role membership from the parent folder or workspace?

yes
  no

3 Click **Apply** to activate the Access Control table:

✓ designates the access control setting of the parent workspace

Add User Names from Clipboard

		Add a Role ▾			
		Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator	Workspace Creator
	Owner of Workspace or Folder	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Team Members	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add a Group ▾		Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator	Workspace Creator
Group Title	Group Name				
All Users	allUsers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Add a User ▾		Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator	Workspace Creator
User Title	User Id				
--no users--					
Add an Application Group ▾		Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator	Workspace Creator
Application Group Title	Application Group Name				
--no application groups--					
Add an Application ▾		Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator	Workspace Creator
Application Title	Application Name				
--no applications--					

4 Adjust the access control settings for the new team workspace as needed, as described in “Controlling Access to Workspaces and Folders” in “Controlling Access” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

5 Click **Save Changes** > **Close**.

## Controlling User Access to Global Workspaces

By default, the Global Workspace directory immediately under the Home Workspace inherits the access control settings of the Home Workspace:

User or Group	Access Role	Role Description
Workspace Owner (admin)	Administrator	Can create, modify, or delete workspaces or folders; moderate participation (modify or delete the entries of others); design entries and workflows; and can perform Participant tasks.
Team Members	Team Member	Has all the rights of a Participant. In addition, can generate reports and manage community tags.
All Users group	Participant	Can create and modify entries, plus perform the Visitor tasks.
	Visitor	Has read-only and comment-only access.
All Applications group	Visitor	Has read-only and comment-only access. For information about application groups, see “Managing Remote Applications” in the <i>Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide</i> .

When you create a new global workspace under the main Global Workspaces directory, the new global workspace by default inherits the access control settings of the main Global Workspaces directory, as listed above. After you create a new global workspace, you can configure different access control settings for it.

- 1 Navigate to the new global workspace, then click **Workspace > Access Control**.
- 2 Select **No** in the Inheritance box.

This folder does not inherit its access control settings from its parent.

Inherit role membership from the parent folder or workspace?

yes  no

- 3 Click **Apply** to activate the Access Control table:

✓ designates the access control setting of the parent workspace

Add User Names from Clipboard

		Add a Role					
		Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator		
	Owner of Workspace or Folder	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
	Team Members	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Add a Group		Group Title	Group Name	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	All Users	allUsers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add a User		User Title	User Id	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no users--							
Add an Application Group		Application Group Title	Application Group Name	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	All Applications	allApplications	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add an Application		Application Title	Application Name	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no applications--							

- 4 Adjust the access control settings for the new global workspace as needed, as described in “Controlling Access” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- 5 Click **Save Changes > Close**.

## Controlling User Access throughout the Vibe Site

By assigning users to access control roles for the Micro Focus Vibe site, you can give users additional rights, or restrict current rights.

- ♦ “Controlling User Access to Administrative Functions” on page 30
- ♦ “Controlling User Access to Workspaces, Folders, and Entries” on page 31

## Controlling User Access to Administrative Functions

You can create additional Vibe administrators as described in “Creating Additional Vibe Administrators” on page 18.

This section describes how you can make more granular access settings.

Administrative roles grant users rights to perform administrative functions throughout your Vibe site. As the Vibe administrator, you can assign users and groups to administrative roles. For a list of default administrative roles, see “Understanding Default Administrative Roles” on page 24.

To assign a user to a particular role for every place on the Vibe site:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon . The Administration page is displayed.
- 3 Under **System**, click **Access Control**.

Configure Access Control

Configure Access Control  Close

Administrative Functions

Add User Names from Clipboard

Add a Role ▼

Add a Group ▼	Group Title	Group Name	Allow Adding Guest Access	Create Net Folders	Enable Creating File Links	Enable Sharing with Internal Users	Enable Sharing with the All External Users Group	Enable Sharing with the All Internal Users Group	Enable Sharing with External Users	Enable Forwarding of Sharing Rights	Enable Sharing with the Public	Create Net Folder Servers	Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In	Override "Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In"	Token Requester	Zone Administration
All Internal Users		allusers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add a User ▼

User Title	User Id	Allow Adding Guest Access	Create Net Folders	Enable Creating File Links	Enable Sharing with Internal Users	Enable Sharing with the All External Users Group	Enable Sharing with the All Internal Users Group	Enable Sharing with External Users	Enable Forwarding of Sharing Rights	Enable Sharing with the Public	Create Net Folder Servers	Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In	Override "Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In"	Token Requester	Zone Administration
--no users--															

Save Changes

Assigning roles to an application or application group at the zone level actually specifies the maximum set of rights that the application is allowed to use. This allows the site administrator to prevent an application from ever having more rights than are needed to perform its task. If no roles are assigned, then the application has no rights.

admin (admin) has been designated as the default site administrator with privileges to perform any task on any workspace or folder.

Close

A basic Vibe site consists of a single zone. Micro Focus Vibe lets you set up multiple zones in a single Vibe site. For more information about creating multiple zones, see [Chapter 18, “Setting Up Zones \(Virtual Vibe Sites\),”](#) on page 193.

- 4 Add the user to whom you want to grant the site-wide role to the Access Control table. For information on how to add users to the Access Control table, see [“Adding Users to the Access Control Table”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- 5 Add the role that you want to grant to the Access Control table. For information on how to add roles to the Access Control table, see [“Adding Roles to the Access Control Table”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- 6 Click **Save Changes**, then click **Close**.

## Controlling User Access to Workspaces, Folders, and Entries

Workspace and folder roles define which rights users have in specific workspaces and folders throughout the Vibe site. Entry roles define which rights users have in specific entries.

Workspace and folder owners (or anyone with administrative rights) can assign workspace and folder roles to specific users and groups by configuring access controls for their workspaces and folders. For more information about how to do this, see [“Managing Access Control for Users and Groups”](#) in [“Controlling Access”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

As the Vibe administrator, you can modify each default role for workspaces, folders, or entries to suit your organization's needs. These roles are then made available so that workspace and folder administrators can assign them to users and groups in their workspaces and folders. For information about how to modify existing roles or about how to create new roles, see [“Managing Roles to Refine Access Control” on page 31](#).

## Managing Roles to Refine Access Control

Micro Focus Vibe uses role-based access control. Each default role contains specific rights. If you want a particular user to have certain rights, you can assign that user to the appropriate role. For a list of all the default access roles that are included in Vibe, see [“Default Roles”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

If you find that the existing roles do not meet the needs of your organization, you can modify them or create new ones. This can be particularly useful if you want to delegate the administration of sub-workspaces and sub-folders, and if you do not want to grant all of the privileges that come with the Workspace and Folder Administration role.

Vibe also lets you delete roles that are no longer useful to your organization.

- ◆ [“Defining a New Role” on page 31](#)
- ◆ [“Modifying Existing Roles” on page 34](#)
- ◆ [“Deleting Existing Roles” on page 35](#)
- ◆ [“Understanding the Various Rights for Roles” on page 36](#)

### Defining a New Role

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .  
The Administration page is displayed.
- 3 Under **System**, click **Role Definitions**.



4 Click Add a New Role.

- 5 In the **Role Name** field, specify a name for the new role, then select all of the rights that you want members of this role to be able to perform.
- 6 In the **Role Scope** drop-down list, select whether you want this new role to be available for workspaces or folders, or for entries.
- 7 (Optional) In the **Role Conditions** field, select the role condition that you want to associate with this role.  
 Role conditions enable you to restrict what information users can access when they are outside your corporate firewall. For more information, see [“Restricting Access Rights of Users Outside the Firewall” on page 38](#).
- 8 Select the rights that you want to be associated with this role.

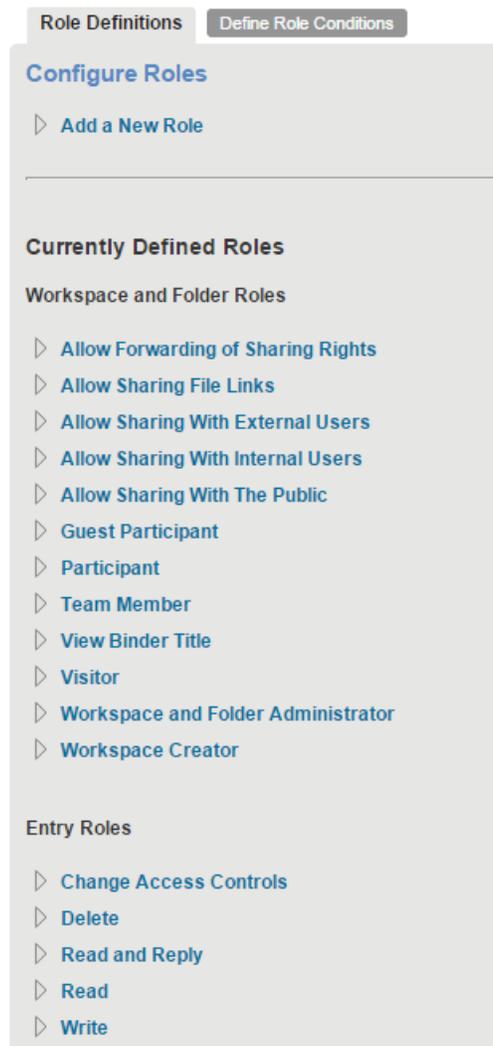
For information about each right that you can select, see [“Understanding the Various Rights for Roles” on page 36](#).

- 9 Click **Add**, then click **Close**.

The role is added to the list of existing roles. If you added this role to control access to entries, the role is automatically made available on the access control page. If you added this role to control access to workspaces and folders, Vibe users can now add this role to the Access Control table, as described in [“Adding Roles to the Access Control Table”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Modifying Existing Roles

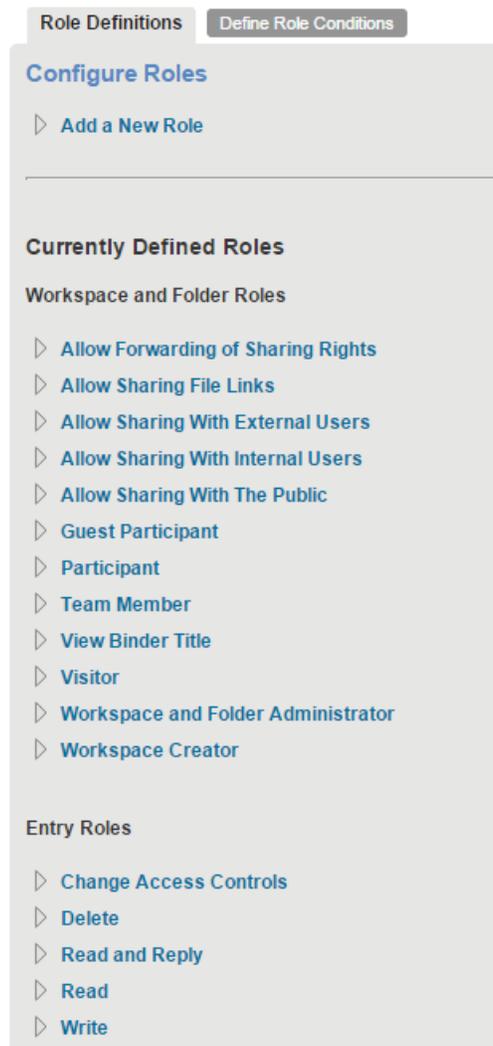
- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .  
The Administration page is displayed.
- 3 Under **System**, click **Configure Role Definitions**.



- 4 In the **Currently Defined Roles** section, click the role that you want to modify.
- 5 Select the rights that you want members of this role to be able to perform, and deselect the rights that you don't want them to be able to perform.  
For information about each right that you can select, see [“Understanding the Various Rights for Roles” on page 36](#).
- 6 Click **Apply**, then click **Close**.

## Deleting Existing Roles

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .  
The Administration page is displayed.
- 3 Under **System**, click **Configure Role Definitions**.



- 4 In the **Currently Defined Roles** section, click the role that you want to delete.
- 5 Click **Delete**, then click **Close**.

## Understanding the Various Rights for Roles

Roles are made up of various rights. Default roles have a set of default rights that are associated with them. When you modify a default role, you remove existing rights and add other rights. When you create a custom role, you create a new name for a role and then associate rights with the new role.

Some rights apply only to workspaces and folders, and some apply only to entries. If you associate a right with a role, and then assign users to that role in a workspace, then by default that role applies to all folders and entries in the workspace. For example, if you associate the Delete Entries right with a role in a workspace and assign that role to all users, then all users can delete any entry in the workspace.

Following is the list of rights you can choose from when modifying or creating a role. You cannot create new rights in Vibe.

<b>Right</b>	<b>Function</b>
Add Comments or Replies	Can add comments or replies to entries.
Add Folders	Can add folders to workspaces and folders.
Add Workspaces	Can add workspaces to existing workspaces.
Allow Forwarding of Sharing Rights	Can grant users the ability to re-share items when sharing.
Allow Sharing File Links	Can share File Links.
Allow Sharing with External Users	Can share items with users who are external to the Vibe system.
Allow Sharing with Internal Users	Can share items with users who are internal to the Vibe system.
Allow Sharing with the Public	Can share items to the Public. Items are publicly available if Guest access has been enabled.
Change Access Control	Can modify the access control settings of workspaces, folders, or entries.
Create Entries	Can create entries.
Create Entry-Level Access Controls	Can change access control settings for all entries that are contained in a workspace or folder.
Delete Entries	Can delete entries.
Delete Owned Entries	Users can delete only the entries they own in a workspace or folder.
Design Entries	Users can design their own custom entries by using the Form and View Designers tool, as described in <a href="#">“Designing Custom Folder Entry Forms”</a> in the <i>Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide</i> .
Design Workflows	Users can design their own custom workflows by using the Form and View Designers tool, as described in <a href="#">“Creating and Managing Workflows”</a> in the <i>Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide</i> .
Generate Reports	Users can generate reports. For more information about generating reports in Vibe, see <a href="#">“Generating Activity Reports for a Workspace”</a> , <a href="#">“Generating an Activity Report on a Folder”</a> , and <a href="#">“Generating Reports about a Folder Entry”</a> in the <i>Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide</i> .
Manage Global Tags	Users can manage community tags, as described in <a href="#">“Using Tags”</a> in the <i>Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide</i> .
Modify Entries	Can modify entries.
Modify Entry Fields	Users can modify only a specific field in an entry. This is useful if you have an entry that is associated with a workflow, and you want only certain users to modify certain fields in the entry.
Modify Owned Entries	Users can modify only the entries they own in a workspace or folder.
Modify, Move, or Delete Folders and Workspaces	Users can modify, move, or delete a folder or workspace.
Owner Create Entry-Level Access Controls	Users can change the access control settings only for the entries they own in a workspace or folder.
Read Entries	Can read entries.

Right	Function
Read Owned Entries	Users can read only the entries they own in a workspace or folder.
Rename Owned Entries	Users can rename only the entries they own in a workspace or folder.
View Binder Title	<p>Enables users who have access to an entry, but do not have access to the parent workspace or folder, to navigate to the entry by using the Workspace tree, as described in “<a href="#">Navigating the Workspace Tree</a>” in the <i>Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide</i>.</p> <p>This right is disabled by default, and is not available to assign to any role. For information on how to enable this right and make it available, see “<a href="#">Enabling Users to Access Entries via the Workspace Tree When They Do Not Have Access to the Parent Folder or Workspace</a>” on page 42.</p>

## Restricting Access Rights of Users Outside the Firewall

Vibe lets you restrict what information users can access when they are outside your corporate firewall.

If your Vibe site contains sensitive data, and users access the site from non-secure locations, you might want to consider restricting users to certain workspaces and folders when they are not accessing Vibe from inside the corporate firewall.

For example, a user accessing the Vibe system from a public kiosk increases the risk of sensitive data being inappropriately exposed.

To restrict access for users who are outside the corporate firewall, you must create a condition that contains one or more IP addresses (or range of IP addresses), associate this condition with an existing role, then assign the role to users and groups in the workspaces, folders, or entries where you want to allow access.

- ♦ [“Creating a New Role Condition” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [“Associating the Role Condition with a New or Existing Role” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [“Assigning the Role Condition to Users and Groups” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [“Example” on page 41](#)

## Creating a New Role Condition

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
 

The Administration page is displayed.
- 3 Under **System**, click **Role Definitions**.
- 4 Click the **Define Role Conditions** tab.
- 5 Click **Add a New IP Address Condition**.

- 6 Provide the following information for the new condition:

**Title:** Specify a title for the condition.

**Description:** Specify a description for the role condition.

**IP Address:** Specify the IP address that you want to associate with this condition.

You can mask your IP address by using asterisks. For example, 155.5.\*.\*

**Allow:** Select this option to allow access from the specified IP address. There must be at least one **IP Address** field with **Allow** selected.

**Deny:** Select this option to deny access from the specified IP address. Select this option only if you have multiple **IP Address** fields, and one of these fields has **Allow** selected.

If you are masking an IP address, such as 155.5.\*.\*, you can exclude an IP address within the range that you are masking. For example, in the first **IP Addresses** field you specify 155.5.\*.\*, then select **Allow**. You then add a second **IP Address** field by clicking **Add Another IP Address**, then specifying an IP address that is within the range of your masked IP address. In your second **IP Address** field, you specify 155.5.4.\*, then select **Deny**. This denies access to users who are using an IP address within the range 155.5.4.\*, but allows access to users using any other IP address within the range 155.5.\*.\*.

- 7 (Optional) Click **Add Another IP Address** to associate multiple IP addresses with this condition. You can also add multiple IP addresses if you want to deny access to a specific IP address that is included within a range of IP addresses that you are allowing.
- 8 Click **Add**.
- 9 Continue with [“Associating the Role Condition with a New or Existing Role”](#) on page 40.

## Associating the Role Condition with a New or Existing Role

You must associate the role condition that you created in [“Creating a New Role Condition” on page 38](#) with a new or existing role.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

The Administration page is displayed.

- 3 Under **System**, click **Role Definitions**.

- 4 On the **Role Definitions** tab, click **Add a New Role**.

or

Click an existing role in the **Currently Defined Roles** section.

For more information about managing roles, see [“Managing Roles to Refine Access Control” on page 31](#).

- 5 In the **Role Conditions** drop-down list, select the role condition that you want to associate to the role.
- 6 Click **Apply**.
- 7 Continue with [“Assigning the Role Condition to Users and Groups” on page 40](#).

## Assigning the Role Condition to Users and Groups

After you have completed [“Creating a New Role Condition” on page 38](#) and [“Associating the Role Condition with a New or Existing Role” on page 40](#), you need to assign the role that contains the new role condition to users and groups. You accomplish this in one of two ways, depending on whether you associated the role condition to a new role or an existing role (as described in [“Associating the Role Condition with a New or Existing Role” on page 40](#)):

- ♦ [“Assigning the New Role to Users and Groups” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [“Assigning an Existing Role to Users and Groups” on page 40](#)

## Assigning the New Role to Users and Groups

To assign the role that contains the new role condition to users and groups:

- 1 Add the role to the Access Control table for the workspaces, folders, or entries where you want to grant users access rights, as described in [“Controlling Access to Workspaces and Folders” in the \*Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide\*](#).
- 2 Assign the roles to the users and groups who you want to be granted access rights, as described in [“Controlling Access to Workspaces and Folders” in the \*Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide\*](#).

## Assigning an Existing Role to Users and Groups

If you associated the role condition with an existing role, the role is automatically applied to users and groups in workspaces, folder, and entries where this role is already assigned.





- 4 Search for the following line:

```
accessControl.viewBinderTitle.enabled=false
```

- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the `accessControl.viewBinderTitle.enabled=false` line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Change `false` to `true`.
- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Enabling Folder Administrators to Apply Definition Settings to Sub-Folders and Entries

You can enable folder owners to apply entry definition types to folders or entries that have already been created. This enables users to apply all definition settings of a parent folder to all subfolders. Also, this enables users to change the definition settings to make all folder entries the same. For example, a user might begin a discussion entry in a Discussion folder, then move the entry to the Tasks folder after it is decided that something needs to be done in order to resolve the discussion. After the discussion entry is added to the Tasks folder, the entry can be converted to a task entry. For more information, see [“Changing the View Definitions for Existing Folders and Folder Entries”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
           webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config
```

```
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
           webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for the following line:  

```
ssf.allowFolderDefinitionFixups=false
```
- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the appropriate line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Change `false` to `true`, so that the line now reads `ssf.allowFolderDefinitionFixups=true`.
- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe.



# 3 Setting Up Initial Workspaces

Proper organization of workspaces is critical to building an effective Micro Focus Vibe site.

- ♦ [“Understanding Workspaces” on page 45](#)
- ♦ [“Setting Up Users’ Personal Workspaces” on page 46](#)
- ♦ [“Managing Team Workspaces” on page 57](#)
- ♦ [“Creating Global Workspaces” on page 60](#)
- ♦ [“Using Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 60](#)
- ♦ [“Importing Workspaces” on page 67](#)

See also [Chapter 22, “Managing Workspaces,” on page 229.](#)

## Understanding Workspaces

Your Micro Focus Vibe site consists of seven types of workspaces:

- ♦ **Personal workspaces:** When you add users to your Vibe site, as described in [“Adding Users to Your Vibe Site”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*, a personal workspace is established for each user. Users can customize their personal workspaces, as described in [“Setting Up Your Personal Workspace”](#) in [“Getting Started”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.
- ♦ **Team workspaces:** Vibe users, along with you as the Vibe administrator, can create team workspaces for groups of people who work together regularly, as described in [“Setting Up Your Personal Workspace”](#) in [“Getting Started”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*. You, as the Vibe administrator, need to decide how you want to organize team workspaces before you let users start creating them.
- ♦ **Team Workspace Root workspaces:** Team Workspace Root workspaces are the optimal type of workspace if you want to create a library of team workspaces as sub-workspaces.  
For more information on Team Workspace Root workspaces, see [“Creating and Managing a Team Workspace Root Workspace”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- ♦ **Project Management Workspaces:** Project Management workspaces include special accessories that help leaders track the progress of task completion for potentially large projects. Project Management workspaces focus on project completion.  
For more information on Project Management workspaces, see [“Creating and Managing a Project Management Workspace”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- ♦ **Discussions workspaces:** The Discussions workspace can be the home page for a set of discussion forums. You can also use the Discussions workspace to house other types of folders. Discussions workspaces can be particularly useful for site administrators who are responsible for creating the overall structure of the Vibe site.  
For more information on how you can use Discussions workspaces, see [“Creating and Managing a Discussions Workspace”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- ♦ **Basic workspaces:** Like other types of Vibe workspaces, basic workspaces in Vibe can be used to organize information inside of existing workspaces, creating different levels of hierarchy within a workspace.

For more information on basic workspaces, see [“Creating and Managing a Basic Workspace”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ♦ **Global workspaces:** Global workspaces contain information that is of interest to all Vibe users. You, as the Vibe administrator, decide what type of information needs to be globally available on your Vibe site.

For more information on Global workspaces, see [“Creating Global Workspaces”](#) on page 60.

## Setting Up Users’ Personal Workspaces

- ♦ [“Understanding Personal Workspaces”](#) on page 46
- ♦ [“Customizing the Default Personal Workspace View”](#) on page 47
- ♦ [“Enabling Users to Create Landing Pages on Personal Workspaces”](#) on page 49
- ♦ [“Customizing the Default User Profile View”](#) on page 50
- ♦ [“Adding LDAP Elements to the User Profile View”](#) on page 55
- ♦ [“Customizing the Default Profile Quick View”](#) on page 55

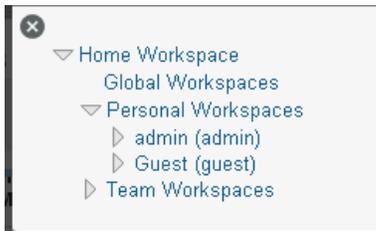
See also [“Controlling User Access to Personal Workspaces”](#) on page 26.

## Understanding Personal Workspaces

When you create your Micro Focus Vibe site, a workspace named Personal Workspaces is automatically created.



Initially, clicking the **Workspace tree** icon  and expanding **Personal Workspaces** lists only two personal workspaces, even after you have created Vibe users, as described in [“Adding Users to Your Vibe Site”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.



Users’ workspaces appear in the Workspace tree after the users log in for the first time. To see a list of all users in the Vibe system regardless of whether they have logged in, click **Personal Workspaces**.

You can manually add Vibe users from this user list, as described in [“Listing Vibe Users”](#) on page 218.

You can also create new Vibe users by using the method described in [“Creating a User”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

As the Vibe administrator, you can access any user's personal workspace by clicking it in the user list. You cannot access a user's personal workspace until the user has logged in to the Vibe site one time. After the user has logged in, the user's personal workspace is ready for the user to personalize. For information on how users can customize and populate their personal workspaces, see ["Setting Up Your Personal Workspace"](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

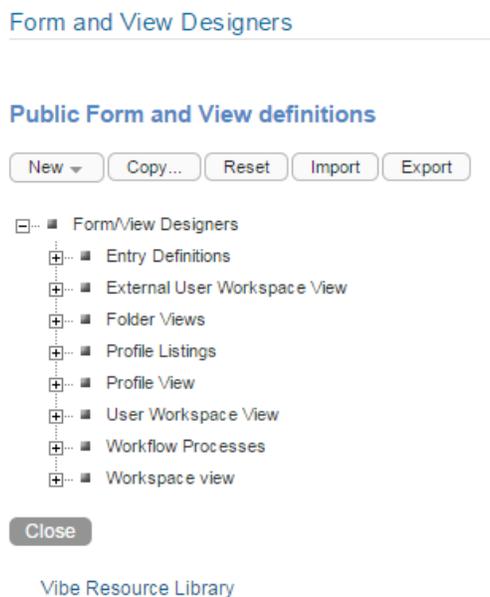
## Customizing the Default Personal Workspace View

As a Vibe administrator, you have the ability to customize the default view for all personal workspaces in your Vibe site.

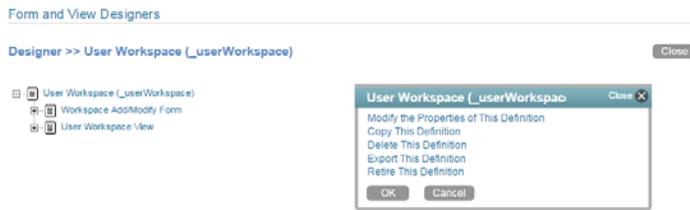
- ♦ ["Customizing the Default View for Existing and Future Personal Workspaces"](#) on page 47
- ♦ ["Customizing the Default View for Future Personal Workspaces"](#) on page 48

## Customizing the Default View for Existing and Future Personal Workspaces

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .  
The Administration page is displayed.
- 2 Under **System**, click **Form/View Designers**.



- 3 Expand **User Workspace View**, then click **User Workspace**.



- 4 Add the form and view elements that you want your existing and future personal workspaces to contain by default.

For information on the kinds of elements that you can add and how to add them, see “[Adding Elements to the Workspace Add/Modify Form](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Customizing the Default View for Future Personal Workspaces

The procedure in this section affects only future personal workspaces (workspaces that have not yet been created). For information on how to change the default view for existing workspaces as well as future workspaces, see “[Customizing the Default View for Existing and Future Personal Workspaces](#)” on page 47.

- 1 Log in as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

The Administration page is displayed.

- 3 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.

### Workspace and Folder Templates

New ▾ Reset Import Export

#### Standard Templates

- **Discussion** - A Discussion folder is useful for creating a forum where users are likely to both create and reply to entries.
- **Blog** - A blog folder is a forum where entire entries are displayed in reverse chronological order, based on when they were created. Blogs typically provide information on a particular topic from an individual or small group of authors. Optionally, the blog folder can be configured so that a larger group can make comments on the entries posted by the original author.
- **Calendar** - A calendar folder is a place to post group events or display other types of entries by date.
- **Guestbook** - A guestbook folder is a simple place that individuals can “sign,” indicating that they have visited a user’s Personal Workspace. Visitors may also leave comments about the entries created in that personal workspace. Comments are displayed in reverse chronological order. A picture of the individual signing the guestbook is displayed with the comment. The guestbook is useful for expanding users’ social networks.

- 4 Click **User workspace**.
- 5 Modify the settings.

For information on the types of modifications that you can make to the User Workspace template, see “[Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates](#)” on page 257.

# Enabling Users to Create Landing Pages on Personal Workspaces

By default, Vibe users cannot create a landing page on their personal workspaces. However, as a Vibe administrator, you can enable landing page creation on personal workspaces.

- 1 Log in as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

The Administration page is displayed.

- 3 Under **System**, click **Form/View Designers**.

The Form and View Designers page is displayed.

- 4 Click **New > User Workspace View**.

- 5 Specify the following information:

**Caption:** Specify a name for the new user workspace landing page view.

This is the name that appears in the Vibe interface that users see when they use this view. (For example, `User Landing Page`.)

**Name:** Specify the internal name for the new user workspace landing page view.

The name that you enter in this field is not visible to users who use this view. (For example, `user_landing_page`.)

**Family:** Ensure **User Workspace** is selected in the drop-down list.

- 6 Click **OK**.

The Designer page is displayed.



- 7 Click **Workspace Add/Modify Form**.
- 8 Click **Add** in the Workspace Add/Modify Form window.
- 9 Click **Layout Options > Landing Page Layout**.
- 10 Specify the appropriate information, then click **OK**.
- 11 Click **User Workspace View**.
- 12 Click **Add** in the User Workspace View window.
- 13 Click **Standard Entry Elements > Landing Page Layout**.
- 14 Specify the appropriate information, then click **OK**.

Vibe users can now enable this landing page on their personal workspaces, as described in “[Creating a Landing Page On Your Personal Workspace](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

For information on how to add other elements and layout options to this user workspace landing page view, see “[Creating Custom Folder Views](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

# Customizing the Default User Profile View

The default user profile view is the view that appears in a user’s profile in the personal workspace. When you customize the default user profile view, you modify the information that is displayed in all user profiles.

The default user profile view was expanded in Vibe 3 to rival other professional knowledgebases such as LinkedIn. Users can include more information to share with their colleagues, such as education, qualifications, and competencies.

Profile

**Julio Chavez** Workspace

Follow Edit...

**Personal Information**

User Id: jchavez  
Job Title: Marketing Manager  
State: Utah  
Postal Code: 84606

**Contact Information**

Phone: 8015557091  
Work phone: 8015558978  
Mobile phone:  
Email: jchavez@yourcompanyname.com  
Mobile Email:  
Text Messaging Email:  
Presence ID:  
Skype Name:

**Organization Information**

Department: Marketing  
Manager:  
Location:  
Office:

**Other Information**

Responsibilities:

**Photos And Images**

Choose File No file chosen

**ABOUT ME**

**TEAMS**  
Marketing  
Medical

**GROUPS**  
All Internal Users

**FOLLOWING**  
<NOT FOLLOWING ANYONE>

If you are updating your Vibe site from a version prior to Vibe 3 to Vibe 3 or later and you modified the user profile definition in your previous Vibe version, you do not see the new user profile when you upgrade to Vibe 3 or later. In order to see the new user profile, you need to reset your profile user definition. For information about how to reset your definitions, see “[Resetting Your Definitions](#)” in “[Upgrade](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

You can customize the default user profile view to include custom fields. If you want to customize the user profile view, then you must also customize the user profile form. The view is what users see when they view a user profile; the form is what users fill out when they edit their user profiles. You must design both the form and view of the user profile in order for the elements to be displayed in the user profile view.

- ◆ “Designing the User Profile Form” on page 51
- ◆ “Designing the User Profile View” on page 53

## Designing the User Profile Form

The user profile form is what a users see when they edit their user profile in Vibe. For example:

The screenshot displays the 'User' profile form in Vibe. It includes the following sections and fields:

- User Id:** A text input field containing 'jchavez'.
- Password:** Three text input fields labeled 'Current Password', 'New Password', and 'Confirm New Password', each containing a series of dots.
- Name:** Three text input fields labeled 'First Name', 'Middle Name', and 'Last Name', containing 'Julio', an empty field, and 'Chavez' respectively.
- Picture:** A file selection area with a 'Choose File' button, 'No file chosen' text, and an 'Edit File Note...' link. Below it, a 'Current Picture' section shows a file named 'julio-chavez.png' with a delete icon and a warning: '(Select the Files to be Deleted. Deleted Files Cannot be Restored.)'
- Time zone:** A dropdown menu set to '(GMT -7:00) Mountain Standard Time (Denver)'.
- Locale:** A dropdown menu set to 'English (United States) [English (United States)]'.
- Personal Information:** A section containing a rich text editor titled 'About Me'. The editor has a menu with 'Edit', 'View', 'Insert', 'Format', and 'Table'. The toolbar includes options for font family, font size, paragraph style, bold, italic, underline, text color, background color, and link. The text area is currently empty.
- Job Title:** A text input field at the bottom of the form.

Below the rich text editor, there is a note: 'This text editor supports the following types of markup: [[entry title]] creates a link to another entry in this folder. ? ==Section name== and ===Subsection name=== add sections and subsections to your text.'

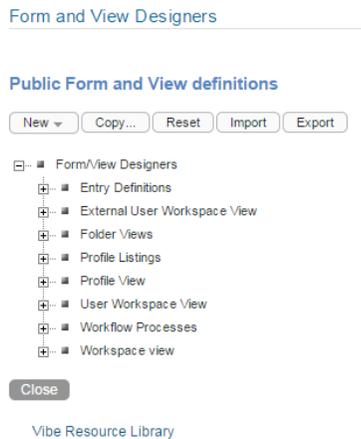
To modify the information that is displayed in the user profile form that users fill out when they edit a user profile:

- 1 Log in as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration** icon

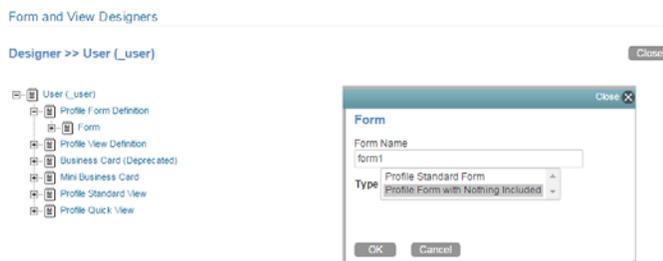


The Administration page is displayed.

- 3 Under **System**, click **Form/View Designers**.



- 4 Expand **Profile View**, then click **User**.
- 5 Expand **Profile Form Definition**, then click **Form**.
- 6 Click **Modify**.



- 7 In the **Form Name** field, provide a name for the form.
- 8 In the **Type** field, select **Profile Form with Nothing Included**.

This lets you add elements anywhere inside the view. If you do not select this option, you can add elements only after the last element in the default view.
- 9 Click **OK**.
- 10 Expand **Profile Form Definition**, then click **Form**.
- 11 Depending on how you want to modify the profile form, continue with one of the following sections:
  - ♦ [“Adding Elements to the Form” on page 53](#)
  - ♦ [“Modifying Elements within the Form” on page 53](#)

## Adding Elements to the Form

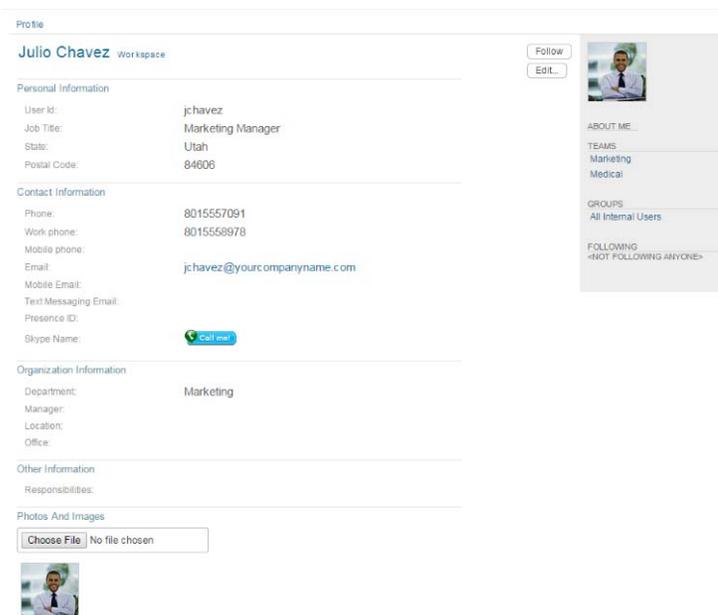
- 1 Expand **Profile Form Definition**, then click **Form**.
- 2 In the Form dialog box, click **Add** to add an element or layout option to the view.  
You can add any of the elements and layout options that are described in “[Workspace Form Elements](#)” and “[Understanding Layout Options](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- 3 Continue with “[Designing the User Profile View](#)” on page 53 to create the user profile view that users will see when they view a user profile.

## Modifying Elements within the Form

- 1 Expand **Profile Form Definition**, then expand **Form**.
- 2 Click the element that you want to modify.  
Depending on the element that you click, you can copy, delete, modify, or move the element. You can also add sub-elements.
- 3 In the dialog box on the right side of the page, click the action that you want to perform, then follow the on-screen instructions.
- 4 Continue with “[Designing the User Profile View](#)” on page 53 to create the user profile view that users will see when they view a user profile.

## Designing the User Profile View

After you have designed the user profile form, as described in “[Designing the User Profile Form](#)” on page 51, you can modify the user profile view. The user profile view is what a user sees when the user views a user profile in Vibe. For example:

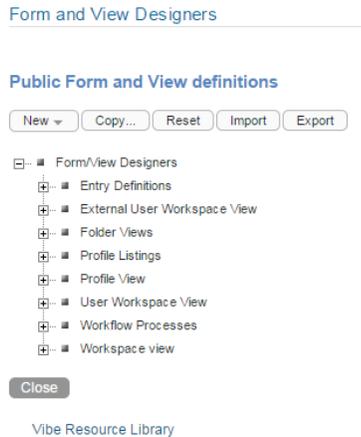


To modify the information that is displayed in the user profile view that users see when they view a user profile:

- 1 Log in as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

The Administration page is displayed.

- 3 Under **System**, click **Form/View Designers**.



- 4 Expand **Profile View**, then click **User**.

The User Designer page is displayed.



- 5 Expand **Profile Standard View** to view a list of all the elements and layout options that currently exist in the view.
- 6 Depending on how you want to modify the profile view, continue with one of the following sections:
  - ♦ [“Adding Elements to the View” on page 54](#)
  - ♦ [“Modifying Elements within the View” on page 55](#)

## Adding Elements to the View

- 1 Click **Profile Standard View**.
- 2 In the Profile Standard View dialog box, click **Add** to add an element or layout option to the view.

You can add any of the elements and layout options that are described in [“Workspace View Elements”](#) and [“Understanding Layout Options”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Modifying Elements within the View

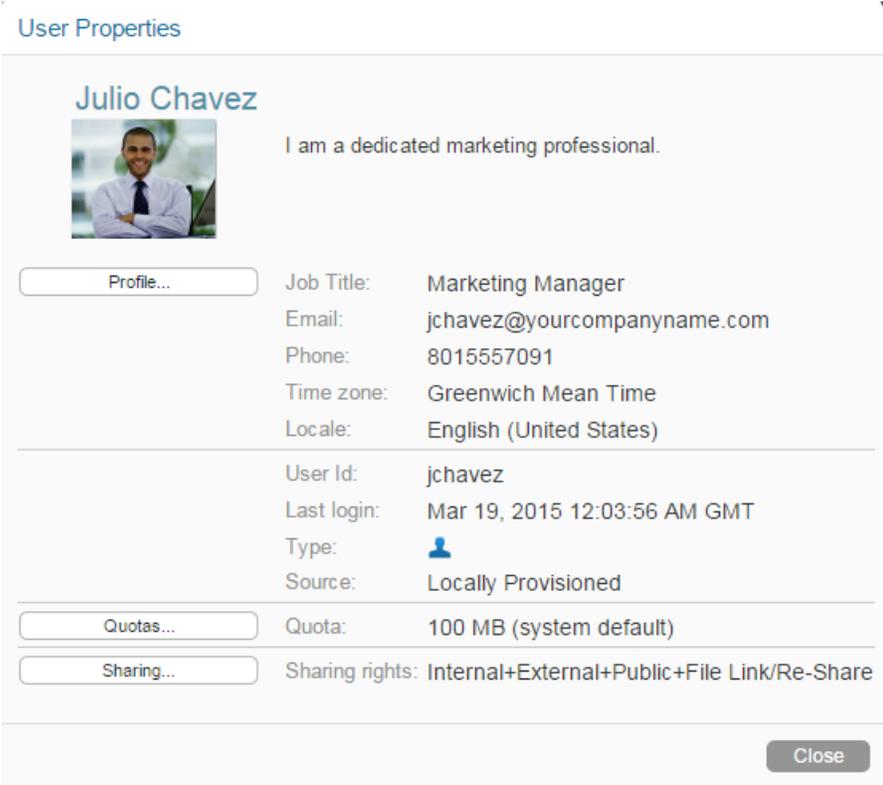
- 1 Click the element that you want to modify.  
You can copy, delete, modify, or move the element. You can also add sub-elements.
- 2 In the dialog box on the right side of the page, click the action that you want to perform, then follow the on-screen instructions.

## Adding LDAP Elements to the User Profile View

If there is information in your LDAP source that does not have a corresponding element in Vibe, and you want that information to be displayed in the Vibe user profile view, you can create an element in the profile view as described in [“Customizing the Default User Profile View” on page 50](#). After you have created the element, you can synchronize it with the corresponding information from LDAP, as described in [“Synchronizing Additional LDAP Attributes” on page 214](#).

## Customizing the Default Profile Quick View

The Profile Quick View is displayed when you click a user’s **Presence** icon  in Vibe.



User Properties

**Julio Chavez**  
 I am a dedicated marketing professional.

**Profile...** Job Title: Marketing Manager  
Email: jchavez@yourcompanyname.com  
Phone: 8015557091  
Time zone: Greenwich Mean Time  
Locale: English (United States)

---

User Id: jchavez  
Last login: Mar 19, 2015 12:03:56 AM GMT  
Type:   
Source: Locally Provisioned

---

**Quotas...** Quota: 100 MB (system default)

---

**Sharing...** Sharing rights: Internal+External+Public+File Link/Re-Share

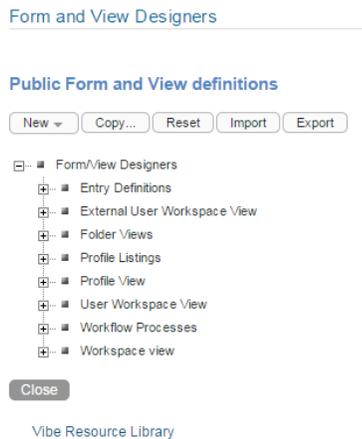
Close

Presence is displayed in the following locations in Vibe:

- ♦ In a folder entry next to a user’s name
- ♦ In a user’s profile
- ♦ In the home page of a user’s personal workspace

To modify the information that is displayed in the Profile Quick View:

- 1 Log in as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Form/View Designers**.



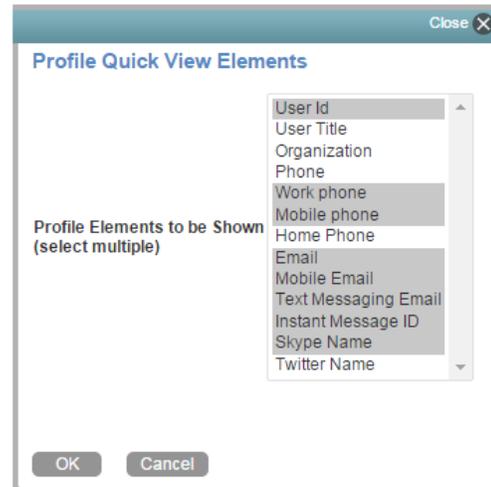
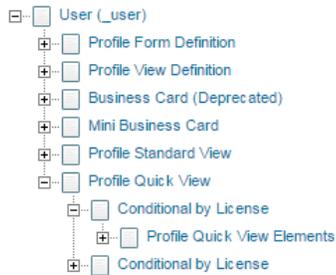
- 4 Expand **Profile View**, then click **User**.
- The User Designer page is displayed.



- 5 Expand **Profile Quick View**, expand **Conditional by License**, then click **Quick View Elements**.
- 6 In the Quick View Elements window, click **Modify**.

Designer &gt;&gt; User (\_user)

Close



- 7 Press and hold the Ctrl key to select and deselect elements that you want to include in the Profile Quick View or exclude from the Profile Quick View.

If the element you want to add is not available in the list, click **Quick View Elements**, then in the Quick View Elements window, click **Add**. Select the element from the list, then click **OK**.

- 8 Click **OK**.

## Managing Team Workspaces

- ◆ “Understanding Team Workspaces” on page 57
- ◆ “Creating a Team Workspace Root Workspace” on page 58
- ◆ “Creating a Team Workspace” on page 58
- ◆ “Managing Share Rights for Team Workspaces” on page 58
- ◆ “Deleting Top-Level Team Workspaces” on page 58
- ◆ “Viewing Team Membership of Top-Level Team Workspaces” on page 59

See also Chapter 22, “Managing Workspaces,” on page 229.

## Understanding Team Workspaces

When you create your Micro Focus Vibe site, a workspace named Team Workspaces is automatically created.



As the Vibe administrator, you are responsible to determine how team workspaces should be organized. Without guidance, Vibe users will inevitably create chaos under the Team Workspaces directory.

You might want to organize team workspaces to parallel your business organization. If appropriate, you might have a level for geographical areas. You would typically want a level for departmental areas, and perhaps even for projects within departments. In addition, you must decide which Vibe users need what kind of access to which teams. Creating groups, as described in [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#), facilitates creating teams because you do not need to individually add users to teams.

In the Team Workspaces directory that is automatically created when you install Vibe, you can create other Team Workspace Root workspaces. A Team Workspace Root workspace is designed to contain multiple team workspaces, so use this type of workspace if you want to create additional team workspaces as sub-workspaces to this workspace.

## Creating a Team Workspace Root Workspace

After you have planned the hierarchical organization of the team workspaces for your Vibe site, you can start to implement it by creating Team Workspace Root workspaces, as described in [“Creating and Managing a Team Workspace Root Workspace”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Creating a Team Workspace

In the Team Workspaces directory, or in the Team Workspace Root workspaces that you have created:

- 1 Create each team workspace, as described in [“Creating a Team Workspace”](#) in [“Getting Started”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.
- 2 Set the access controls on the team workspace, as described in [“Controlling User Access to Team Workspaces” on page 27](#).

## Managing Share Rights for Team Workspaces

For information about how to manage share rights for team workspaces, see [“Enabling Sharing for Top-Level Team Workspaces” on page 133](#).

## Deleting Top-Level Team Workspaces

You can easily delete top-level team workspaces:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080  
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **Browse** icon  in the Action toolbar, then expand **Home Workspace** in the Workspace tree.



The Home Workspace directory is the highest-level folder in the workspace tree, and might be named something specific to your organization.

- 3 Click **Team Workspaces**.

The Teams page is displayed.

- 4 Select the top-level teams that you want to delete by selecting the checkbox next to the team name.
- 5 Click **Delete**.
- 6 (Conditional) To move the workspace to the trash, select **Move to trash**, then click **OK**.

Selecting this option removes the workspace from its current location without permanently deleting it from the Vibe system. You can undelete the workspace as described in “[Recovering a Workspace from the Trash](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

- 7 (Conditional) To permanently delete the workspace, select **Delete**.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Deleted items cannot be recovered.

---

- 8 Click **OK**.

## Viewing Team Membership of Top-Level Team Workspaces

You can easily view the team membership of top-level team workspaces:

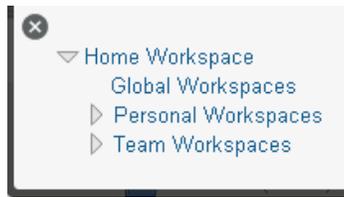
- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **Browse** icon  in the Action toolbar, then expand **Home Workspace** in the Workspace tree.



The Home Workspace directory is the highest-level folder in the workspace tree, and might be named something specific to your organization.

- 3 Click **Team Workspaces**.

The Teams page is displayed.

Team members are listed in the **Team Members** column.

## Creating Global Workspaces

A Global workspace is intended to present very high-level information that would be of interest to all Micro Focus Vibe users. It might include a Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) workspace to help new Vibe users find their way around in the organization of team workspaces that you have set up. It might provide a place to post company-wide news. All Global workspaces must be created under **Home Workspace > Global Workspaces** on the Vibe site.

You might want to use geography to organize your company's global information, and then use departmental categories (**Engineering, Human Resources, Marketing**) to further organize the information. Or, depending on your organization, you might want to reverse the order (function followed by geography), or use some other organizational scheme.

We strongly recommend that you limit the creation of Global workspaces. First, organic team creation is the more effective use model for this product. Second, we have worked with a significant number of customers who duplicated complex organizational charts in the structure of Global workspaces, and users found them to be confusing and unusable. Instead, populate the global area with a minimal amount of information, and let users guide you in developing a useful structure and content in this area.

## Using Workspace and Folder Templates

Templates in Micro Focus Vibe are a powerful way to create consistent custom folders and workspaces. If you are not satisfied with the way default workspaces and folders behave, you can either modify the current templates, or create new templates.

- ♦ [“Understanding Templates” on page 61](#)
- ♦ [“Understanding Default Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 62](#)
- ♦ [“Creating Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 64](#)

# Understanding Templates

Workspace and Folder templates are a powerful and efficient way to manage your Vibe site. They enable you to customize the default features, default layout, and default access control settings of the workspaces and folders throughout your Vibe site.

For example, the Team Workspaces template is used when any team workspace is created. By default, the access control settings for the Team Workspaces template specify that only team members are able to view the team workspace. However, if you want to run a more relaxed Vibe site and allow all Vibe users to view any team workspace, you can simply modify the access control settings for the Team Workspaces template.

For information about the specific access control roles that you can assign to various users in Vibe, see [“Understanding Access Control”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ♦ [“Creating Templates or Modifying Existing Templates”](#) on page 61
- ♦ [“Templates vs. Form and View Designers”](#) on page 61

## Creating Templates or Modifying Existing Templates

You can modify existing templates, like the Team Workspaces template, or you can create your own custom templates. When you create a new template, all Vibe users have access to that template when they create new workspaces or folders. When you modify existing templates, users who create new workspaces and folders see only the modified template.

For more information on the default templates that are included in Vibe, see [“Understanding Default Workspace and Folder Templates”](#) on page 62.

## Templates vs. Form and View Designers

Vibe provides two methods of customizing the default features and default layout of workspaces and folders in your Vibe site.

- ♦ **Templates:** If users have not yet started using your Vibe site, use templates to create and modify custom folder and workspace views. Typically, templates are easier to work with than the Form and View Designers tool; however, changes that you make to templates affect only those workspaces and folders that are created after the template was modified.
- ♦ **Form and View Designers Tool:** If users have already started using your Vibe site, you might want to use the Form and View Designers tool to create and modify folder and workspace views. When you modify folder and workspace views by using the Form and View Designers tool, all modifications are displayed in existing workspaces and folders.

For information on using the Form and View Designers tool to create new workspace and folder views, see [“Creating Custom Workspace Views”](#) and [“Creating Custom Folder Views”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

# Understanding Default Workspace and Folder Templates

By default, Vibe provides basic default templates for various types of workspaces and folders. If the default workspace and folder templates are not sufficient for your needs, you can either modify these templates, as described in [“Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 257](#), or create new templates, as described in [“Creating Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 64](#).

The following sections outline the default workspace and folder templates that are provided in Vibe:

- ◆ [“Default Workspace Templates” on page 62](#)
- ◆ [“Default Folder Templates” on page 63](#)

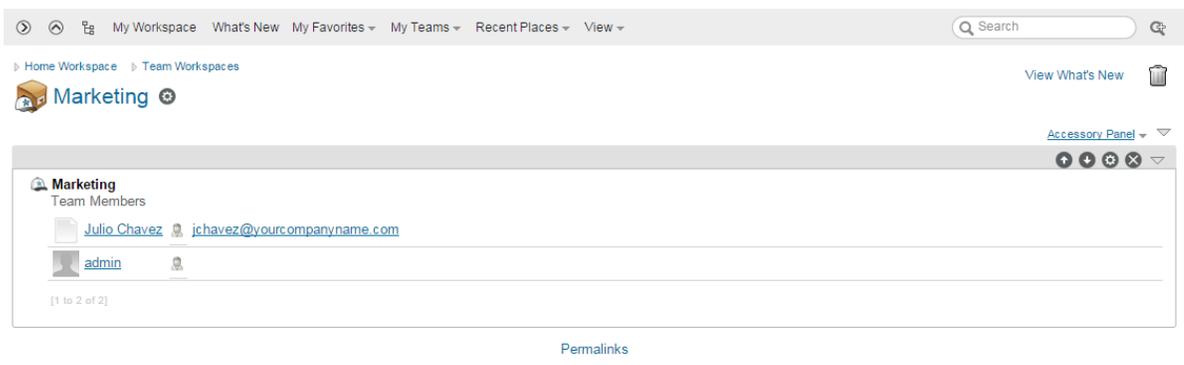
## Default Workspace Templates

- ◆ Discussions Workspace
- ◆ Project Management Workspace
- ◆ Team Workspace
- ◆ Workspace (Basic)
- ◆ Landing Page
- ◆ User Workspace

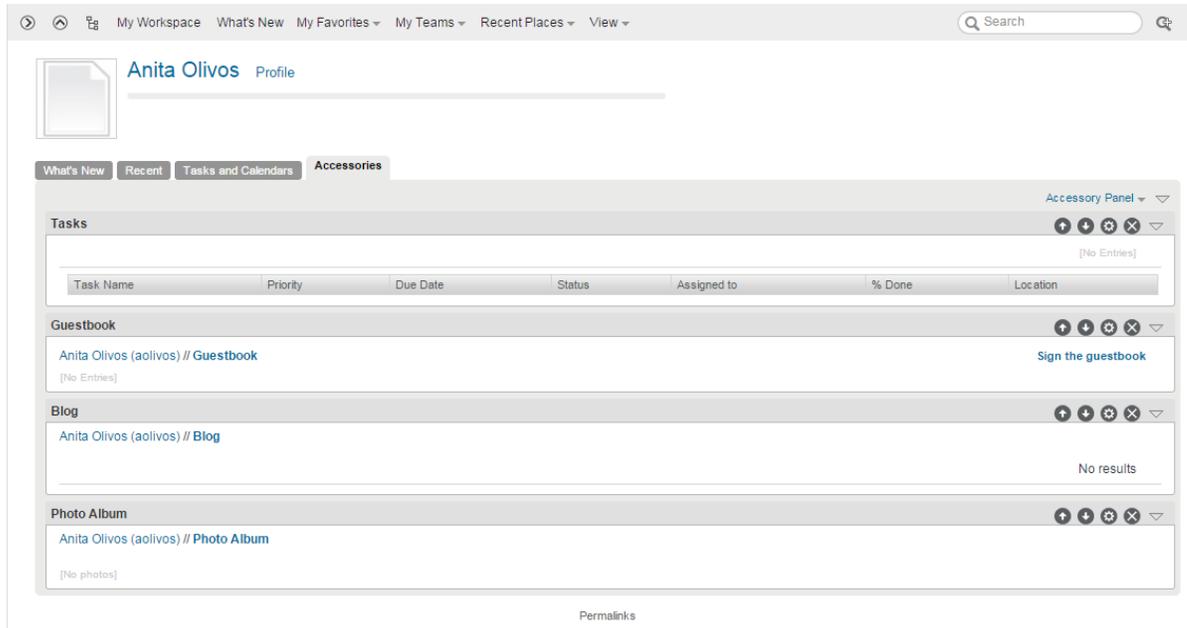
Following are some examples of default workspace templates:

- ◆ [“Team Workspace” on page 62](#)
- ◆ [“User Workspace” on page 63](#)

## Team Workspace



## User Workspace



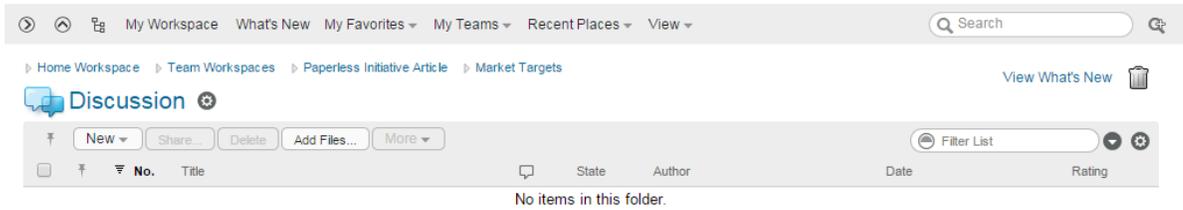
## Default Folder Templates

- ◆ Discussion
- ◆ Blog
- ◆ Calendar
- ◆ Guestbook
- ◆ Files
- ◆ Milestones
- ◆ Micro-Blog
- ◆ Mirrored Files
- ◆ Photo Album
- ◆ Surveys
- ◆ Tasks
- ◆ Wiki

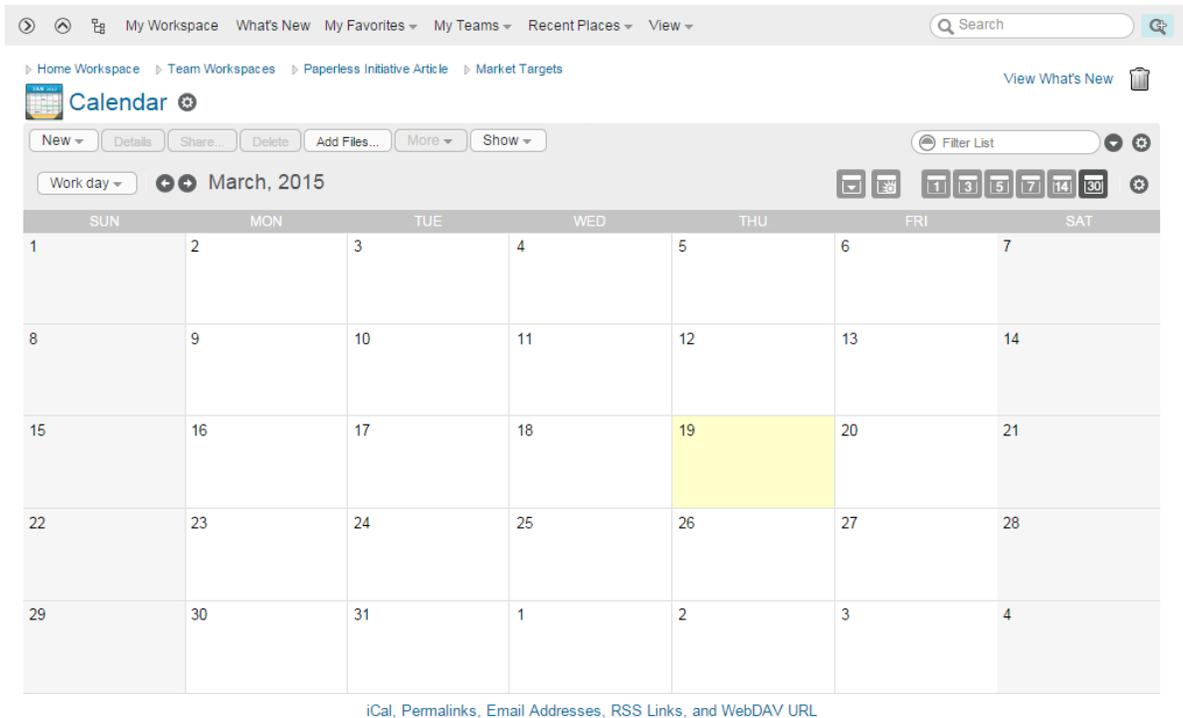
Following are some examples of default folder templates:

- ◆ [“Discussion Folder” on page 64](#)
- ◆ [“Calendar Folder” on page 64](#)

## Discussion Folder



## Calendar Folder



## Creating Workspace and Folder Templates

Micro Focus lets you create templates based on existing workspaces and folders; or, you can create new templates. You can also modify existing templates.

- ◆ [“Creating Templates Based on Existing Workspaces and Folders” on page 64](#)
- ◆ [“Creating New Templates” on page 66](#)
- ◆ [“Modifying Existing Templates” on page 67](#)

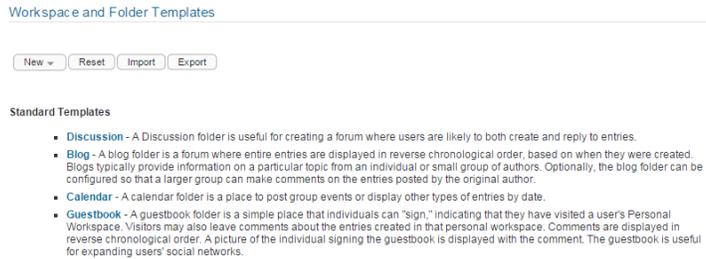
## Creating Templates Based on Existing Workspaces and Folders

You can create templates based on existing workspaces and folders only if the workspaces and folders do not contain local definitions. For example, if a workspace contains a custom form that is being used for the Discussion folder, you cannot create a template based on this workspace.

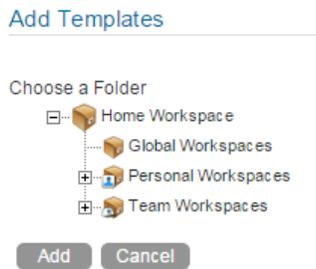
To find out if a workspace or folder contains local definitions, navigate to the workspace or folder, then click **Workspace > Form/View Designers** (or **Folder > Form/View Designers** if you are in a folder).

To create a template based on an existing workspace or folder:

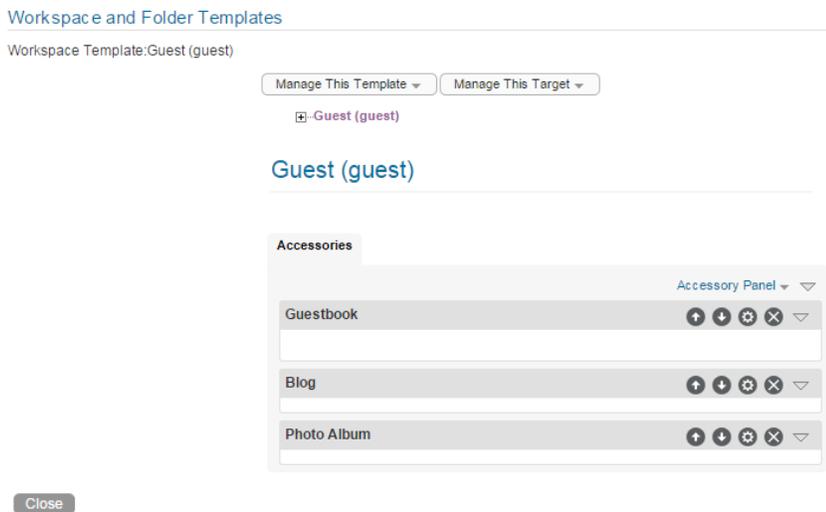
- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- The Administration page is displayed.
- 2 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.



- 3 Click **New > Create a New Template from an Existing Workspace or Folder**.



- 4 Use the Workspace tree to navigate to and select the folder or workspace whose template you want to modify.
- 5 Click **Add**.



6 Modify the template as desired.

For information on how to modify a template after you have created it, see [“Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 257.](#)

## Creating New Templates

Vibe lets you design completely new custom workspace or folder templates.

1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

The Administration page is displayed.

2 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.

Workspace and Folder Templates

New Reset Import Export

### Standard Templates

- **Discussion** - A Discussion folder is useful for creating a forum where users are likely to both create and reply to entries.
- **Blog** - A blog folder is a forum where entire entries are displayed in reverse chronological order, based on when they were created. Blogs typically provide information on a particular topic from an individual or small group of authors. Optionally, the blog folder can be configured so that a larger group can make comments on the entries posted by the original author.
- **Calendar** - A calendar folder is a place to post group events or display other types of entries by date.
- **Guestbook** - A guestbook folder is a simple place that individuals can “sign,” indicating that they have visited a user’s Personal Workspace. Visitors may also leave comments about the entries created in that personal workspace. Comments are displayed in reverse chronological order. A picture of the individual signing the guestbook is displayed with the comment. The guestbook is useful for expanding users’ social networks.

3 Click **New > Folder** or **Workspace**, depending on which type of template you want to create.

### Add Templates

Add Cancel

#### Add Templates

Name:

Template Title:

#### Description:

Edit View Insert Format Table

Font Family Font Sizes Paragraph B I U A A

☰ ☰ ☰ ☰ ☰ ☰ ☰ ☰ ☰ ☰

#### Copy Content into New Folders from this Folder:

Select a Content Source Folder

Add Cancel

4 Fill in the following fields:

**Name:** Internal name of the template

For example, `custom_template`.

**Template Title:** Visible name of the template.

For example, `Custom Template`.

**Description:** Description of the template.

5 Click **Add > OK**.

The template is created.

6 Set up the template as desired.

For information on how to set up a template after you have created it, see [“Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 257](#).

## Modifying Existing Templates

Vibe lets you modify default templates or custom templates that you have created.

For information on how to modify existing templates, see [“Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 257](#).

## Importing Workspaces

Micro Focus Vibe data can be transferred from one Vibe site to another by exporting it and then importing it. If you have data to import into your Vibe site, see [“Exporting/Importing Workspaces, Folders, and Entries” on page 229](#).



# 4 Setting Up Site-Wide Customizations

- ◆ “Creating High-Level Landing Pages” on page 69
- ◆ “Creating a Site-Wide Brand” on page 69
- ◆ “Setting a Default Home Page” on page 71
- ◆ “Re-Branding the Login Dialog Box” on page 75
- ◆ “Enabling User ID Auto-Completion for the Login Dialog Box” on page 75
- ◆ “Customizing Vibe Styles” on page 76
- ◆ “Customizing Icons on Your Vibe Site” on page 77
- ◆ “Configuring How Items Are Displayed in the What’s New Page” on page 79
- ◆ “Sorting Names throughout the Vibe Site by Last Name” on page 82
- ◆ “Managing How Group Names Are Displayed during Name Completion” on page 83
- ◆ “Changing the Number of Recent Places That Are Displayed” on page 84
- ◆ “Configuring File Associations for Edit in Place Applications” on page 84
- ◆ “Understanding and Configuring Search Functionality” on page 86
- ◆ “Understanding and Configuring Document Conversions with Micro Focus KeyView” on page 93
- ◆ “Customizing the Simple URL Prefix” on page 94

## Creating High-Level Landing Pages

Landing pages are a good way to put a custom face on your Micro Focus Vibe site while at the same time providing easier access to your site’s most important information.

You might want to create landing pages at high-level workspaces, such as the Home Workspace workspace, which is the default name of the top-level workspace.

For information on how to create a landing page, see “[Creating and Managing Landing Pages](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*

## Creating a Site-Wide Brand

You can brand your Micro Focus Vibe site to match your corporate brand. When you add a site-wide brand to your Vibe site, the brand is displayed on every Vibe page for authenticated users.

If you have configured Guest access to the Vibe site, the site branding is not displayed for the Guest user. For more information about enabling Guest access to the Vibe site, see “[Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site](#)” on page 105.

By default, users can create their own brands for their individual workspaces, team workspaces, and folders. When you create a site-wide brand, you can disable this functionality. For more information, see [Branding Rules](#) in [Step 4](#).

- 1 Sign in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

The Administration page is displayed.

- 3 In the **System** section, click **Site Branding**.

The Site Branding dialog box is displayed.

- 4 Specify the following information to create your desired brand:

**Use Branding Image:** Select this option if you want to use the drop-down list to select an existing image, or click the **Browse** icon  to browse to an image on your computer's file system.

**Use Advanced Branding:** Select this option, then click **Edit Advanced** if you want to create a brand that includes advanced features in your brand, such as a YouTube video.

**Background Image:** Use the drop-down list to select an existing image, or click the **Browse** icon  to browse to an image on your computer's file system.

The background image is displayed behind your regular branding.

**Stretch Image:** Stretches the image to occupy the entire branding area.

If you stretch your background image, the image overrides any background color that you have set.

**Background Color:** Adds a background color that occupies the entire branding area. To change the background color, click the color name to the right of this field, select the new color, then click **OK**.

If you added a background image and stretched the image, the background color is not displayed.

**Text Color:** Changes the text color of the workspace name in the upper right corner of the branding area. To change the text color, click the color name to the right of this field, select the new color, then click **OK**.

**Branding Rules:** Select from the following:

- ◆ **Display site branding only:** Displays only the site-wide branding on all Vibe pages. Vibe users cannot create their own brands for workspaces and folders.
- ◆ **Display both site and workspace branding:** Enables Vibe users to create their own brands for workspaces and folders. Both the site-wide brand and the workspace or folder brand are displayed.
- ◆ **Workspace branding overrides site branding:** Enables Vibe users to create their own brands for workspaces and folders. Workspace and folder brands override the site-wide brand.

**Sign In Dialog Image:** This option lets you change the image that is displayed on the sign-in dialog. For more information, see ["Re-Branding the Login Dialog Box"](#) on [page 75](#).

**Clear branding:** Click this option to clear all your current branding selections.

- 5 Click **OK**.

The Vibe site now displays the brand that you created.

For more information about creating brands in Vibe, see “[Branding a Folder or Workspace](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Setting a Default Home Page

By default, all users who log in to the Micro Focus Vibe site are first taken to the What’s New page. However, you can change this default behavior to have all users taken to a different home page of your choosing. This might be a corporate landing page that provides links to important places on the Vibe site.

You can also configure Vibe so that users are taken to their personal workspaces when they first log in to the Vibe site. For information on how to configure Vibe in this way, see “[Restricting the What’s New Page from Being Displayed When Users First Log In](#)” on page 81.

- ♦ “[Setting a Default Home Page for All Licensed Vibe Users](#)” on page 71
- ♦ “[Setting a Default Home Page for Guest Users](#)” on page 72
- ♦ “[Removing the Default Home Page](#)” on page 74

## Setting a Default Home Page for All Licensed Vibe Users

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Create a landing page on the workspace that you want to set as the new default home page for all registered users.

For example, you might navigate to the **Global Workspaces** directory and create a landing page on this workspace.

For information on how to create a landing page, see “[Creating and Managing Landing Pages](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- 3 Set the access control for the workspace to allow all users to be visitors to the workspace, if it is not set already:
  - 3a Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Access Control**.
  - 3b In the **Inherit role membership** section, select **no**, then click **Apply**.
  - 3c In the **All Users** row, ensure that the box is selected in the **Visitor** column.
  - 3d Click **Save Changes > Close**.
- 4 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 5 Under **System**, click **Default Landing Pages**.

## Default Landing Pages

**Default Home Page**

Select the Folder or Workspace to be the Default Home Page for this Zone

The current home page is: Victory Regional Medical Center

Delete

**Default Guest Home Page**

Select the Folder or Workspace to be the Default Home Page for Guest Users

The current guest home page is: Victory Regional Medical Center

Delete

OK Close

- 6 In the **Select the Folder or Workspace to be the Default Home Page for this Zone** field, begin typing the name of the folder or workspace that you want to set as the default home page for all licensed users, then click it when it appears in the drop-down list.
- 7 Click **OK**.

If you want users to be automatically taken to this page before they log in, and if you want people who do not have a user account to have access to the page, see [“Making the Guest User Default Home Page the Same as the Home Page for Licensed Users”](#) on page 72.

## Setting a Default Home Page for Guest Users

When you allow people who do not have a user account to access the Vibe site as a guest user, as described in [“Allowing Guest Access to Your Vibe Site”](#) on page 104, then by default they are taken to the Guest User workspace when they access Vibe. If you want guest users to be taken to a workspace other than the Guest User workspace, you can set a default home page for guest users that is different from the Guest User workspace. The default home page can be the same default home page that you have set up for your licensed Vibe users, or it can be a different page.

- ♦ [“Making the Guest User Default Home Page the Same as the Home Page for Licensed Users”](#) on page 72
- ♦ [“Setting Up a Default Home Page Specifically for Guest Users”](#) on page 73

## Making the Guest User Default Home Page the Same as the Home Page for Licensed Users

If you have already set up a default home page for your licensed Vibe users, as described in [“Setting a Default Home Page for All Licensed Vibe Users”](#) on page 71, you can configure Vibe to allow guest users who access the Vibe site to be taken to the same home page. If you configure Vibe in this way, everyone who accesses the Vibe site is taken directly to the default home page without logging in.

- 1 Follow the steps in [“Setting a Default Home Page for All Licensed Vibe Users”](#) on page 71.
- 2 Navigate to the workspace that you want to set as the default home page for guest users, which is the workspace that you already set as the default home page for licensed Vibe users in [“Setting a Default Home Page for All Licensed Vibe Users”](#) on page 71.
- 3 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Access Control**.

The Configure Access Control page is displayed.

- 4 Click **Add User**, start typing **Guest** in the **Add a User** field, then click **Guest** when it appears in the drop-down list.

This adds **Guest** as a new row in the Access Control table.

✓ designates the access control setting of the parent workspace

Add User Names from Clipboard

			Add a Role ▾			
			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	Owner of Workspace or Folder		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Team Members		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add a Group ▾			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	All Users <sup>1</sup>	allUsers <sup>1</sup>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add a User ▾			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	Guest	guest	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add an Application Group ▾			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no application groups--						
Add an Application ▾			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no applications--						

- 5 In the **Guest** row, ensure that the box is selected in the **Visitor** column.
- 6 Click **Save Changes > Close**.

## Setting Up a Default Home Page Specifically for Guest Users

You might want guest users who access the Vibe site to be taken to a workspace that is designated specifically for guest users.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Create a landing page on the workspace that you want to set as the new default home page for guest users.  
For information on how to create a landing page, see [“Creating and Managing Landing Pages”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- 3 Set the access control for the workspace to allow guest users to be visitors to the workspace.
  - 3a Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Access Control**.
  - 3b In the **Inherit role membership** section, select **no**, then click **Apply**.
  - 3c Click **Add User**, start typing **Guest** in the **Add a User** field, then click **Guest** when it appears in the drop-down list.

This adds **Guest** as a new row in the Access Control table.

✓ designates the access control setting of the parent workspace

Add User Names from Clipboard

		Add a Role ▾			
		Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	Owner of Workspace or Folder	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Team Members	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add a Group ▾

Group Title	Group Name	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
All Users <sup>1</sup>	allUsers <sup>1</sup>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add a User ▾

User Title	User Id	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
Guest	guest	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Add an Application Group ▾

Application Group Title	Application Group Name	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no application groups--					

Add an Application ▾

Application Title	Application Name	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no applications--					

- 3d In the **Guest** row, ensure that the box is selected in the **Visitor** column.
- 3e Click **Save Changes > Close**.
- 4 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 5 Under **System**, click **Default Landing Pages**.

#### Default Landing Pages

**Default Home Page**

Select the Folder or Workspace to be the Default Home Page for this Zone

The current home page is: Victory Regional Medical Center  
 Delete

---

**Default Guest Home Page**

Select the Folder or Workspace to be the Default Home Page for Guest Users

The current guest home page is: Victory Regional Medical Center  
 Delete

- 6 In the **Select the Folder or Workspace to be the Default Home Page for Guest Users** field, begin typing the name of the folder or workspace that you want to set as the default home page for guest users, then click it when it appears in the drop-down list.
- 7 Click **OK**.

## Removing the Default Home Page

If you remove the default home page, users are taken to their individual workspaces when they first access the Vibe site.

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **System**, click **Default Landing Pages**.

- 3 Beneath **The current home page is**, select **Delete**.

#### Default Landing Pages

**Default Home Page**

Select the Folder or Workspace to be the Default Home Page for this Zone

The current home page is: Victory Regional Medical Center

Delete

**Default Guest Home Page**

Select the Folder or Workspace to be the Default Home Page for Guest Users

The current guest home page is: Victory Regional Medical Center

Delete

OK Close

- 4 Click **OK**.

## Re-Branding the Login Dialog Box

You can change the image that is used in the login dialog box that users see before they log in to the Micro Focus Vibe site.

To re-brand the login dialog box to contain a custom image:

- 1 Sign in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- The Administration page is displayed.
- 3 In the **System** section, click **Site Branding**.
- The Site Branding dialog box is displayed.
- 4 In the Sign In Dialog Image section, use the drop-down list to select an existing image, or click the **Browse** icon  to browse to an image on your computer's file system.
- 5 Click **OK**.

## Enabling User ID Auto-Completion for the Login Dialog Box

You can enable auto-completion for the **User ID** field in the login dialog box for your Micro Focus Vibe site. When you enable auto-completion, each user in your Vibe site can start typing his or her user ID and then select it from a drop-down list when it appears.

To enable auto-completion for your Vibe site:

- 1 Change to the following directory:

Linux: /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config

Windows: c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config

- 2 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 3 Scroll to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, then add the following line:

```
enable.login.autocomplete=true
```

- 4 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 5 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Customizing Vibe Styles

You can customize colors, background images, and fonts throughout the Vibe interface. You might want to do this if you want to change the default Vibe styles to better match your corporate theme.

You must have knowledge of CSS styling to successfully customize styles in your Vibe site. When customizing styles, you need to either add a style, change an existing style, or delete a style.

For information about how to customize icons throughout the Vibe site, see “TID 7007607: Modifying the Default Vibe Icons” in the [Novell Support Knowledgebase \(http://www.novell.com/support\)](http://www.novell.com/support).

---

**IMPORTANT:** As you customize styles on the Vibe server, back up the changes you are making and record where you are making them. This is because when you upgrade your Vibe system to a new version, any style changes that you have made could be overwritten. You might need your backups and detailed notes in order to re-create your customized Vibe styles after an upgrade.

---

Most style customizations in Vibe are accomplished through the modification of CSS style sheets. Some style settings in the Vibe interface are contained within JSP files.

The type of files that you need to modify in order to affect Vibe styles depends on the area of the Vibe interface that you want to customize, as shown in the following table.

*Table 4-1 CSS Style Locations*

Area of Vibe Interface	Type of File to Modify	Location on the Vibe Server
Masthead	CSS style sheet	apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/static/version/js/gwt/gwtteaming/GwtTeaming.css
Navigation Panel	CSS style sheet	apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/static/version/js/gwt/gwtteaming/GwtTeaming.css
Action Toolbar	CSS Style Sheet	apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/static/version/js/gwt/gwtteaming/GwtTeaming.css
User Profile Page	CSS Style Sheet	apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/static/version/js/gwt/gwtteaming/GwtProfile.css
Content Area	JSP file	apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/jsp/common

To customize styles for your Vibe system:

- 1 Find the CSS selector name for the area of the interface for which you want to customize the style setting.

For example, suppose you want to modify the color or font of the Action toolbar for your Vibe site. You use Firebug on Firefox to find the selector name for the Action toolbar, which is `mainMenuControl`.

- 2 On the Vibe server, navigate to the directory where the style that you want to modify is located. See [Table 4-1](#) for the file location on the Vibe server.

For example, [Table 4-1](#) shows that the `mainMenuControl` selector for the Action toolbar is located in the `apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/static/version/js/gwt/gwtteaming` directory, in the `GwtTeaming.css` file.

- 3 Open the appropriate file in an editor, then search for the selector name.

For example, to customize the color of the Action toolbar, open the `GwtTeaming.css` file, then search for `mainMenuControl`.

If the appropriate file is a JSP file, you first need to locate the appropriate JSP file.

- 4 Make your desired style modifications in one of the following ways:

- ◆ In the CSS style sheet, modify the value of the CSS definition that you want to customize, add a new CSS definition, or delete an existing CSS definition.
- ◆ Modify any images that are referenced in the CSS style sheet by navigating to the directory where the images reside and making changes there.

If you modify an image that is not referenced in the CSS style sheet, your modifications are not reflected in the Vibe interface.

- 5 Save your changes on the Vibe server, then clear the browser cache and refresh the browser to see the changes.

Following are examples of color and font changes to the Action toolbar:

The Action toolbar has been changed to red, and the font has been changed.

## Customizing Icons on Your Vibe Site

- ◆ [“Replacing Existing Icons” on page 77](#)
- ◆ [“Adding New Icons” on page 78](#)

### Replacing Existing Icons

You can customize your Micro Focus Vibe site by replacing standard icons with icons of your own choosing.

- 1 Change to the following directory:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config`

- 2 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 3 Search for `icons` in order to move to the section that defines the Vibe icons.

Four types of icons are listed:

```
icons.workspace=  
icons.folder=  
icons.profileList=  
icons.entry=
```

These icons are stored in the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
            webapps/ssf/images/icons  
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
            webapps\ssf\images\icons
```

- 4 Replace standard image files with your own image files with the same filenames.

This replaces the standard Vibe icons with your own customized icons. The next time you access the Vibe site, your customized icons display instead of the standard Vibe icons.

## Adding New Icons

You can add icons to your Vibe site for use in areas of the Vibe site that you are customizing on a significant scale.

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
            webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config  
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
            webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 2 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 3 Search for `icons` in order to move to the section that defines the Vibe icons.

Four types of Vibe icons are listed:

```
icons.workspace=  
icons.folder=  
icons.profileList=  
icons.entry=
```

These Vibe icons are stored in the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
            webapps/ssf/images/icons  
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
            webapps\ssf\images\icons
```

- 4 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, located in the same directory with the `ssf.properties` file.
- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the `Icons` section from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 List additional image files for each icon type as needed.

- 8 Add the new image files to the appropriate subdirectory under the `icons` directory where the existing Vibe icons are stored.
- 9 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 10 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 11 Stop and restart Vibe to make the new icons available on your Vibe site.

## Configuring How Items Are Displayed in the What's New Page

Micro Focus Vibe users can view what's new in Vibe by using the What's New page. Users can quickly see what's new in their teams, favorite places, and more.

As the Vibe administrator, you can control various aspects of the What's New page by modifying Vibe configuration settings.

- ♦ [“Understanding the Configuration Settings You Can Customize for the What's New Page” on page 79](#)
- ♦ [“Changing the Configuration Settings for the What's New Page” on page 81](#)

## Understanding the Configuration Settings You Can Customize for the What's New Page

The tables in the following sections describe configuration settings for the What's New page that the Vibe administrator can customize, the system default for the setting, and the line in the `ssf-ext.properties` file that controls the setting:

- ♦ [“Customizing the Number of Comments That Can Be Displayed for Each Entry on the What's New Page” on page 79](#)
- ♦ [“Customizing the Number of Words That Are Displayed for Each Item on the What's New Page” on page 80](#)
- ♦ [“Customizing How Often the What's New Page Is Updated” on page 80](#)
- ♦ [“Customizing the Number of Items That Are Returned When the What's New Page Is Updated” on page 80](#)
- ♦ [“Restricting the What's New Page from Being Displayed When Users First Log In” on page 81](#)

### Customizing the Number of Comments That Can Be Displayed for Each Entry on the What's New Page

Configuration Setting	System Default	Line in the <code>ssf-ext.properties</code> File
The maximum number of comments that are displayed for any given entry.	2 comments	<code>activity.stream.active.comments</code>

## Customizing the Number of Words That Are Displayed for Each Item on the What's New Page

---

Configuration Setting	System Default	Line in the <code>ssf-ext.properties</code> File
The maximum number of words that are displayed for each item on the What's New page.	-1 (The first several lines of an item are displayed)	<code>activity.stream.display.words</code>

---

## Customizing How Often the What's New Page Is Updated

---

Configuration Setting	System Default	Line in the <code>ssf-ext.properties</code> File
How often the What's New page is updated to display the most recent posts.	60 seconds	<code>activity.stream.interval.refresh.client</code>

---

**NOTE:** Adjusting this setting to update the What's New page more frequently than the system default (60 seconds) can result in inadequate system performance. However, depending on how many users access your Vibe system and your current configuration, a more frequent or less frequent update cycle might be appropriate.

---

## Customizing the Number of Items That Are Returned When the What's New Page Is Updated

---

Configuration Setting	System Default	Line in the <code>ssf-ext.properties</code> File
The maximum number of new or modified items that are returned by the search (includes entries and comments).	1000 items	<code>activity.stream.maxhits</code>

---

## Restricting the What's New Page from Being Displayed When Users First Log In

Configuration Setting	System Default	Line in the <code>ssf-ext.properties</code> File
Defines whether the What's New page is displayed when users first log in to the Vibe site. If the value of this line is <code>true</code> , the What's New page is displayed. If the value is <code>false</code> , users see their personal workspaces when they first log in to the Vibe site.	<code>true</code> (The What's New page is displayed when users first log in)	<code>activity.stream.on.login</code>

**IMPORTANT:** If you have specified a default home page for your Vibe site, as described in [“Setting a Default Home Page” on page 71](#), users are taken to that home page when they first log in to the Vibe site, regardless of this setting.

## Changing the Configuration Settings for the What's New Page

To change the configuration settings of the What's New page:

- 1 Change to the following directory:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config`

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for the appropriate line that represents the configuration setting that you want to customize for the What's New page.

See the table in [“Understanding the Configuration Settings You Can Customize for the What's New Page” on page 79](#) to find the line in the `ssf-ext.properties` file that controls the setting that you want to customize.

For example, if you want to change the number of words that are displayed for each item on the What's New page, search for the line `activity.stream.display.words=-1`, then change the value to the number of words that you want to be displayed. For example, `activity.stream.display.words=25`.

- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the appropriate line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Change the default value of the line to the value that you want.

- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Sorting Names throughout the Vibe Site by Last Name

By default, where lists of users are displayed in Vibe, names are sorted by first name (for example, Anne Marie Hall), rather than by last name (for example, Hall, Anne Marie).

A list of users in your Vibe system are displayed in the following locations:

- ◆ Navigation Panel in the Personal Workspaces workspace.

You access the Personal Workspaces workspace by clicking the **Workspace tree** icon , expanding **Home Workspace**, then clicking **Personal Workspaces**.

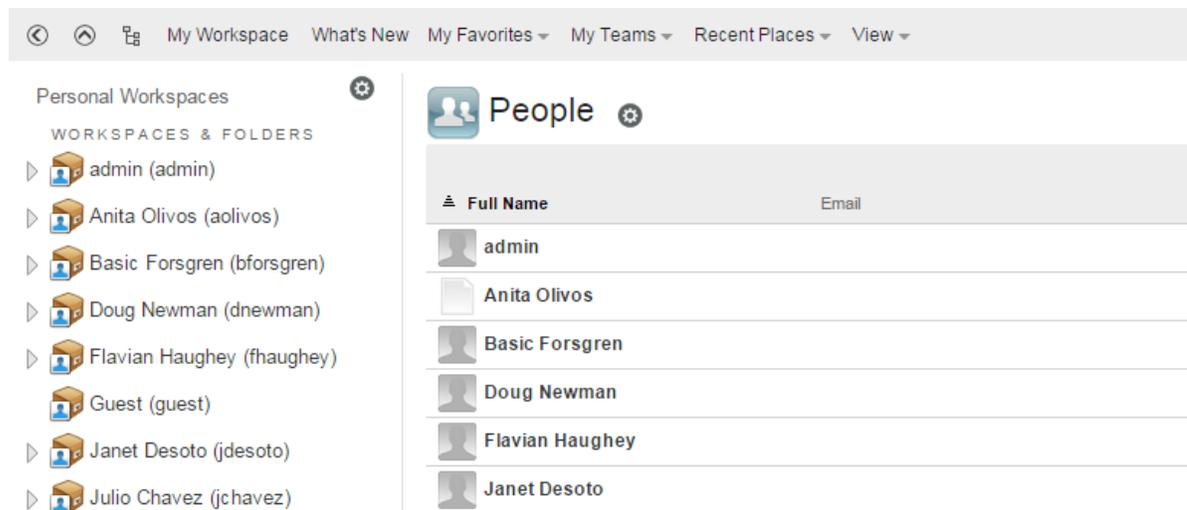
- ◆ Workspace tree in the Action toolbar.

You access the Workspace tree by clicking the **Workspace tree** icon  in the Action toolbar.

- ◆ Workspace tree in other areas throughout the Vibe site.

The workspace tree appears in other locations throughout Vibe, such as in the Search Index.

The following figure shows names in the Navigation panel sorted by first name.



To configure the Vibe site to sort names by last name:

- 1 Change to the following directory:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config`

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for the following line:

```
wsTree.titleFormat=0
```

- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the appropriate line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Change 0 to 1, so that the line now reads `wsTree.titleFormat=1`.
- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Managing How Group Names Are Displayed during Name Completion

Certain fields throughout the Vibe site employ name completion (or Type-to-Find) functionality. For example, when you share an item in Vibe and you begin typing the name of a user or group in the Share with field, names of users or groups that match what you have typed so far appear in a drop-down list.

In the Type-to-Find drop-down list, Vibe includes the group name or group title, as well as secondary information about the group (either the group description or the Fully Qualified DN). This secondary information helps distinguish between multiple groups that have the same name.

Vibe allows you to determine the way group names are displayed in this Type-to-Find drop-down list.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080
```

```
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the host name or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon.
- 3 Under **System**, click **Name Completion Settings**.

The following options are available:

**Primary display text:** Select Name or Title. Name represents the name of the group as it appears in Vibe. Title represents the title as it appears in the LDAP directory.

**Secondary display text:** Select Description or Fully Qualified DN. Description represents the description of the group as it appears in Vibe. Fully Qualified DN represents the Fully Qualified Domain Name as it appears in the LDAP directory.

- 4 Click **OK**.



## Changing Global File Associations for Edit in Place Applications

When calling applications with the Edit in Place feature, Micro Focus Vibe uses the file associations defined in the `ssf.properties` file, unless there is no association, in which case it defaults to the application defined on each user's system.

To reconfigure Vibe to use the preferred file association for all users on the Vibe site:

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
           webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config
```

```
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
           webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for `Edit in place` to move to the block of lines that control the Edit in Place feature.
- 5 Review the subsequent comment lines to become more familiar with how the Edit in Place feature works.
- 6 Scroll down to locate the lines for the file associations that you want to change.
- 7 Copy the lines to the clipboard of your text editor.
- 8 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Scroll to the end of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, then paste the line you copied in [Step 7](#).
- 10 Edit the file association as needed.  
Use double backslashes for Mac or Linux systems when you need to include a space in the path, as shown in the above example.
- 11 (Optional) Copy additional lines from the `ssf.properties` file to the `ssf-ext.properties` file as needed.
- 12 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 13 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 14 Stop and restart Vibe to put the modified file associations into affect for your Vibe site.

## Configuring Vibe to Support Additional File Types for Edit in Place Applications

You can configure Vibe to support other document editors to the list of documents that Vibe can edit using Edit in Place.

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
           webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config
```

```
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
           webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for `Edit in place` to move to the block of lines that control the Edit in Place feature.
- 5 Review the subsequent comment lines to become more familiar with how the Edit in Place feature works.
- 6 Copy the following line to the clipboard of your text editor:  

```
edit.in.place.file.applet.extensions=
```
- 7 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 8 Scroll to the end of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, then paste the line you copied in [Step 6](#).
- 9 Add the file extension to the comma-delimited list of file extensions.
- 10 (Optional) Copy additional lines from the `ssf.properties` file to the `ssf-ext.properties` file as needed.
- 11 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 12 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 13 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Understanding and Configuring Search Functionality

Micro Focus Vibe contains various features that control how items are indexed and how searches are executed on the Vibe site. As the Vibe administrator, you can configure the settings for these features. The default configurations are optimal for most Vibe sites.

These features are supported only with Vibe folder entries that contain English or other Western European languages. (For a list of supported languages, see [“Supported Languages for Indexing and Searching for the Root Form of Words”](#) on page 92.)

- ◆ [“Removing Frequently Used Words That Have No Inherent Meaning”](#) on page 86
- ◆ [“Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word”](#) on page 87
- ◆ [“Searching for Words That Contain Accents”](#) on page 87
- ◆ [“Increasing the Number of Words That Are Indexed for Each Document”](#) on page 87
- ◆ [“Modifying Configuration Settings”](#) on page 87
- ◆ [“Supported Languages for Indexing and Searching for the Root Form of Words”](#) on page 92

### Removing Frequently Used Words That Have No Inherent Meaning

Vibe removes frequently used words that have no inherent meaning when items are indexed and when users perform a search. Examples of such words are `a`, `an`, `the`, `in`, `on`, `the`, and so forth.

This includes when users perform a search with quotation marks. For example, `"sell the products"` would return all of the following: `sell their products`, `sell with products`, `sell the products`, and so forth. However, it would not return `sell products`.

You can customize the words that Vibe considers to have no inherent meaning. For more information, see [“`lucene.indexing.stopwords.file.path`”](#) on page 89.

This functionality is enabled by default. For information on how to modify the default settings, see [“Modifying Configuration Settings” on page 87](#).

## Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word

When Vibe indexes a word, it indexes the root form of the word. Likewise, when users perform a search for a word, Vibe searches for the root form of the word and returns all matches. For example, performing a search on the word `research` returns all forms of the word, including `researching`, `researched`, and `researches`. Likewise, searching for the word `researching` returns results for `research`, `researches`, and so forth.

This functionality is enabled by default. For information on how to modify the default settings, see [“Modifying Configuration Settings” on page 87](#).

## Searching for Words That Contain Accents

When Vibe indexes a word, it indexes the word without accents, regardless of whether the word originally contains accents. Likewise, when users perform a search for a word, Vibe searches for the word without accents, regardless of whether the user uses accents during the search. This means that when a user performs a search on the word `cliché`, Vibe returns results for the word `cliché` and `cliche`. Vibe also returns both forms of the word if the user performs a search on the word `cliche`.

This functionality is enabled by default. For information on how to modify the default settings, see [“Modifying Configuration Settings” on page 87](#).

## Increasing the Number of Words That Are Indexed for Each Document

Vibe indexes all the words (and their variations) in documents that are uploaded to the Vibe site. In most cases, the default settings are sufficient to index documents that contain tens of pages.

If you have very large documents (hundreds or thousands of pages per document) that are stored on your Vibe site, you might encounter problems with parts of the document not being returned in search results. This can be due to the fact that the document is not being indexed in its entirety, because the document is too large. In this case, you might want to increase the number of words that are indexed for each document. Be aware that increasing the number of words that are indexed uses more system resources (RAM and disk space).

You can increase the number of words that are indexed for each document that is added to the Vibe site. For information on how to do this, see [“Modifying Configuration Settings” on page 87](#).

## Modifying Configuration Settings

The location of the configuration file on the Vibe server depends on whether you have a single Lucene Index Server that is located on the same server as Vibe, or if your Lucene Index Server is located on a remote server or you have multiple Lucene Index Servers.

For more information about the various ways that you can set up the Lucene Index Server, see [“Changing Your Lucene Index Server Configuration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

To modify configuration settings for the Search feature:

- 1 Change to the following directory:



**Table 4-2** Removing Frequently Used Words

Setting	Function
<code>lucene.indexing.stopwords.enable</code>	<p>Enables or disables the functionality that removes frequently used words that have no inherent meaning when items are added to the index. For more information, see <a href="#">“Removing Frequently Used Words That Have No Inherent Meaning”</a> on page 86.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>true</code> (enabled).</p>
<code>lucene.indexing.stopwords.file.charset</code>	<p>If you have provided your own file that contains frequently used words that you want to be ignored (as described in <a href="#">“<code>lucene.indexing.stopwords.file.path</code>”</a> on page 89), you can change the default character encoding of the file that contains the new words.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>UTF-8</code>.</p>
<code>lucene.indexing.stopwords.file.path</code>	<p>Lets you point to a file that you create that contains your own list of words that you want Vibe to ignore when items are added to the index. This file should be in a directory where it does not get overwritten or removed during an upgrade. If you are running Vibe in a clustered environment, this should be a directory that is accessible to and shared by all Vibe nodes.</p> <p>You must specify the full path to the file.</p> <p>Each line of the file should contain only one word.</p> <p>All words in the file must be in lowercase.</p> <p>By default, there is no file path specified, and Vibe defaults to a list of common words that are not normally useful when performing a search, such as <code>a</code>, <code>in</code>, <code>this</code>, and so forth.</p>
<code>lucene.searching.stopwords.enable</code>	<p>Enables or disables the functionality that removes frequently used words that have no inherent meaning when users perform a search. For more information, see <a href="#">“Removing Frequently Used Words That Have No Inherent Meaning”</a> on page 86.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>true</code> (enabled).</p>
<code>lucene.searching.stopwords.file.charset</code>	<p>If you have provided your own file that contains frequently used words that you want to be ignored (as described in <a href="#">“<code>lucene.indexing.stopwords.file.path</code>”</a> on page 89), you can change the default character encoding of the file that contains the new words.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>UTF-8</code>.</p>

Setting	Function
<code>lucene.searching.stopwords.file.path</code>	<p>Lets you point to a file that you create that contains your own list of words that you want Vibe to ignore when performing a search. This file should be in a directory where it does not get overwritten or removed during an upgrade. If you are running Vibe in a clustered environment, this should be a directory that is accessible to and shared by all Vibe nodes.</p> <p>You must specify the full path to the file.</p> <p>Each line of the file should contain only one word.</p> <p>All words in the file must be in lowercase.</p> <p>By default, there is no file path specified, and Vibe defaults to a list of common words that are not normally useful when performing a search, such as a, in, this, and so forth.</p> <p>If you leave all three search features enabled (removing frequently used words, searching for various forms of the same word, and searching for words that contain accents), and you want to specify words to ignore that contain accents, you must specify both forms of the word (with and without the accents).</p>

**Table 4-3** Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word

Setting	Function
<code>lucene.indexing.stemming.enable</code>	<p>Enables or disables the functionality that indexes various forms of the same word. For more information, see <a href="#">“Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word” on page 87</a>.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>true</code> (enabled).</p>
<code>lucene.indexing.stemming.stemmer.names</code>	<p>Lets you specify the language that you want Vibe to use when indexing the root form of words. For more information, see <a href="#">“Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word” on page 87</a>.</p> <p>By default, the language is <code>English</code>.</p> <p>For information about which languages are available, see <a href="#">“Supported Languages for Indexing and Searching for the Root Form of Words” on page 92</a>.</p>
<code>lucene.searching.stemming.enable</code>	<p>Enables or disables the functionality that lets users search for various forms of the same word. For more information, see <a href="#">“Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word” on page 87</a>.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>true</code> (enabled).</p>

Setting	Function
<code>lucene.searching.stemming.stemmer.names</code>	<p>Lets you specify the language that you want Vibe to use when searching for the root form of words. For more information, see <a href="#">“Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word”</a> on page 87.</p> <p>By default, the language is <code>English</code>.</p> <p>For information about which languages are available, see <a href="#">“Supported Languages for Indexing and Searching for the Root Form of Words”</a> on page 92.</p>

**Table 4-4** *Searching for Words That Contain Accents*

Setting	Function
<code>lucene.indexing.asciifolding.enable</code>	<p>Enables or disables the functionality that indexes words with accents as well as the same word without the accents. For more information, see <a href="#">“Searching for Words That Contain Accents”</a> on page 87.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>true</code> (enabled).</p>
<code>lucene.searching.asciifolding.enable</code>	<p>Enables or disables the functionality that lets users search for words with accents as well as the same word without the accents. For more information, see <a href="#">“Searching for Words That Contain Accents”</a> on page 87.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>true</code> (enabled).</p>

**Table 4-5** *Increasing the Number of Words That Are Indexed for Each Document*

Setting	Function
<code>lucene.max.fieldlength</code>	<p>Designates the maximum number of terms that are indexed for each document that is uploaded to Vibe. Be aware that the number of terms per document can be much higher than the number of words in the document (because stemming and ascii folding capabilities enable various forms of each word in the document to be indexed). Only terms that are indexed appear in search results. For more information, see <a href="#">“Increasing the Number of Words That Are Indexed for Each Document”</a> on page 87.</p> <p>By default, the value is <code>100000</code>.</p>

Setting	Function
<code>doc.conversion.size.threshold</code>	<p>Depending on your specific environment and need, you might need to modify this setting in addition to the <code>lucene.max.fieldlength</code> setting.</p> <p>Designates the size of the document that can be indexed in the Vibe site. For more information, see <a href="#">“Increasing the Number of Words That Are Indexed for Each Document” on page 87.</a></p> <p>By default, the value is 31457280.</p>
<code>doc.max.text.extraction.size.threshold</code>	<p>Depending on your specific environment and need, you might need to modify this setting in addition to the <code>lucene.max.fieldlength</code> setting.</p> <p>Designates the maximum size of a document that can be indexed in the Vibe site after the document has undergone file conversion. For more information, see <a href="#">“Increasing the Number of Words That Are Indexed for Each Document” on page 87.</a></p> <p>By default, the value is 1048576 (about 1MB).</p>

## Supported Languages for Indexing and Searching for the Root Form of Words

By default, when Vibe indexes a word, it indexes the root form of the word. Likewise, when users perform a search for a word, Vibe searches for the root form of the word and returns all matches. (For more information, see [“Searching for Various Forms of the Same Word” on page 87.](#))

The default language of the Vibe site is irrelevant in regards to indexing and searching for the root form of words; Vibe detects the language for each individual entry when it performs the indexing and search.

You can configure Vibe to use any of the following languages when indexing and searching for the root form of words (the default is English):

- ◆ Danish
- ◆ Dutch
- ◆ English
- ◆ Finnish
- ◆ French
- ◆ German
- ◆ German2 (This is a modified version of German that handles umlaut characters differently. Appends an `e` after vowels that would otherwise have an umlaut. For example, `ä` becomes `ae`, `ë` becomes `oe`, and `ü` becomes `ue`.)
- ◆ Hungarian
- ◆ Italian
- ◆ Norwegian
- ◆ Porter (This is for the English language; this option simply indexes and searches in a different way.)

- ♦ Portuguese
- ♦ Romanian
- ♦ Russian
- ♦ Spanish
- ♦ Swedish
- ♦ Turkish

## Understanding and Configuring Document Conversions with Micro Focus KeyView

Micro Focus Vibe uses the Micro Focus KeyView converter to perform document conversions. Documents undergo two types of conversions:

- ♦ Word conversion when they are first added to the Vibe site
- ♦ HTML conversion when they are viewed as HTML from the Vibe site

If the Micro Focus KeyView converter is crashing with certain file types during the word conversion process, you can exclude the problematic file types from being indexed to the Vibe site.

- ♦ [“Configuring Which File Formats Can Be Viewed as HTML” on page 93](#)
- ♦ [“Excluding File Types from Being Indexed” on page 93](#)

## Configuring Which File Formats Can Be Viewed as HTML

Many file formats in Micro Focus Vibe can be viewed as HTML by default, as described in [“Viewing the File in HTML Format”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*. File formats that can be viewed as HTML by default are: .123, .bmp, .doc, .docx, .dotm, .drw, .dxf, .htm, .html, .lwp, .odp, .ods, .odt, .ppt, .pptx, .prz, .rtf, .shw, .sxw, .tif, .txt, .vsd, .wpd, .xls, .xlsx, .sxi

Some file formats, such as .pdf files, cannot be viewed as HTML by default. This is because the quality of these files is lessened when viewed as HTML. However, if you choose, you can enable non-default file formats, such as .pdf files, to be viewed as HTML.

Not all file formats can be enabled to be viewed as HTML in Vibe, but many can be. If you are unsure whether Vibe supports a particular file format to be viewed as HTML, try it and see.

You can enable additional file formats to be viewed as HTML during the Vibe installation, as described in [“Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Excluding File Types from Being Indexed

If the Micro Focus KeyView converter is crashing with certain file types during indexing, you can restrict the problematic file types from being indexed.

- ♦ [“Excluding File Types from Being Indexed to the Vibe Site” on page 94](#)
- ♦ [“Excluding File Types from Being Displayed in HTML” on page 94](#)







# 5 Setting Up User Access to the Vibe Site

- ◆ [“Adding New Users to Your Vibe Site” on page 97](#)
- ◆ [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#)
- ◆ [“Restricting Groups of Users from Seeing One Another” on page 103](#)
- ◆ [“Allowing Guest Access to Your Vibe Site” on page 104](#)
- ◆ [“Allowing Users Limited External Access to Your Vibe Site” on page 108](#)
- ◆ [“Allowing Web Crawler Access to Your Vibe Site” on page 108](#)
- ◆ [“Disabling User Access to the Vibe Site on the Web” on page 109](#)
- ◆ [“Managing Mobile Device Access to Your Vibe Site” on page 111](#)

## Adding New Users to Your Vibe Site

You can add new users to your Vibe site in any of the following ways:

- ◆ Synchronizing from an LDAP directory, as described in [“Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory” on page 203](#).
- ◆ Manually adding local users, as described in [“Creating a New Local User” on page 218](#).
- ◆ Importing profile files for local users, as described in [“Managing Local Users and Groups by Importing Profile Files” on page 224](#).

## Creating Groups of Users

This section describes how to create groups within Vibe. You can also synchronize groups of users from your LDAP directory to your Micro Focus Vibe site, as described in [“Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory” on page 203](#).

You can use existing groups or create additional groups within Vibe to facilitate access control on your Vibe site. For background information on access control, see [“Controlling Access”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

In addition to creating groups to assist with access control, you might want to create groups for any of the following reasons:

- ◆ To facilitate team creation, as described in [“Creating a Team Workspace”](#) in [“Getting Started”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.
- ◆ To facilitate managing data quotas, as described in [“Managing User Data Quotas” on page 242](#).
- ◆ To facilitate user visibility restrictions, as described in [“Restricting Groups of Users from Seeing One Another” on page 103](#).
- ◆ To create multiple Vibe administrators, as described in [“Creating Additional Vibe Administrators” on page 18](#).

Users are responsible for access control in their personal workspaces and any team workspaces that they create. As the Vibe site administrator, you are responsible for access control in public locations such as global workspaces. By creating groups of users who have attributes in common, you and

other Vibe users can set access controls and create teams without listing users individually. Groups can be nested within groups, so create small groups first, then build larger groups from your smaller groups.

You can create either static or dynamic groups.

- ◆ [“Creating Static Groups” on page 98](#)
- ◆ [“Creating Dynamic Groups” on page 99](#)

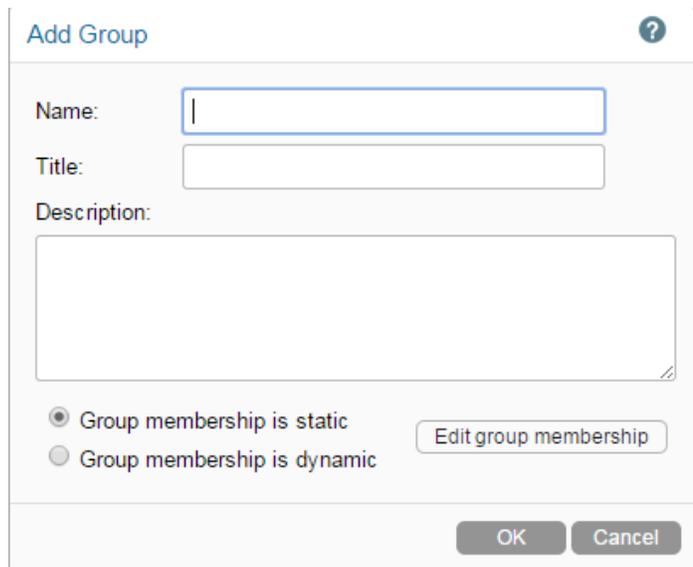
## Creating Static Groups

Static groups are groups whose membership does not change based on LDAP queries.

This section describes how to create static groups directly from Vibe. You can synchronize static groups to Vibe from your LDAP directory as described in [“Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory” on page 203](#).

To create static groups in Vibe:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Groups**, then click **New**.



- 4 Fill in the following fields:

**Name:** Specify the unique name under which the group is stored in the Vibe database. You can use alphanumeric characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9), hyphens (-), and underscores (\_).

**Title:** Specify the group name that displays to users on the Vibe site. This string can include any characters that you can type.

**Description:** Describe what the members of this group have in common.

- 5 Select **Group membership is static**.

This means that group membership does not change based on LDAP queries.

- 6 Click **Edit group membership**.

Static membership for group:

**Users** Groups

User:

Remove

Name

No users are members of this group

0-0 of 0

OK Cancel

- 7 Click the **Users** or **Groups** tab, depending on whether you want to add users or groups to the group that you are creating.
- 8 In the **User** or **Group** field, specify the name of the user or group that you want to add to the group that you are creating, then click the name of the user or group when it appears in the drop-down list.
- 9 Repeat [Step 7](#) and [Step 8](#) to add multiple users and groups to the group that you are creating, then click **OK** when you have finished adding users and groups.
- 10 Click **OK** to create the group.  
After you have created one or more small groups, you can use the **Groups** field to create larger groups from smaller groups.

## Creating Dynamic Groups

Groups based on LDAP queries are dynamic in that they can be configured to have their membership updated when the information in the LDAP directory changes.

Creating groups based on LDAP queries is a quick way to create Vibe groups that consist of users who match specific criteria. You can create dynamic groups as described in the following sections:

- ♦ [“Creating Dynamic Groups within LDAP” on page 100](#)
- ♦ [“Creating Dynamic Groups within Vibe” on page 100](#)

## Creating Dynamic Groups within LDAP

Depending on the LDAP directory that you are using, you might be able to create dynamic groups within your LDAP directory. For example, you can create dynamic group objects in eDirectory with iManager (for more information, see the [iManager Documentation \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/imanager27/index.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/imanager27/index.html)).

Dynamic groups created within LDAP are stored in your LDAP directory and can then be synchronized to Vibe, as described in [“Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory” on page 203](#)

## Creating Dynamic Groups within Vibe

You can create dynamic groups in Vibe by querying the LDAP directory.

- ♦ [“Prerequisites” on page 100](#)
- ♦ [“Advantages” on page 100](#)
- ♦ [“Considerations with Multiple LDAP Sources” on page 101](#)
- ♦ [“Creating the Group” on page 101](#)

### Prerequisites

- ♦ Users must already have existing Vibe user accounts in order for them to be added to a Vibe group as described in this section. If your LDAP query includes users who are not already Vibe users, the users are not added to the Vibe group
- ♦ When configuring your LDAP connection, you must specify the GUID name (LDAP attribute that uniquely identifies the user), because the value of this attribute never changes. For eDirectory, this value is `GUID`. For Active Directory, this value is `objectGUID`. For GoupWise, this value is `entryUUID`. For more information about this attribute, see [“Server Information” on page 205](#).

The Vibe process that creates a dynamic group uses the LDAP configuration settings in Vibe to authenticate to the LDAP directory server. The credentials that are used are the LDAP server URL, user DN, and password. For more information on how to configure these and other LDAP configuration settings in Vibe, see [“Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory” on page 203](#).

### Advantages

Advantages to creating dynamic groups within Vibe rather than within your LDAP directory include:

- ♦ Allows the Vibe administrator to control group membership without having direct access to the group object in the LDAP user store.
- ♦ Your LDAP directory might not support dynamic groups.
- ♦ You do not want dynamic groups to sync to applications other than Vibe that are leveraging your LDAP directory.

## Considerations with Multiple LDAP Sources

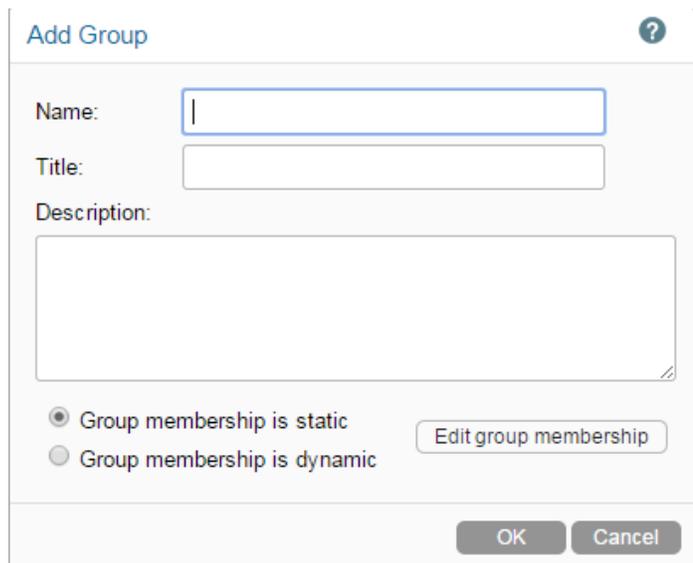
Consider the following if your Vibe site is configured with multiple LDAP sources:

- ♦ You should not create dynamic groups in Vibe if the base dn that you define for the dynamic group does not exist in each LDAP source. This is because the membership of the dynamic group might not get updated correctly.
- ♦ If your Vibe site is configured with multiple LDAP sources and the base dn that you define for the dynamic group exists in each LDAP source, the membership of the dynamic group contains users from each LDAP source that match the dynamic group's filter.

## Creating the Group

To create the dynamic group within Vibe:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Groups**, then click **Add**.



- 4 Fill in the following fields:

**Name:** Specify the unique name under which the group is stored in the Vibe database. You can use alphanumeric characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9), hyphens (-), and underscores (\_).

**Title:** Specify the group name that displays to users on the Vibe site. This string can include any characters that you can type.

**Description:** Describe what the members of this group have in common.

- 5 Select **Group membership is dynamic**.

This means that group membership is based on an LDAP query that you will define in this procedure.

- 6 Click **Edit group membership**.

Edit Dynamic Membership

Current membership: 0 users

Base DN:

LDAP Filter:

Search subtree

Update group membership during scheduled ldap synchronization

7 Specify the following options:

**Base DN:** Specify the base DN where you want to start your search.

If you have multiple LDAP sources, see [“Considerations with Multiple LDAP Sources”](#) on page 101 before proceeding.

**LDAP Filter:** Specify the filter criteria.

For example, to search for all users located in Utah, specify `(st=Utah)`.

**Search subtree:** Select this option if you want to also search for matches in subtrees of the base dn you are currently searching.

**Update group membership during scheduled ldap synchronization:** Select this option to update the membership of this group during each scheduled LDAP synchronization. Group membership is updated based on changes that might have occurred in the LDAP directory.

For information on how to set the LDAP synchronization schedule, see [“Configuring the Synchronization Schedule”](#) on page 213.

8 (Optional) Click **Test ldap query** to test the results of your LDAP query.

This process can take several minutes, depending on the size of your LDAP directory.

9 Click **OK > OK** to create the group.

# Restricting Groups of Users from Seeing One Another

If your Micro Focus Vibe site has multiple sets of users who need to remain hidden from each other, you can use access controls to restrict users who belong to a specific group from seeing users who do not belong to the group. For example, you might want to do this if your Vibe site contains users from more than one company and you want users to see only the users who belong to the same company.

You accomplish this by setting zone-level access controls on individual users or groups of users, limiting them to seeing only those users with whom they share a common group.

When you restrict groups of users from seeing one another in your Vibe site, you see the following behaviors:

- ◆ When users search for people in the Vibe site, they do not see the users they are restricted from seeing.
- ◆ By default, users cannot see the personal workspaces of users they are restricted from seeing. However, individual users can modify the access control settings of their personal workspaces to grant access to users who are restricted from seeing them. Users can do this by granting access to other groups.
- ◆ The Vibe site might contain folders and entries that are open to a wider audience, such as in a global workspace. If a restricted user has access to one of these folders, and an entry is posted by someone the user is not allowed to see, the name of the entry creator is hidden. The name is also hidden from the restricted user wherever else it might appear, such as in the Left Navigation pane or on the Search Results page.

For example, User B is restricted from seeing User A. When User A posts an entry in a global workspace, User B can see the entry but cannot see User A's name on the entry.

To restrict groups of users from seeing one another:

- 1 Create a group for each set of users that you want to keep separate. For example, create groups called Company A, Company B, and Company C.

For information about how to create a group, see [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#).

- 2 Populate each group with the appropriate users.

For information about how to populate groups with users, see [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#).

- 3 Navigate to the Administration page and add the groups to the **Can Only See Members of Groups I Am In** role or use the **Limit User Visibility** option as explained in [“Limiting User Visibility” on page 223](#).

If you want to allow certain members of a group to retain their ability to see users that belong to groups outside of their own, you can add these specific users to the **Override “Can Only See Members of Groups I Am In”** role.

For more information about these roles as well as other roles, see [“Controlling User Access to Administrative Functions” on page 30](#).

For information about how to add users and groups to a specific role, see [“Controlling User Access to Administrative Functions” on page 30](#).

---

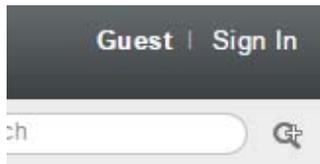
**IMPORTANT:** Do not create a group that contains users who you want to hide from each other. For example, if your Vibe site has users from Company A and Company B, you should not create a single group that contains users from both Company A and Company B. Users who belong to a common

group are able to see each other, regardless of any access controls that are set on other groups. If you must create a single group of users from multiple companies, first create a sub-group for each company so you can keep users' names separate from each other.

---

## Allowing Guest Access to Your Vibe Site

When a person arrives at the Micro Focus Vibe site URL, the person is considered to be a Guest user on the site, as indicated by the user name displayed in the upper right corner of the page:



This page is also the main Vibe login page. Users with Vibe user names can log in to their personal workspaces, and from there they can access any other locations where they have been granted access.

- ◆ [“Guest Access Limitations” on page 104](#)
- ◆ [“Understanding the Guest User” on page 105](#)
- ◆ [“Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site” on page 105](#)
- ◆ [“Configuring Any Workspace to Be the Default Home Page for Guest Users” on page 107](#)
- ◆ [“Enabling Individual Users to Grant Guest Access throughout the Vibe Site” on page 107](#)
- ◆ [“Monitoring Guest User Access” on page 108](#)

## Guest Access Limitations

Guest access to the Vibe site is not possible in the following situations:

- ◆ If you are using NetIQ Access Manager to provide single sign-on functionality.

For more information about NetIQ Access Manager, see [“Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

- ◆ If users are accessing the Vibe mobile interface. For guest users to access the Vibe site, they must access the full user interface from a browser.

For more information about accessing the Vibe mobile interface, see the [Micro Focus Vibe Mobile Quick Start \(https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile.html\)](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_mobile/data/vibe4_qs_mobile.html).

## Understanding the Guest User

As the administrator, you can choose whether you want people who do not have Vibe user names to be able to access information on the Vibe site as the Guest user.

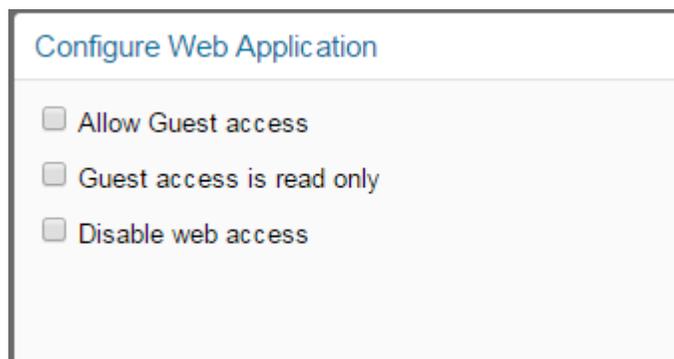
For example, a government organization such as a city might give Vibe user accounts only to key city knowledge workers. However, it is critical that other city workers and regular citizens also access the site to see a listing of upcoming events, read city news, report complaints, and so forth. As a Vibe administrator, you can use the Guest User workspace as a place to present information to non-registered Vibe users.

When people visit your Vibe site as the Guest user, they can have some or all of the following experiences, depending on the access controls that you set for the Guest user:

- ♦ Any user who knows the Vibe site URL can access the Guest workspace.
- ♦ The Relevance Dashboard in the Guest workspace displays only the information that the Guest user has been specifically granted access to see.
- ♦ A Guest user can find out what is accessible on the Vibe site by clicking the **Search Options** icon , selecting **Places**, then pressing the Spacebar.
- ♦ If a Guest user uses the Search feature, the only information returned is information that the Guest user has been granted access to see.
- ♦ When a Guest user adds a folder entry, the entry form requests the user's name and email address. This information is displayed like a signature when the folder entry is viewed. Providing the name and email address is optional.
- ♦ If you grant Participant rights to the Guest user, people who access the Vibe site as the Guest user can modify and delete entries and comments posted by other people who have accessed the Vibe site as the Guest user.

## Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Web Application**.



- 4 Under **System**, click **Configure Guest Access and Self Registration**.
- 5 Make sure that **Allow Guest Access** is selected, then click **Close**.

Even though this option is selected by default, the Guest workspace is initially inaccessible because the default user access control settings do not allow access.

- 6 (Optional) Select **Guest access is read only** if you do not want the Guest user to be allowed to add files or make comments on files.
- 7 Click **Close** again to close the Administration page.
- 8 Click the Workspace tree icon , expand **Home Workspaces**, then click **Personal Workspaces**.
- 9 Begin typing **Guest** in the **Entry** field, then click it in the drop-down list.  
The Guest user's personal workspace is displayed.
- 10 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Access Control**.
- 11 Ensure that **no** is selected in the Inherit role membership section. If it is not, select **no** then click **Apply**.



- 12 Add the roles that you want the Guest user to be able to perform in the Guest workspace:
  - 12a Click **Add a User**, start typing **Guest** in the **Add a User** field, then click **Guest** when it appears in the drop-down list.  
This adds **Guest** as a new row in the Access Control table.

✓ designates the access control setting of the parent workspace

Add User Names from Clipboard			Add a Role ▼			
			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	Owner of Workspace or Folder		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Team Members		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add a Group ▼			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	All Users 1	allUsers 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add a User ▼			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	Guest	guest	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Add an Application Group ▼			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no application groups--						
Add an Application ▼			Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no applications--						

- 12b Select one or more roles that you want the Guest user to be able to perform on the Guest User workspace. For example:  
**Visitor:** The Guest user can read entries and add comments or replies in folders in the Guest user workspace.

**Participant:** In addition to Visitor activities, the Guest user can also create new entries, and modify or delete his or her own entries.

For more information about the additional access control options, see [“Controlling Access”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

**12c** Click **Save Changes**, then click **Close**.

Now, when people access the Vibe site who do not have user names, they are admitted as a Guest user and see the What’s New page (only items that the Guest user has access to see are visible).

**13** (Conditional) If you want the Guest user to be able to access content throughout the Vibe site, add the Guest user to the Configure Access Control page for those workspaces or folders.

You can also enable specific Vibe users in addition to the Vibe administrator to grant Guest access to locations in your Vibe site, as described in [“Enabling Individual Users to Grant Guest Access throughout the Vibe Site”](#) on page 107.

**14** Notify people who might be interested in accessing your Vibe site about your Vibe site URL.

**15** (Conditional) If you want information on your Vibe site to be searchable on the Internet, see [“Allowing Web Crawler Access to Your Vibe Site”](#) on page 108.

## Configuring Any Workspace to Be the Default Home Page for Guest Users

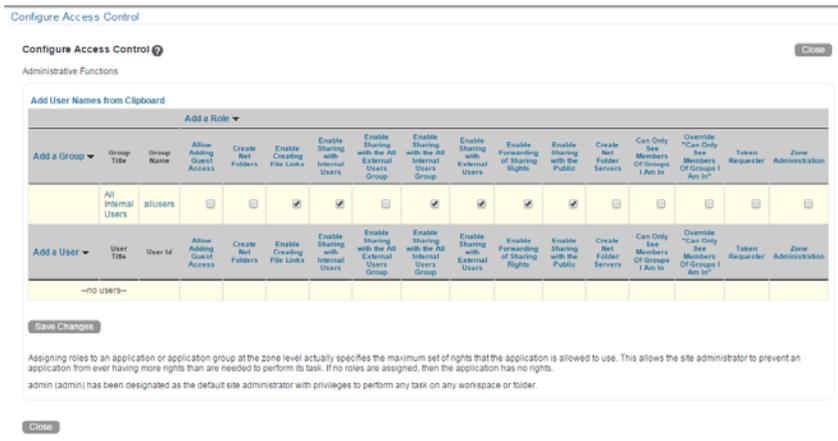
If you’re not satisfied with the What’s New page being the default home page for guest users, you can configure the Guest User workspace or a different workspace to be the default home page, giving you complete control over what guest users see when they first access the Vibe site.

For information on how to change the default home page for guest users, see [“Setting a Default Home Page for Guest Users”](#) on page 72.

## Enabling Individual Users to Grant Guest Access throughout the Vibe Site

If you want users in addition to the Vibe administrator to be able to grant Guest access to locations in your Vibe site:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Access Control**.



A basic Vibe site consists of a single zone. Micro Focus Vibe lets you set up multiple zones in a single Vibe site. For more information about zones, see [Chapter 18, “Setting Up Zones \(Virtual Vibe Sites\),”](#) on page 193.

- 4 Click **Add a User**, start typing the user’s name, then select the user from the drop-down list to add the user to the Access Control table.
- 5 Select the check box in the **Allow Adding Guest Access** column.
- 6 Repeat [Step 4](#) and [Step 5](#) for each user who you want to be able to grant Guest access to locations on your Vibe site.
- 7 Click **Save Changes**, then click **Close**.
- 8 Notify the users who are allowed to grant Guest access.

## Monitoring Guest User Access

As the Vibe site administrator, you can create a report of all locations on the Vibe site that the Guest user can access. For instructions, see [“User Access Report”](#) on page 296.

## Allowing Users Limited External Access to Your Vibe Site

Vibe lets you restrict what information users can access when they are outside your corporate firewall. For more information, see [“Restricting Access Rights of Users Outside the Firewall”](#) on page 38.

## Allowing Web Crawler Access to Your Vibe Site

If you allow Guest access to your Micro Focus Vibe site, as described in [“Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site”](#) on page 105, you can provide Internet search engines (such as Google) with the Vibe permalinks for workspaces and folders that you want to make publicly available on the Internet. A

Vibe permalink is the complete URL that someone outside of your Vibe site and outside of your organization, such as a [web crawler](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_crawler) ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web\\_crawler](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_crawler)), could use to access a specific location on your Vibe site.

- 1 To determine the permalink of a workspace or folder, click **Permalinks** at the bottom of a workspace or folder page.

## Disabling User Access to the Vibe Site on the Web

If you want users to have access to the Vibe system only through the Vibe desktop application, you can disable users' ability to access the Vibe site via a web browser.

You can restrict access to the Vibe site on the web for all users, or for specific users and groups. Alternatively, you can disable access to the site for all users and then enable access for specific users and groups.

- ◆ “Disabling Access for All Users” on page 109
- ◆ “Disabling or Enabling Access for Individual Users” on page 110
- ◆ “Disabling or Enabling Access for Individual Groups” on page 111

### Disabling Access for All Users

Disabling access as described in this section disables access to Vibe on the web for all users in the Vibe system, except for the Vibe administrator.

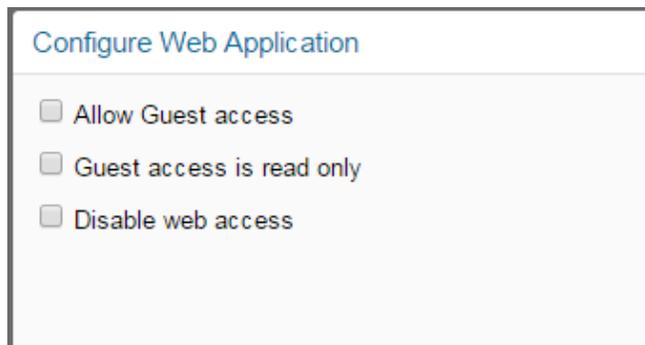
- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Web Application**.



- 4 Select **Disable web access**.
- 5 Click **OK**.

## Disabling or Enabling Access for Individual Users

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080  
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Users**.

The Manage Users page is displayed.
- 4 (Conditional) If you have not disabled access for all users (as described in [“Disabling Access for All Users” on page 109](#)), you can disable access for an individual user by clicking the drop-down arrow next to the user’s name and then clicking **Disable Web Access for this User**.

or

To disable access for multiple users, select the users whose access you want to disable, then click **More > Disable Web Access**.
- 5 (Conditional) If you have disabled access for all users, you can enable access for an individual user by clicking the drop-down arrow next to the user’s name and then clicking **Enable Web Access for this User**.

or

To enable access for multiple users, select the users whose access you want to enable, then click **More > Enable Web Access**.

## Disabling or Enabling Access for Individual Groups

1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.

1a Launch a web browser.

1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080  
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

3 Under **Management**, click **Groups**.

The Manage Groups page is displayed.

4 (Conditional) If you have not disabled access for all users (as described in “[Disabling Access for All Users](#)” on page 109), you can disable access for users who belong to an individual group by clicking the drop-down arrow next to the group name and then clicking **Disable Web Access for Users in this Group**.

or

To disable access for multiple users, select the users whose access you want to disable, then click **More > Disable Web Access**.

5 (Conditional) If you have disabled access for all users, you can enable access for users who belong to an individual group by clicking the drop-down arrow next to the group name and then clicking **Enable Web Access for Users in this Group**.

or

To enable access for multiple users, select the users whose access you want to enable, then click **More > Enable Web Access**.

## Managing Mobile Device Access to Your Vibe Site

By default, your Micro Focus Vibe site allows mobile device access at one of the following URLs, depending on whether or not you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://vibe_hostname/mobile  
https://vibe_hostname/mobile
```

In these URLs, *vibe\_hostname* is the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS.

For a list of supported mobile devices, see “[Mobile App Requirements](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe Mobile Quick Start* ([https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile.html](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_mobile/data/vibe4_qs_mobile.html)).

For instructions on using the mobile device interface to the Vibe site, see the *Micro Focus Vibe Mobile Quick Start* ([https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile.html](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_mobile/data/vibe4_qs_mobile.html)).

- ♦ “Restricting Mobile Device Access to Your Vibe Site” on page 112
- ♦ “Changing the Default View for Tablets” on page 112
- ♦ “Configuring Mobile Device Access with NetIQ Access Manager” on page 114

## Restricting Mobile Device Access to Your Vibe Site

As the Vibe administrator, you can prevent mobile device access to your Vibe site if necessary.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click *Mobile Access*.
- 4 Deselect **Enable Mobile Access**.
- 5 Click **Apply**, then click **Close**.

## Changing the Default View for Tablets

When users access the Vibe site through a browser (not through the mobile app), some tablets (such as the iPad and Kindle Fire) display the full UI by default (the same UI that is displayed when you access Vibe from your workstation). Other tablets (such as Android-based tablets) display the mobile UI by default.

For a better user experience, users should use the Vibe mobile app. For more information about accessing Vibe by using the mobile app, see the *Micro Focus Vibe Mobile Quick Start* ([https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile.html](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_mobile/data/vibe4_qs_mobile.html)).

- ♦ “Changing the Default View for the iPad” on page 112
- ♦ “Changing the Default View for Android Tablets” on page 113
- ♦ “Changing the Default View for All Other Tablets” on page 114

## Changing the Default View for the iPad

To change the default view for the iPad to display the mobile UI rather than the full UI:

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
            webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config
```

```
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
            webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 2 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 3 Search for the following line:

```
tablet.userAgentRegexp=(?:ipad)  
  
exclude.from.libreoffice.indexing.extensions=
```

- 4 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the `tablet.userAgentRegexp=(?:ipad)` line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 If you want the iPad to display the mobile UI, delete the value of this property (`(?:ipad)`), so that it now reads as follows:

```
tablet.userAgentRegexp=  
  
exclude.from.libreoffice.indexing.extensions=
```

- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Changing the Default View for Android Tablets

To change the default view for all tablets that are running the Android operating system to display Vibe in the Full UI rather than the mobile UI:

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
            webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config  
  
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
            webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 2 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
  - 3 Search for the following line:
- ```
tablet.useDefaultTestForAndroidTablets=false  
  
exclude.from.libreoffice.indexing.extensions=
```
- 4 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.

- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the `tablet.useDefaultTestForAndroidTablets=false` line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Change the value of this property from `false` to `true`, so that it now reads as follows:

```
tablet.useDefaultTestForAndroidTablets=true  
  
exclude.from.libreoffice.indexing.extensions=
```

- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe.



# 6 Configuring Single Sign-On to the Vibe Site

- ◆ [“Configuring Single Sign-On with NetIQ Access Manager” on page 115](#)
- ◆ [“Configuring Single Sign-On with KeyShield” on page 115](#)

## Configuring Single Sign-On with NetIQ Access Manager

For more information about configuring single sign-on with NetIQ Access Manager, see [“Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Configuring Single Sign-On with KeyShield

Use the information and instructions in the following sections to configure Vibe to work with an existing KeyShield installation.

- ◆ [“Prerequisites” on page 115](#)
- ◆ [“\(Conditional\) Allowing the Authorization Connectors to Access the API Key” on page 116](#)
- ◆ [“Configuring Vibe for KeyShield SSO Support” on page 116](#)
- ◆ [“KeyShield Attribute Alias Support” on page 119](#)
- ◆ [“Configuring Two-Factor Authentication” on page 120](#)
- ◆ [“Downloading and Installing the KeyShield SSO SSL Certificate” on page 121](#)
- ◆ [“Testing the KeyShield SSO Configuration” on page 123](#)

### Prerequisites

For Vibe to work with an existing KeyShield installation, you must have the following already in place.

- ◆ A KeyShield SSO server that is registered with DNS and provides single sign-on services to your network users.
- ◆ An API Key that is displayed in a defined API Authorization configuration.
- ◆ One or more Authentication Connectors (defined on the KeyShield server) that are allowed to be used with the API Key.
- ◆ Administrative Access to the KeyShield server for obtaining the following:
  - ◆ The API Authorization Key associated with the KeyShield Connectors you are leveraging for Vibe
  - ◆ The SSL certificate, downloadable as a .CER file for importing into the Vibe keystore.

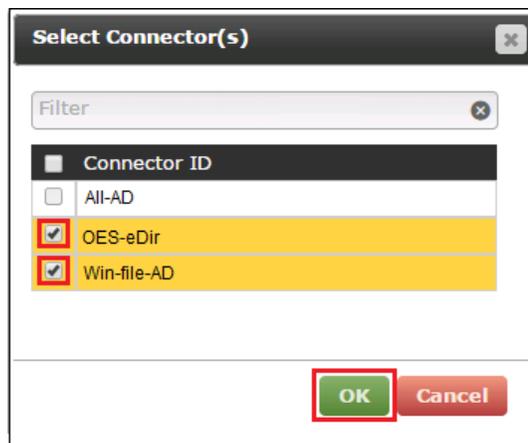
## (Conditional) Allowing the Authorization Connectors to Access the API Key

Continuing in the **General** tab (accessed in the previous section), if access to the KeyShield SSO APIs is restricted to users on specific connectors, ensure that the connectors that your Vibe users will be connecting through are listed, by doing the following:

- 1 If the connectors your users will use are not listed, click the bar below the already-allowed connectors.



- 2 Select the connectors for your users, then click **OK**.



## Configuring Vibe for KeyShield SSO Support

- 1 Open a new tab or a new browser session to access Vibe on port 8443:

`https://Vibe-ip-address-or-dns-name:8443`

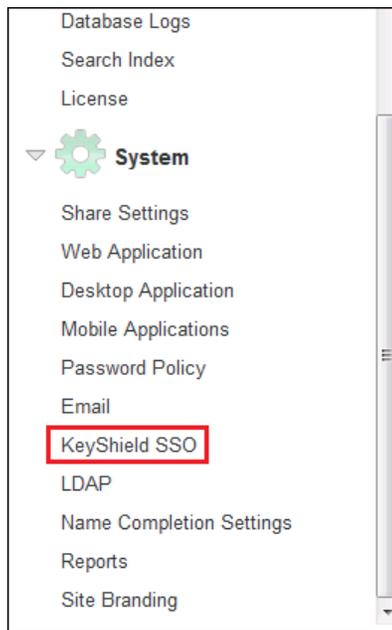
For example `https:192.168.30.150:8443`

Having a new session will let you easily switch between the KeyShield administration console and the Vibe Administration console.

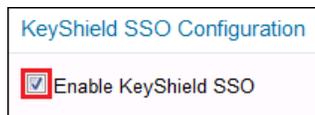
- 2 In the new browser session, log in to Vibe as an administrator.
- 3 Click the admin link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the Administration Console

icon .

- 4 In the left frame, click **KeyShield SSO**.



- 5 In the KeyShield SSO Configuration dialog, click **Enable KeyShield SSO**.



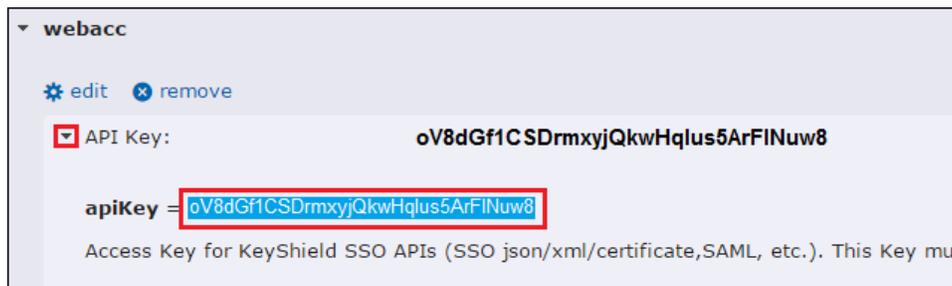
- 6 In the **KeyShield Server URL** field, type the access URL for the KeyShield server:

`https://ks-server-dns-name_or_ip-address:ks-server-https-port/`

For example,



- 7 Switch to the KeyShield browser-based console, toggle open the API Key, then select and copy the key to your clipboard.



- 8 Switch to the Vibe Administration panel and paste the API Key into the **API Authorization** field.

**KeyShield SSO Configuration**

Enable KeyShield SSO

KeyShield Server URL:

API authorization key:

- 9 The **HTTP Connection Timeout** controls how long the Vibe Appliance will wait for a response from the KeyShield server before prompting users for their login credentials.

Micro Focus doesn't recommend changing this value unless the connection between the Vibe Appliance and the KeyShield SSO server doesn't facilitate a quick response. For example the appliance and server are connected over a WAN.

**KeyShield SSO Configuration**

Enable KeyShield SSO

KeyShield Server URL:

API authorization key:

HTTP connection timeout:  milliseconds

- 10 In the Connector Names field, type the names of each KeyShield SSO connector that Vibe users will connect through.

**KeyShield SSO Configuration**

Enable KeyShield SSO

KeyShield Server URL:

API authorization key:

HTTP connection timeout:  milliseconds

Enter the names of every authentication connector separated by a comma.

Connector names:

- 11 Continue with the next section, "[KeyShield Attribute Alias Support.](#)"

## KeyShield Attribute Alias Support

Vibe lets administrators provision users from different LDAP sources, such as eDirectory and Active Directory. It also allows for flexibility in specifying which LDAP attribute will be imported as the Vibe username.

In addition to Vibe, organizations have email applications, RADIUS clients, and so on, that use different LDAP attributes for their usernames.

KeyShield 6 includes support for **Attribute Aliases**. These let KeyShield match username validation requests from each application with the LDAP attribute that the application uses for its usernames.

### A Vibe Example

1. Jane Smith logs in through KeyShield's SSO service using jsmith (her UID in LDAP) as her Username.
2. Jane then launches Vibe.  
Unfortunately, the Vibe administrator who configured the LDAP import, specified CN as the LDAP username attribute and JaneSmith was imported as Jane's Vibe username.
3. When Vibe tries to authenticate Jane Smith, KeyShield doesn't find her as an authenticated user and the attempt fails.  
Jane is then prompted to log in to Vibe.
4. To fix the mismatch of LDAP attributes, Jane's KeyShield administrator adds `x-Vibe = cn` as an **Attribute Alias** in Keyshield.
5. Jane's Vibe administrator adds `x-Vibe` as the **Username Attribute Alias** in Vibe.
6. The next time Jane launches Vibe after signing in through KeyShield' SSO service, KeyShield verifies to Vibe that JaneSmith is authenticated and no additional login is required.

### Configuring Attribute Alias Support

- 1 In Keyshield, specify the appropriate **Attribute Alias** for each Authentication Connector.

For example, if your Vibe deployment uses the CN attribute as the username for an eDirectory server that is defined as an Authentication Connector in KeyShield, then in the Attribute Alias field in the connector configuration, you would specify

```
x-Vibe = cn
```

This means that for this Authentication Connector, when authentication verification requests arrive with the Attribute Alias `x-Vibe`, KeyShield needs to request a match in the CN attributes in the targeted eDirectory Authentication Connector.

- 2 By default, the Vibe 2.0 KeyShield SSO Configuration dialog, the Username Attribute Alias is set to `x-Vibe`.

We strongly recommend that you not change this value. However, if you do, be sure that the name is changed in each KeyShield Authentication Connector configuration as well.

KeyShield SSO Configuration

Enable KeyShield SSO

KeyShield Server URL (use http or https):

API authorization key:

HTTP connection timeout:  milliseconds

Connector names:

Username attribute alias:

Enter the names of every authentication connector separated by a comma.

This is a system supplied default.

3 Continue with “[Configuring Two-Factor Authentication.](#)”

## Configuring Two-Factor Authentication

KeyShield 6.1 adds the ability to require a hardware token in addition to usernames and passwords for LDAP users seeking access through a web browser or WebDAV.

---

**NOTE:** Two-factor authentication doesn’t apply to desktop or mobile device applications.

---

Vibe 2.0 and later supports KeyShield’s two-factor authentication capability through two new options in the KeyShield SSO Configuration dialog:

- ♦ **Require Hardware Token:** Requires a physical token, such as an access card, for access to Vibe.

You can also specify the error messages that you want displayed when the required token is either not presented or not recognized by KeyShield for web browser or WebDAV access.

- ♦ **Allow Username/Password based Fallback Authentication (non-SSO) for LDAP Users:**

Allows authentication by entering a username and password as an alternative to the hardware token.

Use this option if you want users to be able to effectively bypass the hardware token requirement by typing in their username and password.

- 1 If you want to configure two-factor authentication for your KeyShield 6.1 SSO service, select the options and specify the text accordingly.

- 2 Click **Test Connection.**

Because the Vibe appliance doesn’t yet have the KeyShield SSO SSL certificate in its keystore, the test fails.

**KeyShield SSO Configuration**

Enable KeyShield SSO

KeyShield Server URL (use http or https):

API authorization key:

HTTP connection timeout:  milliseconds

Connector names:   
Enter the names of every authentication connector separated by a comma.  
 This is a system supplied default.

Username attribute alias:

**Two Factor Authentication**

Require hardware token

Missing token error message for Web interface:

Missing token error message for WebDAV interface:

Allow username/password based fallback authentication (non-SSO) for LDAP users

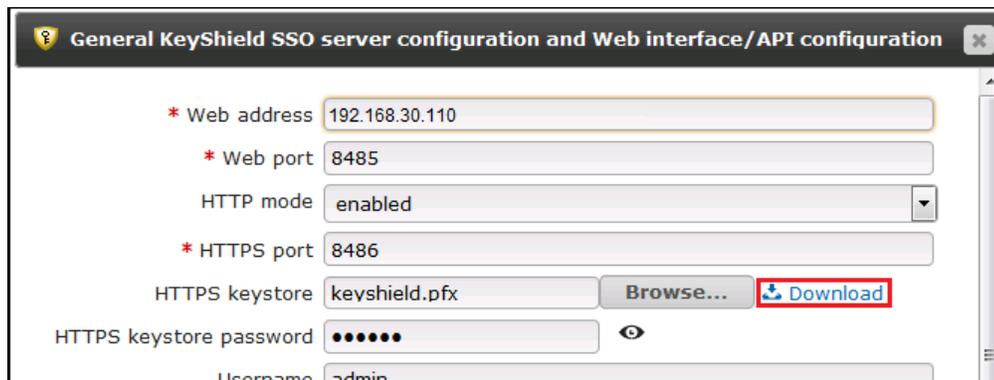
- 3 Continue with “[Downloading and Installing the KeyShield SSO SSL Certificate](#)” on page 121

## Downloading and Installing the KeyShield SSO SSL Certificate

- 1 Open a third browser session and access the Vibe appliance on port 9443:  
<https://Vibe-ip-address-or-dns-name:9443>  
 For example <https://192.168.30.150:9443>
- 2 Log in as vaadmin.
- 3 Switch to the KeyShield browser-based console and under General/Web Interface, click Edit.



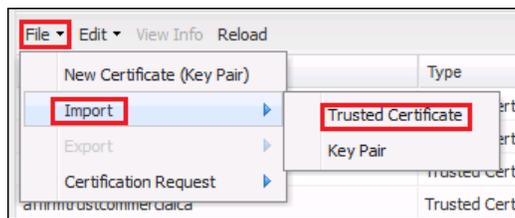
- 4 Click the **Download** button for the **HTTPS Keystore**.



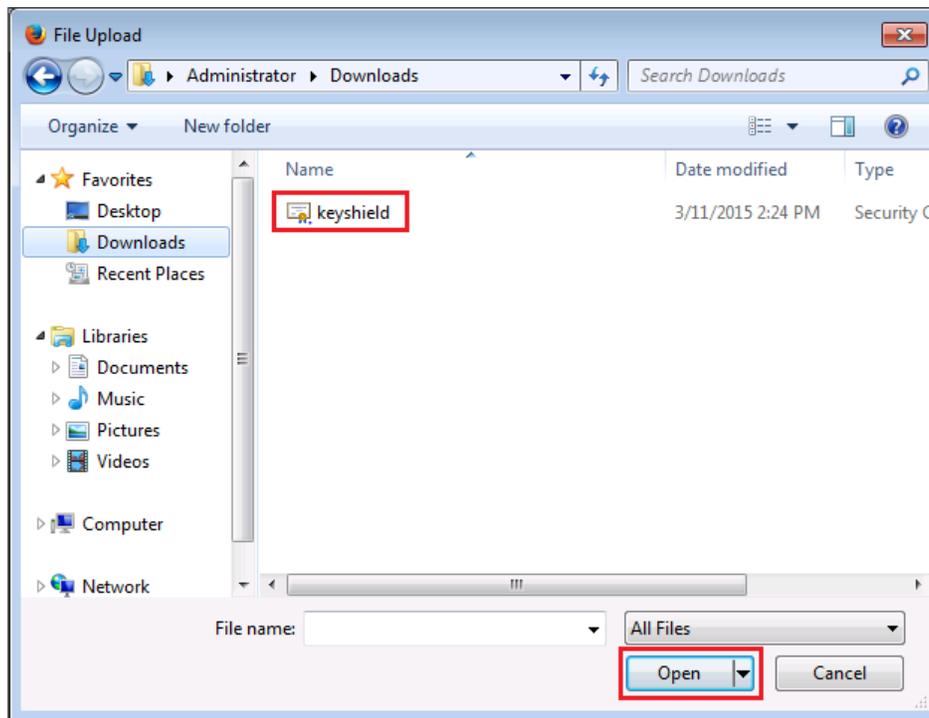
- 5 Save the `Keyshield.cer` file on the workstation running the browser.
- 6 Switch to the browser session opened in [Step 1 on page 121](#) and click the **Appliance Configuration** icon.
- 7 Click the **Digital Certificates** icon.



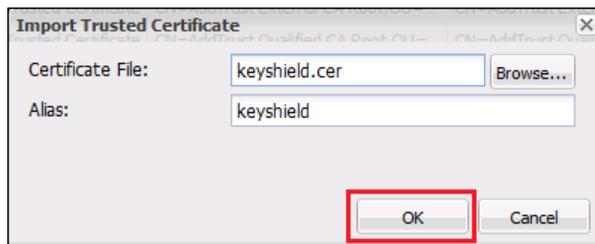
- 8 Click **File > Import > Trusted Certificate**.



- 9 Click **Browse**, then browse to the location where you saved the `Keyshield.cer` file and click **Open**.

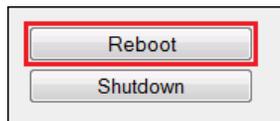


10 Click **OK** to import the certificate file.



11 Acknowledge the message about restarting the appliance by clicking **OK**.

12 Click the back arrow in the browser, then select **Reboot**.



13 After the system restarts, continue with the next section, [Testing the KeyShield SSO Configuration](#).

## Testing the KeyShield SSO Configuration

- 1 Switch back to the Vibe administration console (port 8443).
- 2 Click **Test Connection**.

**KeyShield SSO Configuration**

Enable KeyShield SSO

KeyShield Server URL:

API authorization key:

HTTP connection timeout:  milliseconds

Enter the names of every authentication connector separated by a comma.

Connector names:

The test should succeed.

- 3 Click **OK** to finalize the configuration and complete the Keyshield SSO integration.

# 7 Setting Up Sharing

As the Vibe administrator, you need to enable sharing privileges for users on your Vibe site before users are able to share files and folders from their personal workspace. You then need to enable sharing for the top-level Global and Team workspaces in order for users to be able to share content from those workspaces. You or workspace owners can then enable sharing on lower-level workspaces on an individual basis.

There are various sharing privileges that you can grant.

- ♦ [“Understanding Sharing” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [“Enabling Users to Share” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [“Enabling Sharing on Workspaces” on page 131](#)
- ♦ [“Managing Shares” on page 135](#)

## Understanding Sharing

Sharing in Vibe enables users to grant access to entries, folders, and workspaces to other users, either internal or external to the organization.

If multiple users share the same item with a single user, the user who receives the share is granted the highest level of access that was shared with the user. For example, User B shares a file with User A and grants User A Read rights to the file. Then User C shares the same file with User A and grants Read and Write rights to the file. As a result, User A has Read and Write rights to the file.

- ♦ [“Understanding External Users” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [“Users Can’t Grant Share Roles That They Don’t Have” on page 125](#)

## Understanding External Users

Users external to your organization can access your Vibe site at no additional cost. External users in Micro Focus Vibe do not count as a licensed Vibe user, but they have their own individual user account (unlike the Guest user) and can participate in Vibe workspaces like any other user.

An example of an external user might be a contractor who interacts with the corporation for only a couple months a year, who needs access to the system as a defined user but does not need consistent access to the system.

External users are added to the Vibe system when a workspace, folder, or entry is shared with them. You as the Vibe administrator, determine whether users can share externally. For information about how to enable this functionality, see [“Enabling Users to Share” on page 126](#).

## Users Can’t Grant Share Roles That They Don’t Have

Users with Contributor rights on folders or workspaces can grant Viewer, Editor, and Contributor rights to other users as Vibe system share settings allow.

On the other hand, Users with Viewer rights on folders or workspaces can grant only Viewer rights to other users with whom they are allowed to share.

# Enabling Users to Share

---

**IMPORTANT:** You must enable the sharing feature before any sharing can take place on the Vibe system.

After you enable the sharing feature, the default behavior for whether users can share files from their personal workspace differs depending on whether the user is new to the Vibe system after Vibe 4, or if the user existed in the Vibe system prior to Vibe 4:

- ♦ **New users:** Users who are new to the Vibe system after Vibe 4 are able to share items from their personal workspace by default.
- ♦ **Existing users:** Users who existed in the Vibe system prior to Vibe 4 do not automatically have rights to share items from their personal workspace.

For users to be able to share files that are located outside of their personal workspace (such as their team workspaces, etc.), sharing must be enabled on the individual workspace. For information about how to enable sharing for the top-level Global and Team workspaces, see [“Enabling Sharing on Workspaces” on page 131](#).

When you enable users to share, it is best to keep the share rights fairly unrestricted (for example, give the All Internal Users group the ability to share whatever they want). You can then restrict sharing of files in the personal workspace on a per-user basis.

---

When you set up sharing for your Vibe site, complete the necessary steps in the following order:

1. Set up sharing for the entire Vibe site (as described in [“Enabling Sharing for All Users” on page 127](#)).
2. Configure sharing for individual users (as described in [“Modifying Share Rights on a User Basis” on page 130](#)).

After you have enabled sharing for the entire Vibe system, you can fine-tune share rights throughout the site on the user level.

You might need to do this for the following reasons:

- ♦ If you want only certain users to be allowed to share files from their personal workspace. After you have enabled sharing for the entire site (as described in [“Enabling Sharing for All Users” on page 127](#)), then you can restrict sharing privileges at the user level.  
  
For example, if you want only a few groups of users to be allowed to share with external users, you first need to enable sharing to external users at the site level. After you have enabled it at the site level, you can then remove this ability from the users who you do not want to have this ability.
  - ♦ If there are users who existed in your Vibe system prior to Vibe 4, and you want these users to be able to share items from their personal workspace, you must modify the workspace share rights for these users at the user level.
- ♦ [“Enabling Sharing for All Users” on page 127](#)
  - ♦ [“Modifying Share Rights on a User Basis” on page 130](#)

# Enabling Sharing for All Users

1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.

1a Launch a web browser.

1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

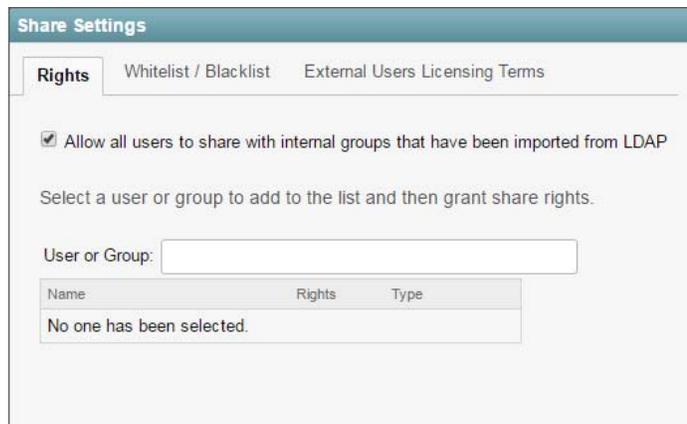
Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

3 Under **System**, click **Share Settings**.

The Share Settings page is displayed.



| Name                      | Rights | Type |
|---------------------------|--------|------|
| No one has been selected. |        |      |

4 Select **Allow all users to share with groups that have been imported from LDAP** to enable users to share with LDAP groups.

If you select this option, groups that were imported from the LDAP directory are displayed in the **Share with** field when users are sharing an item (as described in “[Sharing Entries, Folders, and Workspaces](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*). All users in the LDAP group then have access to the item that was shared.

5 To enable sharing for all internal users on the Vibe site, go to the **User or Group** field, begin typing `All Internal Users`, then select it when it appears in the drop-down list.

or

To enable sharing on a per-user or per-group basis, go to the **Select user/group** field, begin typing the name of the user or group for whom you want to grant share rights, then select the name when it appears in the drop-down list.

The Edit Share Rights dialog box is displayed. Select from the following options:

**Re-share items:** When users share a file or folder, they can give the users they are sharing with the ability to re-share the file or folder. The user receiving the share can share the file only if that user has been given administrative rights to share the file or folder.

---

**IMPORTANT:** When selecting this option, be aware that if one user's access rights to an item are removed, it does not remove the access rights of the user with whom the item was re-shared. For example, suppose User A shares an item with User B and grants re-share rights. User B then shares the item with User C. If User A revokes User B's access rights to the item, User C continues to have access to the shared item.

---

**Share with Internal users:** lets users share items with internal users.

**Share with “All Internal Users” group:** lets users perform a mass share to all internal users by sharing with the `All Internal Users` group.

**Share with External users:** lets users share items with users external to the organization.

Users external to the organization receive an email notification with a link to the shared item, and they can then log in to the Vibe site. For more information, see [“Sharing with People Outside Your Organization”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

**Share with Public:** lets users make items publicly available. This means that anyone with the correct URL to the shared item can access the shared item without logging in to the Vibe site.

In addition to selecting this option, you also need to enable Guest access to the Vibe site if you want to allow users to share items with the public. For information about how to enable Guest access to the Vibe site, see [“Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site”](#) on page 105.

**Share using File Link:** lets users share a link to a file in Vibe. Any user with the link can then access the file. However, the file is not displayed in the Public area, so users must have direct access to the link in order to access the file.

For more information about File Links, see [“Distributing a Link to a File”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

- 6 (Optional) Click the **Whitelist / Blacklist** tab to configure which email addresses and domains users can share with when sharing externally.

The following options are available when configuring a whitelist or blacklist for sharing:

**No restrictions:** Select this option to disregard any email addresses or domains that might already exist in the **Email addresses** and **Domains** fields. Selecting this option means that users can share with any email address.

**Whitelist:** Select this option to allow sharing only with email addresses and domains that have been specified in the **Email addresses** and **Domains** fields.

**Blacklist:** Select this option to disallow sharing with any email addresses and domains that have been specified in the **Email addresses** and **Domains** fields.

**Email addresses:** Click **Add**, specify the email address that you want to add to the whitelist or blacklist, then click **OK**.

Repeat this process to add multiple email address.

**Domains:** Click **Add**, specify the domain that you want to add to the whitelist or blacklist (for example, `yahoo.com`), then click **OK**.

Repeat this process to add multiple domains.

**Delete shares that don't meet the criteria:** Select this option to delete all existing shares in the Vibe system that do not match the criteria you set.

For example, if you selected **Blacklist** and then specified `yahoo.com` in the **Domains** field, selecting this option would delete all Vibe shares made to Yahoo email addresses.

7 Click **OK**.

8 Modify individual user share rights as described in [“Modifying Share Rights on a User Basis” on page 130](#).

## Modifying Share Rights on a User Basis

After you have enabled sharing of files for the entire Vibe system (as described in [“Enabling Sharing for All Users” on page 127](#)), you can modify share rights throughout the site on the user level.

You might need to do this for the following reasons:

- ◆ If you want only certain users to be allowed to share files from their personal workspace. After you have enabled sharing for the entire site (as described in [“Enabling Sharing for All Users” on page 127](#)), then you can restrict sharing privileges at the user level.

For example, if you want only a few groups of users to be allowed to share with external users, you first need to enable sharing to external users at the site level. After you have enabled it at the site level, you can then remove this ability from the users who you do not want to have this ability.

- ◆ If there are users who existed in your Vibe system prior to Vibe 4, and you want these users to be able to share items from their personal workspace, you must modify the workspace share rights for these users at the user level.

You cannot grant individual users more rights than are currently defined for the site-wide setting.

To modify share rights for specific users:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.

- 1a Launch a web browser.

- 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Users**.
- 4 Select the users whose sharing rights you want to manage, then click **More > Workspace Share Rights**.

Set User Workspace Sharing Rights (1 users)

| Allow Sharing with: | Allow                            | Clear                 |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Internal Users      | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| External Users      | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| Public              | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |
| Filr Link           | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |

---

|                                    | Allow                            | Clear                 |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Allow Re-Sharing of granted rights | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/> |

OK Cancel

- 5 Select the radio button in the **Clear** column next to the sharing right that you want to remove from the user or group, then click **OK**.

or

If you have already removed a share right and you want to add it again, select the radio button in the **Allow** column next to the sharing right that you want to add to the user or group, then click **OK**.

## Enabling Sharing on Workspaces

After sharing has been enabled for users on your Vibe site (as described in [“Enabling Users to Share” on page 126](#)), you can enable sharing for the top-level Global and Team workspaces in order for users to be able to share content from those workspaces. You or workspace owners can then enable sharing on lower-level workspaces on an individual basis.

- ♦ [“Enabling Sharing for Top-Level Global Workspaces” on page 131](#)
- ♦ [“Enabling Sharing for Top-Level Team Workspaces” on page 133](#)

### Enabling Sharing for Top-Level Global Workspaces

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **Workspace Tree** icon  in the Action toolbar, expand **Home Workspace**, then click **Global Workspaces**.
- 3 Select all top-level workspaces by selecting the checkbox in the column header.
- 4 When all the top-level workspaces are selected, click **Workspace Share Rights**.

The Set Workspace Sharing Rights dialog box is displayed.

Select **Allow** next to any share rights that you want to grant to all the selected workspaces, and select **Clear** next to any share rights you do not want to grant. Select **No Change** to maintain any share rights that might already exist on any workspaces.

The following share rights are available:

**Internal Users:** lets users share items with internal users.

**External Users:** lets users share items with users external to the organization.

Users external to the organization receive an email notification with a link to the shared item, and they can then log in to the Vibe site. For more information, see “[Sharing with People Outside Your Organization](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

**Public:** lets users make items publicly available. This means that anyone with the correct URL to the shared item can access the shared item without logging in to the Vibe site.

In addition to selecting this option, you also need to enable Guest access to the Vibe site if you want to allow users to share items with the public. For information about how to enable Guest access to the Vibe site, see “[Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site](#)” on page 105.

**File Link:** lets users share a link to a file in Vibe. Any user with the link can then access the file. However, the file is not displayed in the Public area, so users must have direct access to the link in order to access the file.

For more information about File Links, see “[Distributing a Link to a File](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

**Allow Re-Sharing of granted rights:** When users share a file or folder, they can give the users they are sharing with the ability to re-share the file or folder. The user receiving the share can share the file only if that user has been given administrative rights to share the file or folder.

---

**IMPORTANT:** When selecting this option, be aware that if one user's access rights to an item are removed, it does not remove the access rights of the user with whom the item was re-shared.

For example, suppose User A shares an item with User B and grants re-share rights. User B then shares the item with User C. If User A revokes User B's access rights to the item, User C continues to have access to the shared item.

---

- 5 Click **OK**.

# Enabling Sharing for Top-Level Team Workspaces

1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.

1a Launch a web browser.

1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080  
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

2 Click the **Browse** icon  in the Action toolbar, then expand **Home Workspace** in the Workspace tree.



The Home Workspace directory is the highest-level folder in the workspace tree, and might be named something specific to your organization.

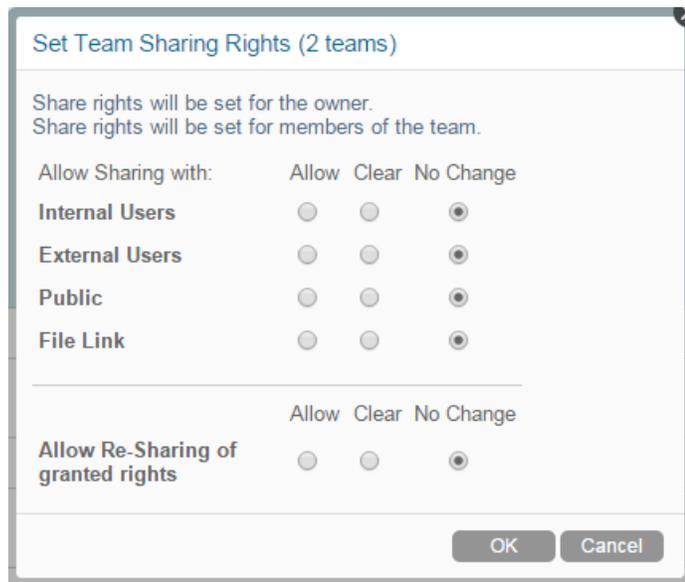
3 Click **Team Workspaces**.

The Teams page is displayed.

4 Select the top-level teams that you want to grant share rights by selecting the checkbox next to the team name.

5 Click **Team Share Rights**.

The Set Team Sharing Rights dialog box is displayed.



Select **Allow** next to any share rights that you want to grant to all the selected workspaces, and select **Clear** next to any share rights you do not want to grant. Select **No Change** to maintain any share rights that might already exist on any workspaces (this option is displayed only when multiple teams are selected).

The following share rights are available:

**Internal Users:** lets users share items with internal users.

**External Users:** lets users share items with users external to the organization.

Users external to the organization receive an email notification with a link to the shared item, and they can then log in to the Vibe site. For more information, see “[Sharing with People Outside Your Organization](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

**Public:** lets users make items publicly available. This means that anyone with the correct URL to the shared item can access the shared item without logging in to the Vibe site.

In addition to selecting this option, you also need to enable Guest access to the Vibe site if you want to allow users to share items with the public. For information about how to enable Guest access to the Vibe site, see “[Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site](#)” on page 105.

**File Link:** lets users share a link to a file in Vibe. Any user with the link can then access the file. However, the file is not displayed in the Public area, so users must have direct access to the link in order to access the file.

For more information about File Links, see “[Distributing a Link to a File](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

**Allow Re-Sharing of granted rights:** When users share a file or folder, they can give the users they are sharing with the ability to re-share the file or folder. The user receiving the share can share the file only if that user has been given administrative rights to share the file or folder.

---

**IMPORTANT:** When selecting this option, be aware that if one user's access rights to an item are removed, it does not remove the access rights of the user with whom the item was re-shared.

For example, suppose User A shares an item with User B and grants re-share rights. User B then shares the item with User C. If User A revokes User B's access rights to the item, User C continues to have access to the shared item.

---

6 Click **OK**.

# Managing Shares

As the Vibe administrator, you are in control of all shared items in the Vibe system. You can view who has shared items, what items have been shared, what access rights have been granted via the share, and so forth. Furthermore, you can modify share rights for existing shares or delete existing shares.

You can manage shares through a management interface, where you can filter by user, file, folder, or all shares. Or, you can manage shares for individual folders and files as you encounter them in the Vibe site.

Users are not notified about changes that you make to shared items.

- ♦ [“Managing Shares for the Vibe Site” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [“Managing Individual Shares” on page 136](#)

## Managing Shares for the Vibe Site

You can manage all active shares in the Vibe system with the Manage Shares dialog box in the administration console. You can filter shares by individual users, files, or folders. Or, you can view all active shares in the Vibe system.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://Vibe_hostname:8080  
https://Vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *Vibe\_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Shares**.

The Manage Shares dialog box is displayed.
- 4 In the **Find share items by** drop-down list, select one of the following options by which you want to manage shares:
  - User:** Begin typing the name of a user in the **User** field, then select the user name when it appears in the drop-down list. All active shares from that user are displayed in the table.
  - File:** Begin typing the name of a file in the **File** field, then select the file name when it appears in the drop-down list. All active shares associated with that file are displayed in the table.
  - Folder:** Begin typing the name of a folder in the **Folder** field, then select the folder name when it appears in the drop-down list. Or click the **Browse** icon next to the **Folder** field and browse to the folder. All active shares associated with that folder are displayed in the table.
  - Find all shares:** Displays all active shares in the Vibe system.
- 5 (Optional) Change the access control settings, expiration date, and note for a shared item.

For more information about these options, see “[Sharing Entries, Folders, and Workspaces](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

- 6 (Optional) Remove a user or group’s access to a shared item by selecting the share that you want to remove, then clicking **Delete**.
- 7 Click **OK**.

## Managing Individual Shares

As the administrator, you can manage shares for individual entries, folders, or workspaces as you encounter them in the site.

- 1 In a workspace or folder, click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace or folder title, then click **Manage Shares**.

or

In a folder or an area such as your Shared with Me area, click the drop-down arrow  next to the entry, then click **Manage Shares**

The Manage Shares dialog box is displayed.

- 2 (Optional) Change the access control settings, expiration date, and note for a shared item.  
For more information about these options, see “[Sharing Entries, Folders, and Workspaces](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.
- 3 (Optional) Remove a user or group’s access to a shared item by selecting the share that you want to remove, then clicking **Delete**.
- 4 Click **OK**.

# 8

## Allowing Access to the Vibe Site through NetIQ Access Manager

To allow access to the Vibe site through NetIQ Access Manager, you need to make configuration changes in NetIQ Access Manager to configure a protected resource for a Micro Focus Vibe server as described in [“Configuring a Protected Resource for a Micro Focus Vibe Server” on page 137](#).

---

**IMPORTANT:** When NetIQ Access Manager (or another single sign-on tool) is used in conjunction with your Vibe system, external users and the Guest user cannot access your Vibe site.

For more information about external users in Vibe, see [“Understanding External Users” on page 125](#).

---

### Configuring a Protected Resource for a Micro Focus Vibe Server

The following sections explain how to configure the Access Gateway with a domain-base multi-homing service. The instructions assume that you have a functioning Micro Focus Vibe server on Linux and a functioning Access Manager system (3.1 SP1 IR1 or higher) with a reverse proxy configured for SSL communication between the browsers and the Access Gateway.

The Vibe server needs to be configured to trust the Access Gateway to allow single sign-on with Identity Injection and to provide simultaneous logout. You also need to create an Access Gateway proxy service and configure it.

- ♦ [“Configuring the Micro Focus Vibe Server to Trust the Access Gateway” on page 137](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring a Reverse-Proxy Single Sign-On Service for Micro Focus Vibe” on page 139](#)
- ♦ [“Forwarding Cache Control Headers” on page 143](#)

For information on other possible Access Gateway configurations, see [“Teaming 2.0: Integrating with Linux Access Gateway”](#) (<http://www.novell.com/communities/node/9580/teaming-20-integration-linux-access-gateway>).

### Configuring the Micro Focus Vibe Server to Trust the Access Gateway

To use Micro Focus Vibe as a protected resource of an Access Gateway and to use Identity Injection for single sign-on, the Vibe server needs a trusted relationship with the Access Gateway. With a trusted relationship, the Vibe server can process the authorization header credentials. The Vibe server accepts only a simple user name (such as user1) and password in the authorization header.

This section explains how to set up the trusted relationship and how to enable simultaneous logout, so that when the user logs out of Vibe, the user is also logged out of the Access Gateway.

To configure the trusted relationship:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe server.
- 2 Stop the Vibe server with the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming stop
```

- 3 Run the `installer-teaming.linux` script.
- 4 Accept the license agreement, then select **Reconfigure settings**, then click **Next**.
- 5 Confirm that your Vibe server is shut down, then select **Advanced installation**, then click **Next**.
- 6 Continue through the installation program until you reach the Network Information page. Ensure that you have a valid Host name specified. You will need this later in the installation.

#### Network Information

Specify how you want Novell Vibe to communicate on the network.



You must specify a valid fully qualified domain name (FQDN) in order for remote clients and services to connect to your Vibe site.

If installing in a clustered environment, it is important to enter identical set of network information for all the Vibe nodes that are members of the cluster. You must enter the DNS name that end users use to access Vibe services rather than the DNS name of the individual Vibe node.

|                     |                                              |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Host:               | <input type="text" value="vibe.novell.com"/> |
| HTTP Port:          | <input type="text" value="80"/>              |
| Secure HTTP port:   | <input type="text" value="443"/>             |
| Listen port:        | <input type="text" value="8080"/>            |
| Secure listen port: | <input type="text" value="8443"/>            |
| Shutdown port:      | <input type="text" value="8005"/>            |
| AJP port:           | <input type="text" value="8009"/>            |
| Session timeout:    | <input type="text" value="240"/>             |
| Keystore file:      | <input type="text"/>                         |

- 7 Continue through the installation program until you reach the Reverse Proxy Configuration page. Specify the following configuration options:

**Enable Access Gateway:** Select this option to enable the reverse proxy access gateway.

**Access Gateway address(es):** Specify the IP address of the Access Gateway that is used for the connection to the Vibe server.

If the Access Gateway is part of a cluster, add the IP address for each cluster member. Wildcards such as `164.99.*.*` are allowed.

When you specify IP addresses in this option, Vibe logins are allowed only from the specified addresses. Also, if Authorization header credentials are not present or are incorrect, the user is prompted for login using Basic Authentication.

**Logout URL:** Specify the URL of the published DNS name of the reverse proxy that you have specified for the ESP, plus `/AGLogout`.

You can find the domain used for the ESP by editing the LAG/MAG cluster configuration, then clicking **Reverse Proxy / Authentication**.

For example, if the published DNS name of the proxy service that you have specified for the ESP is `esp.yoursite.com`, specify the following URL:

```
https://esp.yoursite.com/AGLogout
```

**Use Access Gateway for WebDAV connections:** Leave this option unselected.

## Reverse Proxy Configuration

Configure the following settings if using Novell Vibe with Novell Access Manager.



Select 'Enable Access Gateway' when user access to the Novell Vibe server is provided through Access Gateway.

'Access Gateway address(es)' is a comma separated list of IP addresses used by the Access Gateway(s) for connection to the Novell Vibe server.

'Logout URL' is the logout URL of the Access Gateway for the purpose of simultaneous logout. Examples: `http://<DNS name of Access Gateway proxy service>/AGLogout` or `http://<IP address of Novell Vibe server>:<port>/AGLogout`

Select 'Use Access Gateway for WebDAV connections' if WebDAV connections will be routed through a separate proxy service. (Not required with Novell Access Manager.)

'WebDAV Access Gateway address' is the DNS name used for WebDAV connections. Example: `webdav.company.name`

Enable Access Gateway

Access Gateway address(es)

Logout URL

Use Access Gateway for WebDAV connections

WebDAV Access Gateway address

- 8 Continue through the installation program to complete the reconfiguration process.
- 9 Start the Vibe server with the following command:  

```
/etc/init.d/teaming start
```
- 10 Continue with [“Configuring a Reverse-Proxy Single Sign-On Service for Micro Focus Vibe”](#) on page 139.

## Configuring a Reverse-Proxy Single Sign-On Service for Micro Focus Vibe

To configure a reverse-proxy single sign-on service for Vibe, complete the following tasks:

- ♦ [“Creating a New Reverse Proxy”](#) on page 139
- ♦ [“Configuring the Domain-Based Proxy Service”](#) on page 139
- ♦ [“Creating Policies”](#) on page 140
- ♦ [“Configuring Protected Resources”](#) on page 141
- ♦ [“Disabling a Rewriter Profile”](#) on page 143

### Creating a New Reverse Proxy

Before you can configure the domain-based proxy service, you need to create a new reverse proxy. For information on how to create a reverse-proxy, see [“Managing Reverse Proxies and Authentication”](#) in the *NetIQ Access Manager Administration Guide*.

### Configuring the Domain-Based Proxy Service

- 1 In the Administration Console, click **Devices > Access Gateways > Edit**, then click the name of the reverse proxy that you created in [“Creating a New Reverse Proxy”](#) on page 139.
- 2 Click the reverse proxy link that you have previously created. In the **Reverse Proxy List**, click **New**, then fill in the following fields:

**Proxy Service Name:** Specify a display name for the proxy service that the Administration Console uses for its interfaces.

**Published DNS Name:** Specify the DNS name you want the public to use to access your site. This DNS name must resolve to the IP address you set up as the listening address. For example, `vibe.doc.provo.novell.com`.

**Web Server IP Address:** Specify the IP address of the Vibe server.

**Host Header:** Select the **Forward received host name**.

**Web Server Host Name:** Because of your selection in the **Host Header** field, this option is dimmed.

- 3 Click **OK**.
- 4 Click the newly added proxy service, then select the **Web Servers** tab.
- 5 Make sure that **Enable Session Stickiness** is selected.  
Otherwise, users will get `Invalid RPC token` errors when two or more Vibe servers are online.
- 6 Change the **Connect Port** to 8080.  
If the Linux Vibe server has port forwarding enabled, you do not need to change from the default port 80.
- 7 Click **TCP Connect Options**.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Continue with [“Configuring Protected Resources” on page 141](#).

## Creating Policies

There are two policies that you need to create, LDAP Identity Injection, and X-Forwarded-Proto:

- ♦ [“Creating the LDAP Identity Injection Policy” on page 140](#)
- ♦ [“Creating the X-Forwarded-Proto HTTP Header Policy” on page 141](#)

### Creating the LDAP Identity Injection Policy

- 1 In the Administration Console, click **Policies > Policies**.
- 2 Select the policy container, then click **New**.
- 3 Specify `ldap_auth` as the name for the policy, select **Access Gateway: Identity Injection** for the type, then click **OK**.
- 4 (Optional) Specify a description for the injection policy. This is useful if you plan to create multiple policies to be used by multiple resources.
- 5 In the **Actions** section, click **New**, then select **Inject into Authentication Header**.
- 6 Fill in the following fields:
  - User Name:** Select **Credential Profile > LDAP User Name**.
  - Password:** Select **Credential Profile > LDAP Password**.
- 7 Leave the default value for the Multi-Value Separator, which is comma.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 To save the policy, click **OK**, then click **Apply Changes**.  
For more information on creating such a policy, see [“Configuring an Authentication Header Policy”](#) in the .

## Creating the X-Forwarded-Proto HTTP Header Policy

When communicating over HTTPS from the browser to Access Manager, and over HTTP from Access Manager to Vibe, the X-Forwarded-Proto is a best practice. Vibe 3.3 was enhanced to take advantage of the HTTP header X-Forwarded-Proto.

- 1 In the Administration Console, click **Policies > Policies**.
- 2 Select the policy container, then click **New**.
- 3 Specify `x-forwarded` as the name for the policy, select **Access Gateway: Identity Injection** for the type, then click **OK**.
- 4 (Optional) Specify a description for the injection policy. This is useful if you plan to create multiple policies to be used by multiple resources.
- 5 In the **Actions** section, click **New**, then select **Inject into Custom Header**.
- 6 Fill in the following fields:
  - Custom Header Name:** Specify `X-Forwarded-Proto` as the name.
  - Value:** Select **String Constant** in the drop-down, then specify `https`.
- 7 Leave the other settings at the defaults.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 To save the policy, click **OK**, then click **Apply Changes**.

For more information on creating such a policy, see “[Configuring an Identity Injection Policy](#)” in the .

## Configuring Protected Resources

You need to create three protected resources, one for HTML content, one for WebDAV content, and a public:

- 1 Create a protected resource for HTML content:
  - 1a In the **Protected Resource List**, click **New**, specify `Basic` auth with `redirection` for the name, then click **OK**.
  - 1b (Optional) Specify a description for the protected resource. You can use it to briefly describe the purpose for protecting this resource.
  - 1c Specify a value for **Authentication Procedure**. For example, select the **Secure Name/Password - Form** contract.
  - 1d Click the Edit icon.
  - 1e In the dialog box that is displayed, fill in the following fields.
    - Contract:** Select the **Secure Name/Password - Form** contract, which is same contract that you selected for the HTML content protected resource.
    - Non-Redirected Login:** Select this option.
    - Realm:** Specify a name that you want to use for the Vibe server. This name does not correspond to a Vibe configuration option. It appears when the user is prompted for credentials.
    - Redirect to Identity Server When No Authentication Header is Provided:** Select this option.
  - 1f Click **OK** twice.

2 Create a public protected resource for web Services:

- 2a In the **Protected Resource List**, click **New**, specify `public` for the name, then click **OK**.
- 2b (Optional) Specify a description for the protected resource. You can use it to briefly describe the purpose for protecting this resource.
- 2c For the **Authentication Procedure**, select **None**.
- 2d Click **OK**.
- 2e In the **URL Path List**, remove the `/*` path and add the following paths:

```
/ssf/atom/*
/ssf/ical/*
/ssf/ws/*
/ssf/rss/* - enables non-redirectioned login for RSS reader connections.
/ssf/s/readFile/share/*
/ssr/*
/rest/*
/ssf/applets/fileopen/* - enables Edit this file functionality
/downloads/* - enables Client Downloads page
/dave/*
```

The `/ssf/rss/*` path enables non-redirectioned login for RSS reader connections. Vibe provides authentication for all of the paths listed above.

- 2f Click **OK**.

3 Create a protected resource for WebDAV content:

- 3a In the **Protected Resource List**, click **New**, specify `Basic` auth without redirection for the name, then click **OK**.
- 3b (Optional) Specify a description for the protected resource. You can use it to briefly describe the purpose for protecting this resource.
- 3c Specify a value for **Authentication Procedure**. For example, select the **Secure Name/Password - Basic** contract.
- 3d Click the Edit icon.
- 3e In the dialog box that is displayed, fill in the following fields.

**Contract:** Select the **Secure Name/Password - Form** contract, which is same contract that you selected for the HTML content protected resource.

**Non-Redirectioned Login:** Select this option.

**Realm:** Specify a name that you want to use for the Vibe server. This name does not correspond to a Vibe configuration option. It appears when the user is prompted for credentials.

**Redirect to Identity Server When No Authentication Header is Provided:** Do not select this option.

- 3f In the **URL Path List**, remove the `/*` path and add the following path:

```
/dav/*
/davs/*
```

- 3g Click **OK** twice.

- 4 Assign the X-Forward-Proto Header policy to all three protected resources that you created:
  - 4a Click **Access Gateways** > **Edit** > **[Name of Reverse Proxy]** > **[Name of Proxy Service]** > **Protected Resources**.
  - 4b For each Vibe protected resource, click the **Identity Injection** link, select the **x-forward** policy that you created, click **Enable**, then click **OK**.
  - 4c Click **OK**.
- 5 Assign the Identity Injection policy to two of the protected resources that you created, specifically **Basic auth with redirection** and **Basic auth without redirection**. Do not assign this policy to the **public** protected resource.
  - 5a Click **Access Gateways** > **Edit** > **[Name of Reverse Proxy]** > **[Name of Proxy Service]** > **Protected Resources**.
  - 5b For each Vibe protected resource, click the **Identity Injection** link, select the **ldap\_auth** policy that you created, click **Enable**, then click **OK**.
  - 5c Click **OK**.
- 6 To save the configuration changes, click **Devices** > **Access Gateways**, then click **Update**.
- 7 In the **Protected Resource List**, ensure that the protected resources you created are enabled.
- 8 To apply your changes, click **Devices** > **Access Gateways**, then click **Update**.
- 9 Continue with [“Disabling a Rewriter Profile” on page 143](#).

## Disabling a Rewriter Profile

In the Proxy Service List, ensure that the HTML Rewriter is disabled.

## Forwarding Cache Control Headers

The recommended configuration for Micro Focus Vibe is to configure Access Manager to forward cache control headers to the browser. For information on how to forward cache control headers to the browser, see [“Controlling Browser Caching”](#) in the .



# 9 Providing File Access and Editing for Vibe Users

Micro Focus Vibe includes four file-access methods and applications.

Use the following information to understand the methods, distribute the related applications to users, and configure Vibe to support the methods you provide.

- ♦ “Vibe Desktop Application for Windows and Mac” on page 145
- ♦ “Vibe Add-in for Microsoft Office:” on page 156
- ♦ “Web Browser Access to Files Through Edit-in-Place” on page 157
- ♦ “Mobile App Access to Files” on page 158
- ♦ “Distributing File-Access Applications to Users” on page 158

## Vibe Desktop Application for Windows and Mac

The Vibe desktop lets users synchronize files on the Vibe server with their computer’s local file system. Changes made to local copies are synchronized with the server, and changes made by others to files on the server are synchronized with local copies.

As a Vibe administrator, you must enable file synchronization for the Vibe Desktop in order for users to take advantage of this functionality. There are also optional administrative procedures that you might want to perform when configuring Vibe Desktop.

For more information about Vibe Desktop usage, see the [Micro Focus Vibe Desktop for Windows Quick Start \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktop/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktop.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktop/data/vibe4_qs_desktop.html) and the [Micro Focus Vibe Desktop for Mac Quick Start \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktopmac/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktopmac.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktopmac/data/vibe4_qs_desktopmac.html).

To enable Vibe Desktop usage, complete the instructions in the following sections:

- ♦ “Providing Access to the Vibe Desktop Application” on page 145
- ♦ “Vibe Desktop—Server Configuration” on page 146
- ♦ “Vibe Desktop—Windows Configuration” on page 149
- ♦ “Load Balancing Vibe Desktop and the Vibe Add-In for MS Office Traffic” on page 154

## Providing Access to the Vibe Desktop Application

To provide users with download access to the Vibe Desktop Application software, you must:

1. Follow the instructions in “Distributing File-Access Applications to Users” on page 158.
2. Complete the applicable steps in the sections that follow.

# Vibe Desktop—Server Configuration

Vibe Desktop usage is not enabled by default.

You must enable usage (and optionally specify certain limits) as explained in the following sections:

- ♦ “[Configuring the Vibe Desktop Application for All Users](#)” on page 146
- ♦ “[Configuring Vibe Desktop for Individual Users and Groups](#)” on page 147
- ♦ “[Configuring the Maximum File Size Limit for Vibe Desktop](#)” on page 148
- ♦ “[Configuring the Maximum File Size Limit for Uploading Files](#)” on page 148
- ♦ “[Configuring the Maximum File Size Limit for Uploading and Downloading Files](#)” on page 148

## Configuring the Vibe Desktop Application for All Users

To enable this functionality for the Vibe site:

- 1 In Vibe, click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **System**, click **Desktop Application**.
- 3 In the Configure Desktop Application dialog box, specify the following information:  
**Access Vibe:** lets users access the Vibe site through the Vibe desktop application.

---

**NOTE:** Depending on the amount of anticipated load that the Vibe desktop application will put on your Vibe system, you might want to make the application available to users in a staged process.

---

Allowing access to the Vibe site through the Vibe desktop application can be changed on a per-user basis, as described in “[Configuring Vibe Desktop for Individual Users and Groups](#)” on [page 147](#).

**Cache the user’s password:** lets users enable the **Remember password** option on the **Account Information** page in the Micro Focus Vibe Console.

This option can be changed on a per-user basis, as described in “[Configuring Vibe Desktop for Individual Users and Groups](#)” on [page 147](#).

**Be deployed:** Select this option to make the Vibe desktop application available to users. If this option is selected, users can download the Vibe desktop application as described in “[Downloading and Installing Vibe Desktop \(https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktop/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktop.html#bwrk0ll\)](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktop/data/vibe4_qs_desktop.html#bwrk0ll)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe Desktop Quick Start for Windows* ([https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktop/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktop.html](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktop/data/vibe4_qs_desktop.html)) or the *Micro Focus Vibe Desktop Quick Start for Mac* ([https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktopmac/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktopmac.html](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktopmac/data/vibe4_qs_desktopmac.html)). If this option is not selected, the link to download the Vibe desktop application is not visible to users.

---

**NOTE:** You might want to leave the **Be deployed** option deselected if you plan to deploy Vibe Desktop to user workstations by using client management software such as ZENworks. The `.msi` file is available to you if you are planning to deploy Vibe Desktop by using ZENworks.

For more information about how to deploy Vibe by using the `.msi` file, see “[Vibe Desktop—Windows Configuration](#)” on [page 149](#).

---

**Auto-update URL:** Specify the HTTP server where the applications download page is located. This is also where Vibe Desktop can check for Vibe Desktop updates.

You can configure your Vibe server to be the HTTP server that provides auto-update information, or you can configure a separate web server to provide the auto-update information.

If you configure the Vibe server for this purpose, the auto-update URL is `https://vibe_hostname:8443/downloads`.

For information about how to set up a separate web server to deploy the application, see “[Providing Application Downloads from a Non-Vibe Web Server](#)” on page 161. Select this option if your Vibe system is clustered or fronted by an L4 or L10 switch.

If this option is selected, the available field must be populated with the URL of the web server that you configure for deploying the desktop application.

**Synchronization every xx Minutes:** Specify the interval (in minutes) for how often the Vibe Desktop checks Vibe for changes to files. The default is every 15 minutes. This means that 15 minutes after one synchronization ends, another begins. This lets you control the amount of load Vibe Desktop puts on the Vibe server.

Changes made in the desktop application are automatically synchronized to the server regardless of this setting.

**Maximum file size that can be synchronized:** Specify the maximum file size (in MB) that can be synchronized between the Vibe desktop application and the Vibe server.

4 Click **OK**.

Users need to download, install, and configure Vibe Desktop on their personal computers. For more information, see the [Micro Focus Vibe Desktop Quick Start for Windows](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktop/data/vibe4_qs_desktop.html) ([https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktop/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktop.html](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktop/data/vibe4_qs_desktop.html)) or the [Micro Focus Vibe Desktop Quick Start for Mac](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktopmac/data/vibe4_qs_desktopmac.html) ([https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktopmac/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_desktopmac.html](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_desktopmac/data/vibe4_qs_desktopmac.html)).

## Configuring Vibe Desktop for Individual Users and Groups

Individual user and group settings override global settings. This section describes how to customize the desktop application experience for individual users and groups on your Vibe system.

To make the desktop application available to only a subset of users in your system, configure the application for all users, as described in “[Configuring the Vibe Desktop Application for All Users](#)” on page 146, then restrict access to the users and groups who should not have access to the application, as described in this section.

- 1 In Vibe, click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **Users**.  
The Manage Users page is displayed.
- 3 Select the check boxes next to the names of the users or groups for whom you want to configure Vibe Desktop, then click **More > Desktop Application Settings**.  
The **Configure Desktop Application** page is displayed.
- 4 To change the desktop application settings for the selected users to be different from the global settings, select **Use user settings to allow the desktop application to**, then choose from the following options:
  - Access Vibe:** lets users access the Vibe site through the Vibe desktop application.
  - Cache the user’s password:** lets users enable the **Remember password** option on the **Account Information** page in the Micro Focus Vibe Console.
- 5 Click **OK**.

If you have set individual and group settings for Vibe Desktop, you can change those settings back to the global settings for the individual users and groups.

- 1 In Vibe, click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **User Accounts**.  
The Manage Users page is displayed.
- 3 Select the check boxes next to the names of the users or groups for whom you want to configure Vibe Desktop, then click **More > Desktop Application Settings**.  
The **Configure Desktop Application** page is displayed.
- 4 To change the desktop application settings back to the global settings for the selected users, select **Use global settings**.
- 5 Click **OK**.

## Configuring the Maximum File Size Limit for Vibe Desktop

By default, Vibe Desktop does not upload or download any file that exceeds 1 GB.

If a file size limit has already been set for uploading files to the Vibe site (as described in [“Setting a File Upload Size Limit for Individual Users and Groups” on page 254](#)), whichever limit is more restrictive is honored by Vibe Desktop.

For example, if you set a file size limit in Vibe of 500 MB and the maximum file size limit for Vibe Desktop is set at 2 GB, users cannot upload files bigger than 500 MB to the Vibe site either by accessing the Vibe site directly or by uploading files through Vibe Desktop.

## Configuring the Maximum File Size Limit for Uploading Files

To restrict the size of files that are uploaded to the Vibe site outside of Vibe Desktop (such as by accessing Vibe through a browser, through the Vibe Add-in, or through WebDAV), as well as through Vibe Desktop (while keeping the default 1 GB file size limit for files that are downloaded through Vibe Desktop), use the Vibe administration console to modify this setting, as described in [“Managing the File Upload Size Limit” on page 253](#).

## Configuring the Maximum File Size Limit for Uploading and Downloading Files

You can increase or decrease the file size limit for files that are both uploaded and downloaded to and from the Vibe site through Vibe Desktop.

Modifying the property as described in this section does not affect a user’s ability to upload documents to Vibe outside of Vibe Desktop (such as by accessing Vibe through a browser, through the Vibe Add-in, or through WebDAV).

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
           webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config  
  
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
           webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for the following line:  

```
fsa.max.file.size=
```
- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the `fsa.max.file.size=` line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Change the value of this property to the file size (in bytes) that represents the maximum file size that you want Vibe Desktop to upload to the Vibe site and download from the Vibe site. For example, if you want Vibe Desktop to be able to upload and download only 500 MB files, the line would read `fsa.max.file.size=536870912`.
- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Vibe Desktop—Windows Configuration

- ♦ “Preparing Workstations for Client-Management Software” on page 149
- ♦ “Customizing the Installation for the Vibe Desktop Application” on page 150
- ♦ “Controlling Windows Explorer Restart” on page 153
- ♦ “Integrating Windows Authentication with Vibe Desktop and the Vibe Add-In” on page 153
- ♦ “Configuring Vibe Desktop to Access Your Vibe Site (Windows)” on page 153

## Preparing Workstations for Client-Management Software

You can manage the Vibe desktop application on users’ workstations with client-management software such as ZENworks.

When following the instructions in this section, you must use the `.msi` file, which is bundled in the `MicroFocusVibe-combo-4.0.x.tgz` file, and is available at the [Novell Downloads site \(https://download.novell.com/\)](https://download.novell.com/).

If you use the `.msi` file to distribute the Vibe desktop application to user workstations, you need to install the following items to each user workstation, independent of the Vibe software:

- ♦ Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5 (Applies to 64-bit Windows and Mac workstations.)  
You can download Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5 from the [Microsoft .NET Downloads page \(http://www.microsoft.com/net/downloads\)](http://www.microsoft.com/net/downloads).
- ♦ Microsoft Visual C++ 2013 Redistributable Package (Applies to all workstations)  
You can download the redistributable package from the [Microsoft Download Center \(https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=40784\)](https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=40784).

---

**NOTE:** The ability to manage the Vibe desktop application is available only with Vibe desktop 1.0.2 and later.

---

# Customizing the Installation for the Vibe Desktop Application

You can customize the installation process of the Vibe desktop application for your organization in the following ways:

- ◆ Configure default values for each installation option of the Vibe desktop application. (Users can change these default values when configuring the Vibe desktop application.)
- ◆ Auto-configure all values for each installation option of the Vibe desktop application. (Users specify only their user name and password when configuring the Vibe desktop application; users cannot change the default values during initial configuration.)
- ◆ Disallow users from modifying configuration options in the Vibe desktop application. (Users cannot change the default values during initial configuration, and cannot modify the values via the Vibe console after initial configuration.)

---

**NOTE:** This does not prevent users from manually modifying configuration settings in the registry or file system.

---

The following sections describe how to make these customizations.

- ◆ [“Configuring Default Values” on page 150](#)
- ◆ [“Enabling Auto-Configuration” on page 151](#)
- ◆ [“Disallowing User Configuration” on page 152](#)
- ◆ [“Modifying the Vibe Desktop Configuration” on page 152](#)

## Configuring Default Values

You can configure the default values for each installation option of the Vibe desktop application. Users can change these default values when configuring the Vibe desktop application.

You accomplish this on Windows by creating registry values, and on Mac by adding properties to the application’s `Info.plist` file.

- 1 Windows:** Access the following location where you will create registry values:

```
\\HKLM\Software\Novell\Vibe
```

**Mac:** Access the `Info.plist` file where you will add properties. This file is usually in the following location:

```
/Applications/Novell Vibe/Contents/Info.plist
```

- 2** Create Windows registry values and add properties to the `Info.plist` file for the values for which you want to configure defaults.

The following table displays the available options for configuring default values.

*Table 9-1 Default Value Configuration Options*

| Windows Registry Value Name | Value Type | Mac Property Name    | Value Type | Supports Env Variables | Default Value |
|-----------------------------|------------|----------------------|------------|------------------------|---------------|
| Default Server URL          | REG_SZ     | VibeDefaultServerURL | string     | No                     | https://      |

| Windows Registry Value Name | Value Type                 | Mac Property Name            | Value Type          | Supports Env Variables | Default Value                         |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Default Username            | REG_SZ                     | VibeDefaultUsername          | string              | Yes                    | %USERNAME%<br>or<br>\$USER            |
| Default Account Name        | REG_SZ                     | VibeDefaultAccountName       | string              | No                     | Hostname in server URL                |
| Default Remember Password   | REG_SZ ("true" or "false") | VibeDefaultRemember Password | <true/> or <false/> | No                     | false                                 |
| Default Sync Dir            | REG_SZ                     | VibeDefaultSyncDir           | string              | Yes                    | %USERNAME% \Vibe<br>or<br>\$USER\Vibe |
| Default Start On Login      | REG_SZ ("true" or "false") | VibeDefaultStartOnLogin      | <true/> or <false/> | No                     | true                                  |
| Default Folder List         | REG_MULTI_SZ               | VibeDefaultFolderList        | Array of strings    | No                     | My Files<br>Shared with Me            |

## Enabling Auto-Configuration

After you have configured default values for the Vibe desktop application installation, you can enable auto-configuration. When auto-configuration is enabled, users cannot change the default values during initial configuration. (Users specify only their user name and password when configuring the Vibe desktop application.)

You accomplish this on Windows by creating registry values, and on Mac by adding properties to the application's `Info.plist` file.

- 1 Windows:** Access the following location where you will create registry values:

```
\\HKLM\Software\Novell\Vibe
```

**Mac:** Access the `Info.plist` file where you will add properties. This file is usually in the following location:

```
/Applications/Novell Vibe/Contents/Info.plist
```

- 2** Create Windows registry values and add properties to the `Info.plist` file for the values for which you want to configure defaults.

The following table displays the available options for auto-configuration.

**Table 9-2** Auto-Configuration Options

| Windows Registry Value Name | Value Type                 | Mac Property Name | Value Type          | Supports Env Variables | Default Value |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| Auto Configure              | REG_SZ ("true" or "false") | VibeAutoConfigure | <true/> or <false/> | No                     | false         |

## Disallowing User Configuration

You can disallow users from modifying configuration options in the Vibe desktop application. This means that users cannot change the default values during initial configuration, and they cannot modify the values via the Vibe console after initial configuration.

---

**NOTE:** This does not prevent users from manually modifying configuration settings in the registry or file system.

---

You accomplish this on Windows by creating registry values, and on Mac by adding properties to the application's `Info.plist` file.

- 1 **Windows:** Access the following location where you will create registry values:

```
\\HKLM\Software\Novell\Vibe
```

**Mac:** Access the `Info.plist` file where you will add properties. This file is usually in the following location:

```
/Applications/Novell Vibe/Contents/Info.plist
```

- 2 Create Windows registry values and add properties to the `Info.plist` file for the values for which you want to configure defaults.

The following table displays the available options for disallowing user configuration.

**Table 9-3** *Disallow User Configuration Options*

| Windows Registry Value Name | Value Type                 | Mac Property Name          | Value Type          | Supports Env Variables | Default Value |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| Allow User Configuration    | REG_SZ ("true" or "false") | VibeAllowUserConfiguration | <true/> or <false/> | No                     | true          |

## Modifying the Vibe Desktop Configuration

If you have configured the Vibe desktop application with auto-configuration (as described in [“Enabling Auto-Configuration” on page 151](#)), you can modify the configuration settings:

- 1 Change the options in the registry or `.plist` file, then restart the Vibe desktop application.

When the Vibe desktop application starts, it detects that the default settings have changed and applies the new settings.

---

**NOTE:** The one exception is that the synchronization directory cannot be changed after the Vibe desktop application has been configured.

---

## Controlling Windows Explorer Restart

The Vibe desktop application for Windows includes overlay icons that do not appear until Windows Explorer is restarted. In previous versions of the Vibe desktop application, the Windows .msi always restarted Windows Explorer during the installation (except when using the `NO_UI` option). Because restarting Explorer might not always be desirable, the Vibe desktop application lets you override the default.

The Windows installer supports four basic user interface levels for installing MSI files:

- ◆ No UI (“msiexec /qn”)
  - Windows Explorer is never restarted when using this option.
- ◆ Basic UI (“msiexec /qb”)
- ◆ Reduced UI (“msiexec /qr”)
- ◆ Full UI (“msiexec /qf” or simply “msiexec”, since this is the default)

For example, use the following command to install the MSI with basic UI and without restarting Windows Explorer:

```
msiexec /qb /i NovellVibe-version.msi RESTARTEXPLORER=no
```

## Integrating Windows Authentication with Vibe Desktop and the Vibe Add-In

If your Vibe server is configured with Integrated Windows Authentication, Vibe Desktop cannot synchronize files on your Vibe site because of a port conflict.

To work around this issue:

- 1 Configure Vibe Desktop and the Vibe Add-in to point directly to Tomcat’s secure port (by bypassing port 80 and port 443) in the Vibe Desktop and Vibe Add-in installation programs.

For more information about configuring Windows Authentication for your Vibe site, see “[Configuring Single Sign-On with Internet Information Services for Windows](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Configuring Vibe Desktop to Access Your Vibe Site (Windows)

If you use application management software, such as ZENworks, to deploy Vibe Desktop to user workstations, you can also prepopulate Vibe Desktop with your organization’s Vibe server URL. This saves users from specifying the Vibe server URL when they are configuring Vibe Desktop on their individual workstations.

To configure Vibe Desktop in this way, you must accomplish the tasks in either of the following sections as part of the deployment process of Vibe Desktop to user workstations with your application management software:

- ◆ “[Setting the VIBEURL Windows Installer Property](#)” on page 154
- ◆ “[Writing the Vibe Server URL to the Registry](#)” on page 154

## Setting the VIBEURL Windows Installer Property

You can prepopulate Vibe Desktop with the URL of your organization's Vibe server by specifying the VIBEURL Windows Installer property when Vibe Desktop is installed.

The exact steps for specifying the Windows Installer property differ depending on the application management software you are using to deploy Vibe Desktop to user workstations; however, the following command illustrates how to perform a silent installation of Vibe Desktop and prepopulate Vibe Desktop with the URL of your organization's Vibe server:

```
msiexec /i NovellVibeDesktop.msi /quiet VIBEURL=https://vibe.mycompany.com
```

## Writing the Vibe Server URL to the Registry

You can prepopulate Vibe Desktop with the URL of your organization's Vibe server by writing the Vibe server URL directly to the registry after Vibe Desktop is installed.

The exact steps for writing the Vibe server URL to the registry differ depending on the application management software you are using to deploy Vibe Desktop to user workstations; however, in `\\HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Novell\Vibe Desktop` you must set the Default Server URL string value to your organization's Vibe server URL.

## Load Balancing Vibe Desktop and the Vibe Add-In for MS Office Traffic

---

**NOTE:** Load balancing instructions for Vibe Desktop and the Vibe Add-in for MS Office are included together because of overlaps. This does not imply, however, that the two must be offered or used together.

---

Vibe Desktop and Vibe Add-in for MS Office can cause a large amount of traffic on the Vibe servers. To prevent the Vibe Desktop and the Vibe Add-in synchronization process or the Vibe site from becoming slow, you can distribute Vibe Desktop and Vibe Add-in traffic among dedicated Vibe servers with your load balancer or reverse proxy server.

For example, if you have a Vibe installation with five servers, you could dedicate one server to handle Vibe Desktop traffic, one server to handle Vibe Add-in traffic, and use the remaining three servers to serve the main Vibe web application. This configuration prevents an unusual spike in Vibe Desktop traffic or Vibe Add-in traffic from impacting the Vibe site.

You can distribute Vibe Desktop traffic and Vibe Add-in traffic differently, depending on whether you want traffic from all applications (not just Vibe Desktop and Vibe Add-in) that are accessing Vibe to be handled in the same way, or whether you want Vibe Desktop traffic and Vibe Add-in traffic to be handled independently from each other and from other applications that are accessing Vibe.

- ◆ [“Distributing Vibe Desktop Traffic Separately from Other Applications” on page 155](#)
- ◆ [“Distributing Vibe Add-In Traffic Separately from Other Applications” on page 155](#)
- ◆ [“Distributing Vibe Desktop and Vibe Add-In Traffic in Conjunction with Other Applications” on page 155](#)
- ◆ [“Load Balancer and Reverse Proxy Server Configuration” on page 156](#)

## Distributing Vibe Desktop Traffic Separately from Other Applications

You can configure your load balancer or reverse proxy server to distribute Vibe Desktop synchronization traffic among multiple Vibe servers. Vibe Desktop traffic is independent of traffic from other applications that are accessing Vibe.

---

**NOTE:** Your load balancer or reverse proxy server must be able to make routing decisions based on the request headers.

---

- 1 Configure your load balancer or reverse proxy server to use the user agent request header. For Vibe Desktop, the request header begins with `NovellVibeDesktop`. For example: `User-Agent: NovellVibeDesktop/1.0 (Windows NT 6.1; Python/2.7.0; en_US) suds/0.4`.

For specific information on how to configure the load balancer or reverse proxy server, see [“Load Balancer and Reverse Proxy Server Configuration” on page 156](#).

## Distributing Vibe Add-In Traffic Separately from Other Applications

You can configure your load balancer or reverse proxy server to distribute Vibe Add-in synchronization traffic among multiple Vibe servers. Vibe Add-in traffic is independent of traffic from other applications that are accessing Vibe.

---

**NOTE:** Your load balancer or reverse proxy server must be able to make routing decisions based on the request headers.

---

- 1 Configure your load balancer or reverse proxy server to use the user agent request header. For Vibe Add-in, the request header begins with `NovellVibeDesktop`. For example: `User-Agent: NovellVibeMsoAddin/1.0 (Windows NT 6.1.7601.65536; .NET Framework 4.0.30319.239; en_US)`

For specific information on how to configure the load balancer or reverse proxy server, see [“Load Balancer and Reverse Proxy Server Configuration” on page 156](#).

## Distributing Vibe Desktop and Vibe Add-In Traffic in Conjunction with Other Applications

You can configure your load balancer or reverse proxy server to distribute Vibe Desktop and Vibe Add-in synchronization traffic (along with traffic coming from all other applications that use the Vibe web service interface) among multiple Vibe servers.

Examples of other applications that use the Vibe web service interface are:

- ♦ GroupWise client SOAP requests
- ♦ All other SOAP requests from third-party applications

---

**NOTE:** Your load balancer or reverse proxy server must be able to make routing decisions based on the HTTP URL path.

---

- 1 Configure your load balancer or reverse proxy server to send all Vibe Desktop HTTP requests (designated by the following paths `/ssf/ws/TeamingServiceV1` and `/rest/*`) to one pool of Vibe servers.

All other requests are sent to another pool of Vibe servers.

For specific information on how to configure the load balancer or reverse proxy server, see “[Load Balancer and Reverse Proxy Server Configuration](#)” on page 156.

## Load Balancer and Reverse Proxy Server Configuration

For information on how to configure a load balancer for your Vibe site, see any of the following sections, depending on the type of load balancer you want to use:

- ♦ “[Configuring Apache as a Load Balancer](#)” in “[Running Vibe on Multiple Servers](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.
- ♦ “[Configuring Linux Virtual Server as a Load Balancer](#)” in “[Running Vibe on Multiple Servers](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.
- ♦ “[Configuring IIS to Load Balance in a Clustered Environment](#)” in “[Configuring Single Sign-On with Internet Information Services for Windows](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

For information on how to configure a reverse-proxy server for your Vibe site, see “[Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Vibe Add-in for Microsoft Office:

Users with the Vibe Add-in for MS Office installed and configured can browse to documents, edit them, save them to Vibe, and much more, all directly from their Microsoft Office UI.

For more information about the Vibe Add-in, see the [Micro Focus Vibe Add-In Quick Start \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_office/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_office.html\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_office/data/vibe4_qs_office.html).

## Providing Access to the Vibe Add-in for MS Office

To provide users with download access to the Vibe Desktop Application software, you must:

1. Follow the instructions in “[Distributing File-Access Applications to Users](#)” on page 158.
2. Complete the instructions in [Configuring Vibe to Allow MS Office Add-in Usage](#) below.

## Configuring Vibe to Allow MS Office Add-in Usage

To allow users to co-edit documents, you must modify the access control settings for the Team Member role to allow team members to edit entries that were created by other team members:

- 1 In Vibe, click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **System**, click **Configure Role Definitions**.
- 3 On the **Configure Role Definitions** tab, in the **Currently Defined Roles** section, expand **Team Member**.
- 4 Select **Modify Entries**, then click **Apply**.

This adds the Modify Entries right to the Team Member role. For more information about roles and the rights that are associated with them, see “[Managing Roles to Refine Access Control](#)” on page 31.



5 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.

6 Stop and restart Vibe.

---

**NOTE:** If you want to revert to msuri functionality, simply change the `edit.in.place.mode` option to `msuri` and restart Vibe.

---

## Having Users Download and Install Vibe Edit-in-Place.

To use Vibe URI (Edit-in-Place), users must download and install the Vibe Edit-in-Place application for their workstation type.

## Mobile App Access to Files

Mobile devices don't support file-editing capabilities, but users can view an HTML-rendering of files on the Vibe server.

Vibe mobile apps are available through device app stores. See the [Micro Focus Vibe Desktop for Windows Quick Start](#) and the [Micro Focus Vibe Desktop for Mac Quick Start](#).

For more information about Vibe web access, see the [Micro Focus Vibe Mobile Quick Start \(https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile/data/vibe4\\_qs\\_mobile.html\)](https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_qs_mobile/data/vibe4_qs_mobile.html).

## Distributing File-Access Applications to Users

You can provide users with access to file-access applications through the Vibe Applications Downloads page.

| Micro Focus® Vibe Application Downloads |                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRODUCT                                 | TYPE                                                                              | DOWNLOADS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | INFORMATION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Vibe Desktop                            |  | Windows x86<br>(MD5: 5d7943d85533d12e13995045e30f74ce)<br>Windows x64<br>(MD5: e56abdfb57b982cc3c1107fba5f77469)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Synchronize Vibe files between your computer and Vibe.<br><br>For more information about installing and configuring Vibe Desktop, see the <a href="#">Micro Focus Vibe Desktop for Windows Quick Start</a> or the <a href="#">Micro Focus Vibe Desktop for Mac Quick Start</a> .     |
|                                         |  | Mac<br>(MD5: bc251ab11dc28800d27dff7cc42cd4da)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Vibe Add-In for Office                  |  | Windows<br>(MD5: 860e166abe06c178c9afc6326e8e9a36)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Work directly with Vibe files from within Microsoft Office.<br><br>For more information about installing and configuring the Vibe Add-In, see the <a href="#">Micro Focus Vibe Add-In Quick Start</a> .                                                                              |
| Vibe Edit-In-Place                      |  | Windows<br>(MD5: aa7a3bb030eda41dc2cc12254277ff95)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Edit Vibe files directly from your browser.<br><br>For more information about installing the Vibe Edit-In-Place launcher, see the <a href="#">Micro Focus Vibe Edit-In-Place for Windows Quick Start</a> or the <a href="#">Micro Focus Vibe Edit-In-Place for Mac Quick Start</a> . |
|                                         |  | Mac<br>(MD5: 9afc6326e8e9a36a3bb030eda41dc2cc)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Vibe Mobile apps                        |  | You can download the Micro Focus Vibe mobile app for free from the following stores directly from your mobile device.<br><br> Amazon Store<br> Apple App Store<br> Blackberry App World<br> Google Play | To install the Vibe mobile app on your mobile device, launch your preferred store app. Enter the search "micro focus vibe" to locate the app.<br><br>Follow the instructions within the store to download the Micro Focus Vibe app.                                                  |

Applications can be distributed through either your Vibe servers or through an external server as described in the following sections:

- ◆ “Providing Application Downloads from the Vibe Server” on page 159
- ◆ “Providing Application Downloads from a Non-Vibe Web Server” on page 161

## Providing Application Downloads from the Vibe Server

You can configure your Vibe server as an HTTP server to provide access to the Vibe applications downloads that are described in this chapter.

This section describes how to configure Vibe as an HTTP server when Vibe is running on a single server. If you want to configure Vibe as an HTTP server when Vibe is running in a clustered environment, you must configure each Vibe node. If Vibe is running in a clustered environment, it is probably more convenient to use an external web server or the reverse-proxy server as the HTTP server.

To configure your single-server Vibe server as an HTTP server to provide application downloads, do the following:

- 1 Download the `MicroFocusVibe-combo-4.0.x.tgz` file from the Vibe downloads page on the [Novell Downloads site \(https://download.novell.com\)](https://download.novell.com) to the `/apache-tomcat/webapps/downloads` directory. (If the `downloads` directory does not already exist, you need to create it.)
- 2 (Linux) With the `MicroFocusVibe-combo-4.0.x.tgz` file in the `/apache-tomcat/webapps/downloads` directory, extract it:

```
tar -xvf MicroFocusVibe-combo-4.0.x.tgz
```

This creates the following structures within the downloads directory

```
/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/webapps/downloads
```

---

|                                           |                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vibe URI (Vibe Edit-in-Place) for Windows | /editinplace/windows/VibeEditInPlaceSetup.msi                      |
| Vibe URI (Vibe Edit-in-Place) for Windows | /editinplace/windows/VibeEditInPlaceSetup.pkg                      |
| Vibe Add-in for MS Office                 | /officeaddin/VibeAddinSetup.exe                                    |
| Vibe Desktop for Windows (32-bit)         | /novellvibedesktop/windows/x86/MicroFocusVibeDesktop-x86-4.0.x.msi |
| Vibe Desktop for Windows (64-bit)         | /novellvibedesktop/windows/x86/MicroFocusVibeDesktop-x64-4.0.x.msi |
| Vibe Desktop for Mac                      | /novellvibedesktop/osx/x64/MicroFocusVibeDesktop-4.0.x.pkg         |

---

- 3 (Windows) With the `MicroFocusVibe-combo-4.0.x.tgz` file in the `\apache-tomcat\webapps\downloads` directory, extract it using a file archive utility, such as 7-Zip.

This creates the following structures within the downloads directory:

```
c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\webapps\downloads
```

---

|                                           |                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vibe URI (Vibe Edit-in-Place) for Windows | \editinplace\windows\VibeEditInPlaceSetup.msi                      |
| Vibe URI (Vibe Edit-in-Place) for Windows | \editinplace\windows\VibeEditInPlaceSetup.pkg                      |
| Vibe Add-in for MS Office                 | \officeaddin\VibeAddinSetup.exe                                    |
| Vibe Desktop for Windows (32-bit)         | \novellvibedesktop\windows\x86\MicroFocusVibeDesktop-x86-4.0.x.msi |
| Vibe Desktop for Windows (64-bit)         | \novellvibedesktop\windows\x86\MicroFocusVibeDesktop-x64-4.0.x.msi |
| Vibe Desktop for Mac                      | \novellvibedesktop\osx\x64\MicroFocusVibeDesktop-4.0.x.pkg         |

---

- 4 (Linux) Change the ownership:

```
chown -R vibe:vibe downloads
```

- 5 From a browser, ensure that you can access the following files:

```
http://vibe_hostname/downloads/editinplace/windows/version.json
```

```
http://vibe_hostname/downloads/editinplace/osx/version.json
```

```
http://vibe_hostname/downloads/officeaddin/version.json
```

```
http://vibe_hostname/downloads/vibedesktop/windows/x86/version.json
```

```
http://vibe_hostname/downloads/vibedesktop/windows/x64/version.json
```

```
http://vibe_hostname/downloads/vibedesktop/osx/x64/version.json
```

- 6 Access Vibe in a browser and click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 7 Under **System**, click **Desktop Application**.

- 8 In the **Auto-update URL:** field, specify the HTTP server where the downloads directory is located.

For example, `https://vibe_hostname/downloads`.

## Providing Application Downloads from a Non-Vibe Web Server

As a best practice and to minimize load on the Vibe servers in a clustered environment, we recommend that you set up a separate web server and configure it to provide access to the Vibe file-access application downloads.

- 1 Set up a web server that doesn't require authentication as a host for the application downloads.

---

**NOTE:** If you are using secure HTTP, the web server must have a certificate signed by a trusted certificate authority.

---

- 2 Using the instructions in [“Providing Application Downloads from the Vibe Server” on page 159](#) as a guide, set up the non-Vibe server to provide the same download capabilities as described for the Vibe server.

For example, download and extract the `MicroFocusVibe-combo-4.0.x.tgz` file into a directory on the web server from which they can be downloaded via the http server (as described in [Step 1](#) thru [Step 4 on page 160](#)). Then check to make sure that the `.json` files are reachable ([Step 5](#)). And so on until you have completed all of the steps.



# 10 Configuring Email Integration

Initial email configuration is performed when you install Micro Focus Vibe. Additional aspects of email handling are configured on the Vibe site. For information about how to further configure email settings beyond what is covered in this section, see [Chapter 27, “Managing Email Configuration,”](#) on page 269.

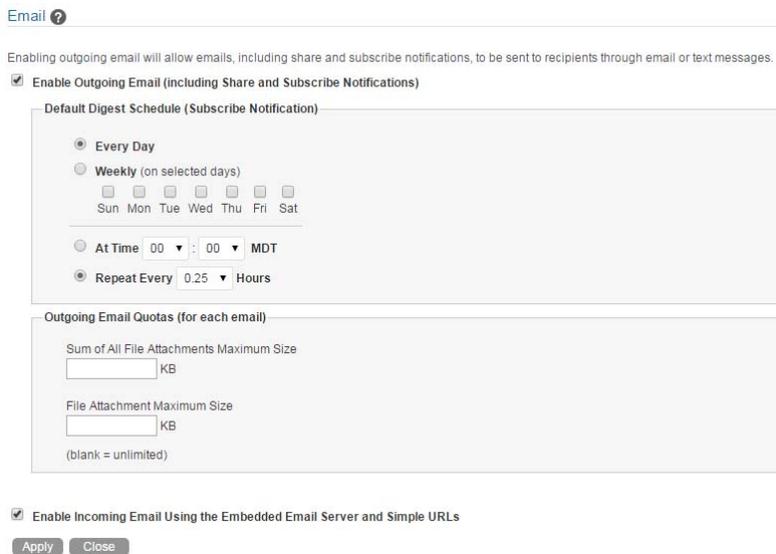
- ♦ “Enabling/Disabling Outbound Emailing of Folder Digests” on page 163
- ♦ “Disabling/Enabling Inbound Email Postings” on page 164

## Enabling/Disabling Outbound Emailing of Folder Digests

During installation, you configured Micro Focus Vibe to communicate with your email system, as described in “[Planning for Outbound Email](#)” in “[Single-server \(Basic\) Installation](#)” in the [Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide](#). As a result, Vibe users can send email messages to other Vibe users and to anyone whose email address they know. They can also send email notifications when they create workspaces, add folder entries, and so on.

In addition to this basic email functionality, you can configure your Vibe site so that users can receive folder digests of site activity that are created and sent to the users who have subscribed to the folders.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the Vibe page, then click the **Administration** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Email**.



The screenshot shows the 'Email' configuration page in the Vibe administration interface. At the top, there is a title 'Email' with a help icon. Below it, a note states: 'Enabling outgoing email will allow emails, including share and subscribe notifications, to be sent to recipients through email or text messages.' A checkbox labeled 'Enable Outgoing Email (including Share and Subscribe Notifications)' is checked. Underneath, there is a section for 'Default Digest Schedule (Subscribe Notification)'. This section has three radio button options: 'Every Day' (selected), 'Weekly (on selected days)', and 'At Time'. The 'Weekly' option has a row of checkboxes for days of the week (Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat). The 'At Time' option has a time selector set to '00:00 MDT'. The 'Repeat Every' option is set to '0.25 Hours'. Below this is a section for 'Outgoing Email Quotas (for each email)'. It contains two input fields: 'Sum of All File Attachments Maximum Size' and 'File Attachment Maximum Size', both with 'KB' units. A note below these fields says '(blank = unlimited)'. At the bottom of the form, there is a checkbox for 'Enable Incoming Email Using the Embedded Email Server and Simple URLs' which is checked. Finally, there are 'Apply' and 'Close' buttons.

- 4 Select **Enable Outgoing Email**.

By default, folder digests are compiled and sent daily at fifteen minutes after midnight.

- 5 Adjust the schedule as needed to meet the needs of the majority of your Vibe users.

Users can turn the digests on and off for individual folders, but they cannot change the email schedule that you establish.

- 6 (Optional) To set a data quota on outgoing mail messages, specify the quota limit in the **Sum of All File Attachments Maximum Size** and the **File Attachment Maximum Size** fields.

By default, there is no limit to the size of attached files. You can leave the fields blank to retain the default of no limit.

To restrict any attachments from being sent, specify 0 in each field.

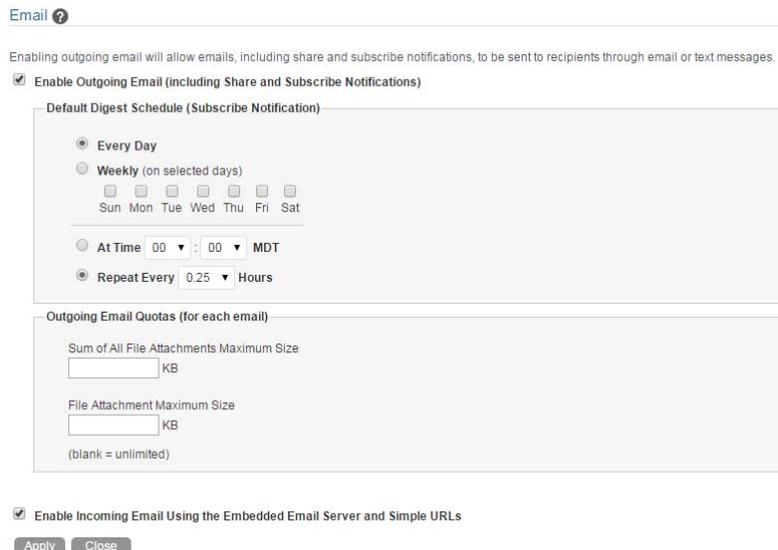
- 7 Click **Apply** to save the settings, then click **Close**.

For information about the options that users have for receiving email notifications, see “[Subscribing to a Folder or Entry](#)” in “[Getting Informed](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

## Disabling/Enabling Inbound Email Postings

During installation, you configured Micro Focus Vibe to include an internal SMTP mail host for receiving email postings to folders, as described in “[Planning to Enable Inbound Email](#)” in “[Single-server \(Basic\) Installation](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*. Your selection during installation carries over into the configuration of your Vibe site. Therefore, you can disable incoming email if necessary, and then enable it again on the Vibe site. Relaying is permanently disabled on the internal SMTP mail host.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Email**.



The screenshot shows the 'Email' configuration page in the Vibe Administration Console. At the top, there is a section for 'Default Digest Schedule (Subscribe Notification)' with three radio button options: 'Every Day' (selected), 'Weekly (on selected days)' (with checkboxes for Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat), and 'At Time' (with dropdowns for 00, 00, and MDT). Below this is a 'Repeat Every' option set to 0.25 Hours. The next section is 'Outgoing Email Quotas (for each email)' with two input fields: 'Sum of All File Attachments Maximum Size' and 'File Attachment Maximum Size', both with 'KB' units and a note '(blank = unlimited)'. At the bottom, there is a checkbox for 'Enable Incoming Email Using the Embedded Email Server and Simple URLs' which is checked, and two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Close'.

- 4 Select or deselect **Enable Incoming Email Using the Embedded Email Server and Simple URLs**.
- 5 Click **Apply > Close** to save the setting.

For information about how to configure folders to receive email postings, see [“Enabling Folders to Receive Entries through Email”](#) in [“Managing Folders”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*. Failed email postings are listed in the Tomcat log file. For background information about the Tomcat log file, see [“Tomcat Log File”](#) on page 307.



# 11 Configuring Weekends and Holidays

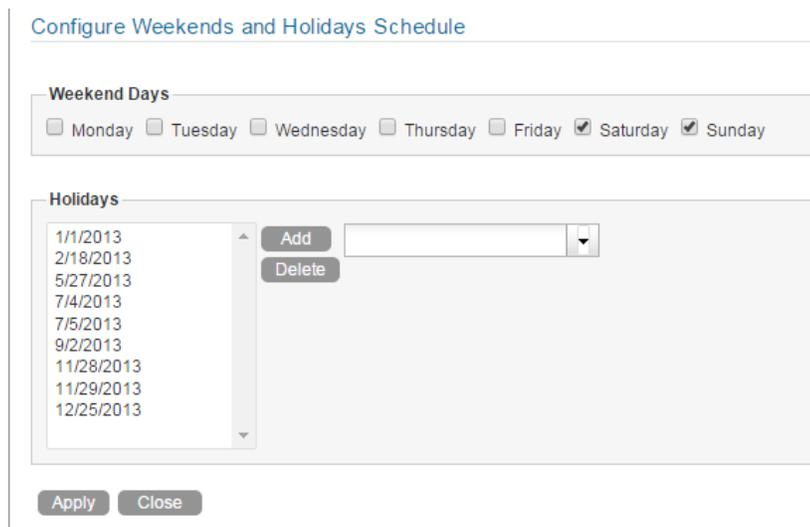
You can configure Micro Focus Vibe to recognize weekends and holidays. Currently, the weekend and holiday schedule is used by default only in relation to task durations. It can also be leveraged by users when configuring workflow transitions.

- ♦ “Configuring Vibe to Recognize Weekends and Holidays” on page 167
- ♦ “Using Weekend and Holiday Information in Tasks and Workflows” on page 168

## Configuring Vibe to Recognize Weekends and Holidays

To configure weekends and holidays for your Vibe site:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Weekends and Holidays**.



Configure Weekends and Holidays Schedule

**Weekend Days**

Monday  Tuesday  Wednesday  Thursday  Friday  Saturday  Sunday

**Holidays**

1/1/2013  
2/18/2013  
5/27/2013  
7/4/2013  
7/5/2013  
9/2/2013  
11/28/2013  
11/29/2013  
12/25/2013

Add    
Delete

Apply Close

- 4 In the **Weekend Days** section, select the days that you want to designate as the weekend. Days left unselected are considered regular workdays.
- 5 In the **Holidays** section, click in the field on the right, select the date that you want to make a holiday, then click **Add**.  
To remove a date as a holiday, select the date in the field on the left, then click **Delete**.
- 6 Click **Apply** > **Close**.

# Using Weekend and Holiday Information in Tasks and Workflows

- ♦ [“When Calculating Task Durations” on page 168](#)
- ♦ [“When Configuring Workflow Transitions” on page 168](#)

## When Calculating Task Durations

If you have configured weekends and holidays, task durations exclude these days when calculating task due dates. For example, a task with a duration of 10 days translates into two full weeks (assuming a two-day weekend for each week). For more information about task durations, see [“Working with Tasks Folders”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

---

**NOTE:** Configuring a weekend and holiday schedule or changing an existing weekend and holiday schedule does not immediately affect the due dates of existing tasks. Existing tasks are affected only after the due dates are recalculated, such as when a new task (that includes a task duration) is added to the Tasks folder where the existing tasks are located.

---

## When Configuring Workflow Transitions

If you have configured weekends and holidays, the weekend and holiday schedule can be leveraged by users when configuring workflows to transition after a specified number of days, as described in [“Transition After Time Elapsed”](#) in [“Creating and Managing Workflows”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

# 12 Configuring Real-Time Communication Tools

From the Micro Focus Vibe site, Vibe users can communicate with each other in various ways.

- ♦ [“Integrating Messenger with Vibe” on page 169](#)
- ♦ [“Integrating Skype with Vibe” on page 170](#)

## Integrating Messenger with Vibe

Vibe 3 and later lets you integrate with GroupWise Messenger 2.2 and later. This integration displays a user’s Messenger presence information within Vibe. For information about where presence information is displayed in Vibe, see [“Sending an Instant Message from within Vibe”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

When you click a user’s presence icon, the Profile Quick View is displayed, which lets you send an instant message to the user, view the user’s personal workspace, follow the user, and more.

To successfully integrate GroupWise Messenger with Micro Focus Vibe, you must complete the following tasks:

- ♦ [“Defining an Allowed Service User in ConsoleOne” on page 169](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring Messenger Integrations in the Vibe Installation Program” on page 169](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring Presence” on page 170](#)

## Defining an Allowed Service User in ConsoleOne

The Allowed Service User’s function is to log in to the Messenger system and retrieve presence information, which is then displayed in Vibe.

For information about how to create an Allowed Service User in ConsoleOne, see [“Integrating Micro Focus Vibe with GroupWise Messenger”](#) in the *GroupWise Messenger 18 Administration Guide*

## Configuring Messenger Integrations in the Vibe Installation Program

After you have defined an Allowed Service User in ConsoleOne, as described in [“Integrating Micro Focus Vibe with GroupWise Messenger”](#) in the *GroupWise Messenger 18 Administration Guide*, you need to run the Vibe installation program and configure Messenger.

For information about the presence configuration page in the Vibe installation program, see [“Configuring Presence”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Configuring Presence

You should use LDAP to sync users with a directory service such as eDirectory in order to populate the **Presence ID** field in Vibe.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **LDAP**.
- 4 On the **Users** tab, map the identifier `presenceID` to the LDAP attribute that identifies the user. For example, `presenceID=cn`.
- 5 Click **OK**.

## Integrating Skype with Vibe

Micro Focus Vibe enables Vibe users to use Skype to contact other Vibe users directly from the Vibe interface.

This functionality is enabled on a system level by default. For more information on how Vibe users can use Skype to contact other Vibe users from inside Vibe, see “[Using Skype from within Vibe](#)” in “[Connecting With Your Co-Workers](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

# 13 Enabling Custom JSPs to Be Used on Your Vibe Site

Micro Focus Vibe supports the use of custom JavaServer Pages (JSP) files. As a Vibe administrator, you can work with Vibe developers to write custom JSP files that enhance the appearance and functionality of your Vibe site.

Before you can enable a JSP file to be used in your Vibe site, the file must first be created. For information on how to create a custom JSP file, see “[Creating JavaServer Pages \(JSPs\)](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Developer Guide*.

- ♦ “[Enabling JSP Files to Be Used on Your Vibe Site](#)” on page 171
- ♦ “[Using Sample Custom JSPs to Modify the Behavior of a Landing Page](#)” on page 172

## Enabling JSP Files to Be Used on Your Vibe Site

After a JSP file has been created, you need to make it available to users in your Vibe site.

- 1 On the Vibe server, locate the JSP file that you want to make available to users.
- 2 Place the JSP file in the `/WEB-INF/jsp/custom_jsps` directory.

Users need to reference this file by name in order to use it, so make sure that the name of the file is intuitive and easy to remember.

---

**TIP:** You might want to create separate folders for each custom JSP file inside the `custom_jsps` directory. This can make managing your custom JSP files more simple. However, users who leverage these sample JSP files from the Vibe site will need to enter the relative path to the file. For example: `new_folder/custom_jsp_landing_page_entry.jsp`.

---

- 3 Stop and Restart the Vibe server.

or

If you are running Vibe in a non-production environment, you can configure Vibe to automatically update a all JSP changes that you make on the Vibe server, without stopping and restarting the Vibe server. For more information, see “[Dynamically Updating JSP Files by Running Vibe in Development Mode](#)” on page 171.

## Dynamically Updating JSP Files by Running Vibe in Development Mode

---

**WARNING:** Running Vibe in development mode is not supported in production environments, significantly decreases Vibe performance, and is offered only as a convenience for developers.

---

If you are testing JSP files on a non-production system and you want all JSP changes that you make on the Vibe server to be automatically available on the Vibe server without stopping and restarting the Vibe server, you can run Vibe in development mode.

To run Vibe in development mode:

- 1 Open the `web.xml` file in a text editor.

The `web.xml` file is located in the following directory:

---

| Platform | Default Location                                                |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Linux:   | <code>/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf</code>             |
| Windows: | <code>c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\conf</code> |

---

- 2 Search for the `development` parameter, then change the value of this parameter from `false` to `true`.
- 3 Save and close the `web.xml` file.

## Using Sample Custom JSPs to Modify the Behavior of a Landing Page

---

**NOTE:** While the information in this section is still valid, users can achieve the same results (and more) with Vibe 3.1 and later by adding an Enhanced View element to the landing page. For more information, see “[Enhanced View:](#)” in “[Adding Content to Your Landing Page](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

---

Micro Focus Vibe includes sample custom JSP files that enable you to modify the behavior of Vibe landing pages. Before you implement the sample JSP files that are described in this section, you might want to further customize them to suit your specific needs, as described in “[Creating JavaServer Pages \(JSPs\)](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Developer Guide*.

For information on how users can add these custom JSP files to their individual landing pages after the JSP files have been enabled for use, see “[Adding Content to Your Landing Page](#)” in “[Creating and Managing Landing Pages](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ◆ “[Listing Folder Entry Titles in a Bulleted List](#)” on page 172
- ◆ “[Displaying Entry Replies on a Landing Page](#)” on page 173
- ◆ “[Enabling Users to Take a Survey Directly from a Landing Page](#)” on page 173

### Listing Folder Entry Titles in a Bulleted List

To activate the sample JSP file that enables Vibe users to list entries in a bulleted list for any given folder:

- 1 In the Vibe source files, navigate to the `\WEB-INF\jsp\custom_jsp\samples` directory.
- 2 Select and copy the `custom_jsp_landing_page_folder_list.jsp` file, then paste it into the `\WEB-INF\jsp\custom_jsp` directory.

---

**TIP:** You might want to create separate folders for each custom JSP file inside the `custom_jsps` directory. This can make managing your custom JSP files more simple. However, users who leverage these sample JSP files from the Vibe site need to enter the relative path to the file. For example: `new_folder/custom_jsp_landing_page_entry.jsp`.

---

## Displaying Entry Replies on a Landing Page

You can display replies for a single entry, or for all entries that are contained in a folder.

- ♦ [“Displaying Entry Replies for a Single Entry” on page 173](#)
- ♦ [“Displaying Entry Replies for All Entries in a Folder” on page 173](#)

### Displaying Entry Replies for a Single Entry

To activate the sample JSP file that lets Vibe users display entry replies on a landing page when referencing a folder entry:

- 1 In the Vibe source files, navigate to the `\WEB-INF\jsp\custom_jsp\samples` directory.
- 2 Select and copy the `custom_jsp_landing_page_entry.jsp` file, then paste it into the `\WEB-INF\jsp\custom_jsp` directory.

---

**TIP:** You might want to create separate folders for each custom JSP file inside the `custom_jsps` directory. This can make managing your custom JSP files more simple. However, users who leverage these sample JSP files from the Vibe site need to enter the relative path to the file. For example: `new_folder/custom_jsp_landing_page_entry.jsp`.

---

### Displaying Entry Replies for All Entries in a Folder

To activate the sample JSP file that lets Vibe users display entry replies on a landing page when referencing a folder:

- 1 In the Vibe source files, navigate to the `\WEB-INF\jsp\custom_jsp\samples` directory.
- 2 Select and copy the `custom_jsp_landing_page_folder.jsp` file, then paste it into the `\WEB-INF\jsp\custom_jsp` directory.

---

**TIP:** You might want to create separate folders for each custom JSP file inside the `custom_jsps` directory. This can make managing your custom JSP files more simple. However, users who leverage these sample JSP files from the Vibe site need to enter the relative path to the file. For example: `new_folder/custom_jsp_landing_page_entry.jsp`.

---

## Enabling Users to Take a Survey Directly from a Landing Page

To activate the sample JSP file that enables Vibe users to participate in a survey directly from a landing page:

- 1 In the Vibe source files, navigate to the `\WEB-INF\jsp\custom_jsp\samples` directory.
- 2 Select and copy the `custom_jsp_landing_page_survey_entry.jsp` file, then paste it into the `\WEB-INF\jsp\custom_jsp` directory.







# 15 Adding Software Extensions to Your Vibe Site

You can customize your Micro Focus Vibe site through the use of software extensions. Vibe administrators or Vibe developers can create custom extensions (add-ons) that enhance the power and usefulness of the Vibe software. For example, you might have an extension that enables Flash video support in Vibe.

When you customize your Vibe site through the use of software extensions, as described in this section, the customizations are available only for the zone where the software extension is deployed. If you are creating customizations for workflows, and you want to make the customizations available to multiple zones, you can instead add the customizations as JAR files, as described in [Chapter 14, “Enabling Custom JAR Files to Be Used on Your Vibe Site,” on page 175](#). (For more information about zones in Vibe, see [Chapter 18, “Setting Up Zones \(Virtual Vibe Sites\),” on page 193](#).)

This section discusses how to add software extensions that have already been created.

- ♦ [“Creating a Software Extension” on page 177](#)
- ♦ [“Deploying the Extension in Your Vibe Site” on page 177](#)
- ♦ [“Viewing Your Vibe Extensions” on page 178](#)
- ♦ [“Removing an Extension from Your Vibe Site” on page 179](#)

If you want Vibe to communicate with a third-party application and display related information inside of Vibe, you can set up a remote application, as described in [Chapter 16, “Using Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site,” on page 181](#).

## Creating a Software Extension

For information on how to create a custom software extension for Micro Focus Vibe, see [“Creating and Packaging Extensions for Deployment”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Developer Guide*.

## Deploying the Extension in Your Vibe Site

- 1 Log in to the Micro Focus Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Extensions**.

## Extensions

---

▶ [Add a new extension](#)

| Name | Description | Remove |
|------|-------------|--------|
|------|-------------|--------|

Close

- 4 Click **Add a new extension**.
- 5 In the **Choose a File** section, click **Browse**, then browse to the extension that you want to deploy.  
The extension is a zip file that can contain definition xml files, custom JSP files, Java classes, html files, css files, JavaScript, and other third-party files.
- 6 Click **Add**.  
The extension is now installed and is displayed in a table on the Manage Extensions page.  
You might need to configure an extension after it has been installed. For information on how to configure extensions, see the installation instructions on the web site where you obtained the extension.  
Installation instructions are specific for each extension, and should be written by the extension creator.

## Viewing Your Vibe Extensions

- 1 Log in to the Micro Focus Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Extensions**.  
The Extensions page is displayed.  
The table lists all extensions that are currently available in the Vibe site.

# Removing an Extension from Your Vibe Site

An extension cannot be removed from the Micro Focus Vibe site if the extension is being referenced by a binder or entry. If an extension is being referenced somewhere in the Vibe site, you must first manually delete the files and definitions that are referencing the extension before you can remove the extension itself. When an extension is removed, it does not remove any actual data from the Vibe site.

To remove an extension from your Vibe site:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Extensions**.  
The Manage Extensions page is displayed.
- 4 In the table, click the (x) in the **Remove** column for the extension that you want to delete.
- 5 Click **OK**.  
The extension is removed from the Vibe site and can no longer be used.



# 16 Using Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site

A remote application is a program that runs on a remote server and delivers data for use on your Micro Focus Vibe site (such as data from a remote database). For example, you could set up a remote application for Twitter that displays all of your Twitter entries in Vibe.

Unlike creating an extension for Vibe, creating a remote application does not modify the Vibe software in any way.

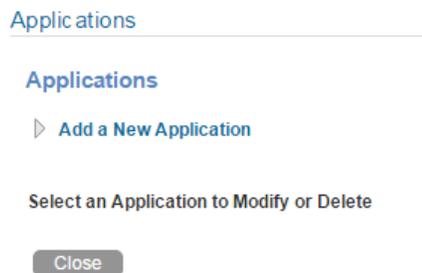
- ◆ [“Adding a Remote Application to Your Vibe Site” on page 181](#)
- ◆ [“Creating an Application Group” on page 183](#)
- ◆ [“Managing Access Controls for Remote Applications” on page 184](#)
- ◆ [“Implementing Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site” on page 185](#)

If you want to make modifications to the Vibe software itself, you can add a software extension, as described in [Chapter 15, “Adding Software Extensions to Your Vibe Site,” on page 177](#).

## Adding a Remote Application to Your Vibe Site

After you or a developer have created a remote application, you need to make it available on your Micro Focus Vibe site.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Manage**, click **Applications**.



- 4 Click **Add a New Application**.

Applications

---

**Applications**

▼ Add a New Application

Title

Name <sup>?</sup>

Description

Trusted

Vibe Initiates Interactions

Post URL

Post Timeout in seconds (0 means No Timeout)

Application Initiates Interactions

Maximum Idle Time in seconds (0 means No Timeout)

Same Address Policy

Add

Select an Application to Modify or Delete

Close

**5** Fill in the following fields:

**Title:** Specify a unique title for the remote application. For example, `Hello World`.

Vibe site users who add the remote application to a form or view can select the title from the list of available remote applications.

**Name:** Specify a unique name for the remote application. The name is for internal use in the Vibe database. The first character must be an alphabetic character (a-z, A-Z). For the rest of the name, you can use alphanumeric characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9), hyphens (-), and underscores (\_). For example, `helloworld`.

**Description:** Provide a description of what the remote application does.

**Trusted:** Select **Trusted** if the application is extremely trustworthy (for example, if you write, maintain, and run the application on the same server that runs Vibe). If you select **Trusted**, Vibe applies access control according to the viewing user's access control settings. For complete information about access control, see "[Managing Remote Applications](#)" in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

**Post URL:** Specify the URL of the remote application. Vibe posts requests for information, along with the requesting user and a security token for use by Vibe web services, to this URL, then waits to receive the requested HTML snippets for posting on the Vibe site. For example, `http://localhost:8080/remotapp/helloWorld`.

**Post Timeout:** Specify the number of seconds that Vibe should wait for a response from the remote application before it assumes that the remote application is not available. The default is 60 (1 minute). If Vibe does not receive a response from the remote application, it displays the page requested by the user without any input from the remote application.

**Maximum Idle Time:** Specify the number of seconds that Vibe maintains idle connections through Vibe web service with a remote application. The default is 3600 (1 hour). After the maximum idle time elapses, Vibe closes idle connections.

**Same Address Policy:** Select this option if interactions with the Vibe site are initiated by the remote application, and if the remote application must communicate with Vibe through the Vibe web services machine by using the same security token for the entire communication.

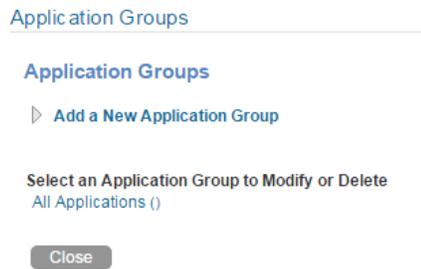
- 6 Click **Add** to add the remote application to the list of remote applications that are available on your Vibe site, then click **Close**.

Users now see the new remote application in the list of tools within the designers and within the tool used to create accessories.

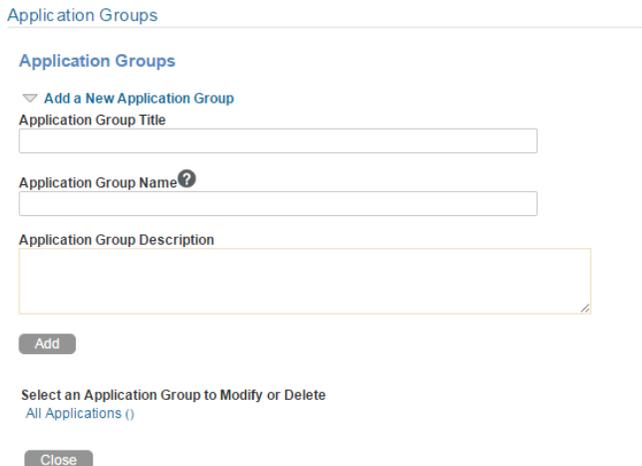
## Creating an Application Group

If you create a number of remote applications for your Micro Focus Vibe site, you can create application groups for remote applications so they can all be assigned the same roles in the Access Control table. For example, you might have a group of remote applications that are allowed to perform administrative tasks and another group of remote applications that are granted only read access.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Manage**, click **Application Groups**.



- 4 Click **Add a New Application Group**.



5 Fill in the following fields:

**Application Group Title:** Specify a unique title for the remote application group. Vibe site users who need to set access controls for a remote application can select the title from the list of available remote application groups.

**Application Group Name:** Specify a unique name for the remote application group. The name is for internal use in the Vibe database. The first character must be an alphabetic character (a-z, A-Z). For the rest of the name, you can use alphanumeric characters (a-z, A-Z, 0-9), hyphens (-), and underscores (\_).

**Application Group Description:** Provide a description of the types of remote applications that the application group includes.

6 Click **Add** to add the application group to the list of application groups that are available on your Vibe site, then select the new application group to add remote applications to it.

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing application groups. At the top, it says 'Administrative Applications (administrative\_apps)'. Below that is a link 'Modify the Application Group Title or Description'. The main section is titled 'Modify the Application Group Membership Applications'. It contains two search fields: one for 'Applications' with a 'Find Applications' button, and one for 'Application Groups' with a 'Find Groups' button. At the bottom, there are 'Apply' and 'Delete' buttons.

7 Fill in the following fields:

**Applications:** Start typing the title of a remote application, then select the remote application. Repeat for each application that you want to add to the application group.

**Application Groups:** Start typing the title of an existing application group that you want to nest in the new application group, then select the application group. Repeat for each application group that you want to nest in the application group.

8 Click **Apply** to save the application group, then click **Close**.

## Managing Access Controls for Remote Applications

Because not all remote applications can be completely trusted, it is often a good idea to limit the privileges of the remote application. This section describes how you can accomplish this.

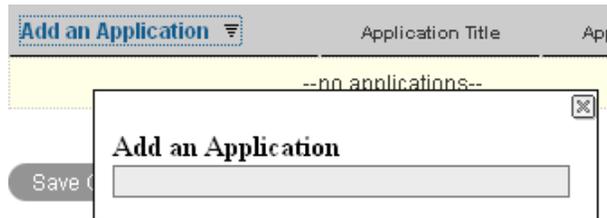
If you are running a trusted remote application, such as an application that you are maintaining on the same server as Micro Focus Vibe, then you do not need to set access controls on it.

When an application is restricted to a specific role, the application can use web services to perform only those tasks that are allowed for that role. For example, the Participant role can create new entries, modify entries that the user created, add comments to entries, and so on. Participants cannot perform system administration tasks and cannot modify other users' entries.

Because workspace and folder owners can change the access control for places they own, you should communicate to your users about registered applications in the system and recommended access-control settings.

To limit the remote application to privileges assigned to a specific role:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Access the top workspace in the hierarchy by clicking the workspace tree icon , then clicking **Home Workspace** (this is the default name for the top workspace).
- 3 Click **Workspace > Access Control**.
- 4 On the Configure Access Control page, click **Add an Application**.



- 5 In the **Add an Application** field, use the type-to-find to specify and select the application that you want to add.
- 6 In the access control table, select the check box that is located in the row of the remote application that you just added, and the column of the role that you want to assign to the application.



- 7 Click **Save Changes > Close**.

The application that you added is now restricted to those operations allowed for the role that you selected. For example, if you assigned the Participant role to the remote application, then the inheritance of workspace and folder access controls means that it is very likely that most workspaces and folders inherit this setting. Assuming that all places inherited this setting, the most powerful role the remote application can assume within the installation is that of a Participant.

You can assign access-control roles to groups of applications instead of assigning roles to one application at a time if you have enabled multiple applications for your site and have grouped them together in an application group, as described in [“Creating an Application Group” on page 183](#).

## Implementing Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site

After you as the Micro Focus Vibe administrator have added remote applications to the Vibe site, users can implement them in custom forms and views, in workspaces, and as accessories. For instructions, see [“Managing Remote Applications”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.



# 17 Setting Up Mirrored Folders

A mirrored folder is a library folder within Micro Focus Vibe that is synchronized with a folder located on a system drive outside of Vibe. When you perform basic actions (adding subfolders and files, modifying files, deleting folders and files) by using the Vibe interface or by accessing the file on the drive, the change is reflected in the other interface. The advantage to using mirrored files is that you can apply Vibe tools to files on a drive, including tools such as text search, workflow, and discussion (in the form of comments applied to the entry in the library folder).

Initial setup of mirrored folder resource drivers is done during Micro Focus Vibe installation, as described in [“Configuring Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

The Vibe Installation program lets you set up as many as three mirrored folder resource drivers. If you need more than three, you must manually edit the `installer.xml` file, then update your Vibe installation.

After you set up the mirrored folder resource drivers by using the Installation program, you must perform additional mirrored folder configuration on the Vibe site.

- ♦ [“Manually Setting Up More Than Three Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers”](#) on page 187
- ♦ [“Creating a Mirrored Files Folder for a Mirrored Folder Resource Driver”](#) on page 190

## Manually Setting Up More Than Three Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers

- ♦ [“Editing the installer.xml File”](#) on page 187
- ♦ [“Updating Your Vibe Site Configuration”](#) on page 189

### Editing the installer.xml File

The Micro Focus Vibe Installation program lets you set up three mirrored folder resource drivers. However, there is no limit to the total number of mirrored folder resource drivers that you can set up after installation. A useful strategy is to set up resource drivers for root directories, then set up Mirrored File folders for root directories and subdirectories as needed, as described in [“Creating a Mirrored Files Folder for a Mirrored Folder Resource Driver”](#) on page 190.

When you run the Vibe Installation program, it creates the `installer.xml` file in the directory where you run it. The `installer.xml` file stores the information you provided during installation. You can also edit it manually, then update your Vibe installation.

- 1 Make a backup copy of your existing `installer.xml` file.
- 2 Open the `installer.xml` file in a text editor.
- 3 Search for `mirrored`.
- 4 Scroll down until you reach the three existing mirrored folder resource drivers.
- 5 Copy the mirrored folder resource driver that is most like the one you want to create, then paste it between the `<MirroredFolder>` and `</MirroredFolder>` tags.

The Vibe Installation program displays only the first three mirrored folder resource drivers, so you might want to place new resource drivers at the top of the list in order to double-check the information when you run the Vibe Installation program to implement your changes.

- 6 Set the parameters as needed for the file system location that you want to mirror in your Vibe site:

| Tag                   | Setting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| enabled=              | true                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| type=                 | file or webdav                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| id=                   | The unique internal name for the mirrored folder resource driver. Use only alphanumeric characters. Do not include spaces, extended characters, or double-byte characters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| title=                | The name of the mirrored folder resource driver that displays on the Vibe site. The title can include any characters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| rootPath=             | <p>For the <code>file</code> mirrored folder type, the absolute path to the directory from the point of view of the Vibe server.</p> <p>For the <code>webdav</code> mirrored folder type, the path to the directory after the WebDAV server hostname, and optionally, the port number, as specified by the <code>hostUrl=</code> parameter. The path should start with a slash (/), because it is appended to the setting of the <code>hostUrl=</code> parameter. For example, if the full WebDAV server location is:</p> <pre>http://webdavserver/archive/docs</pre> <p>the <code>rootPath=</code> setting would be:</p> <pre>/archive/docs</pre> |
| readonly=             | true or false                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| zoneId=               | For a multi-zone Vibe site, this is the ID of the zone where you want the mirrored folder resource driver to be available. For information about Vibe zones, see <a href="#">Chapter 18, "Setting Up Zones (Virtual Vibe Sites)," on page 193</a> . For a single-zone Vibe site, leave this parameter empty.--                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| AllowedUsers idList=  | A list of Vibe user IDs that can access the mirrored folder resource driver and create mirrored folders. Use a semicolon (;) between user IDs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| AllowedGroups idList= | A list of Vibe groups that can access the mirrored folder resource driver and create mirrored folders. Use a semicolon (;) between group IDs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

- 7 (Conditional) If you are setting up a `webdav` mirrored folder, set the following additional parameters:

| Tag       | Setting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hostUrl=  | <p>The hostname, and optionally, the port number for the WebDAV server. For example:</p> <pre>http://webdav_hostname[:port] https://webdav_hostname[:port]</pre> <p>Do not include the directory path to the data. Use the <code>rootPath=</code> parameter to specify the path to the directory on the WebDAV server. For example, if the full WebDAV server location is:</p> <pre>http://webdav_hostname/archive/docs</pre> <p>the <code>hostUrl=</code> setting would be:</p> <pre>http://webdav_hostname</pre> |
| user=     | <p>The user name that Vibe can use to connect to the WebDAV server. The WebDAV server must support <a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Basic_access_authentication">HTTP Basic authentication</a> (<a href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Basic_access_authentication">http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Basic_access_authentication</a>).</p>                                                                                                                                                                         |
| password= | <p>The password for the user name specified by the <code>user=</code> parameter.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

- 8 Repeat [Step 5](#) and [Step 6](#) for each mirrored folder resource driver that you want to create.
- 9 Save the `installer.xml` file, then exit the text editor.

## Updating Your Vibe Site Configuration

After you edit the `installer.xml` file, you must run the Micro Focus Vibe Installation program to update the configuration of your Vibe site. If you need assistance with any of the following steps, refer to the appropriate platform-specific instructions in “[Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site](#)” in “[Single-server \(Basic\) Installation](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

- 1 Stop Vibe.
- 2 Start the Vibe Installation program.
 

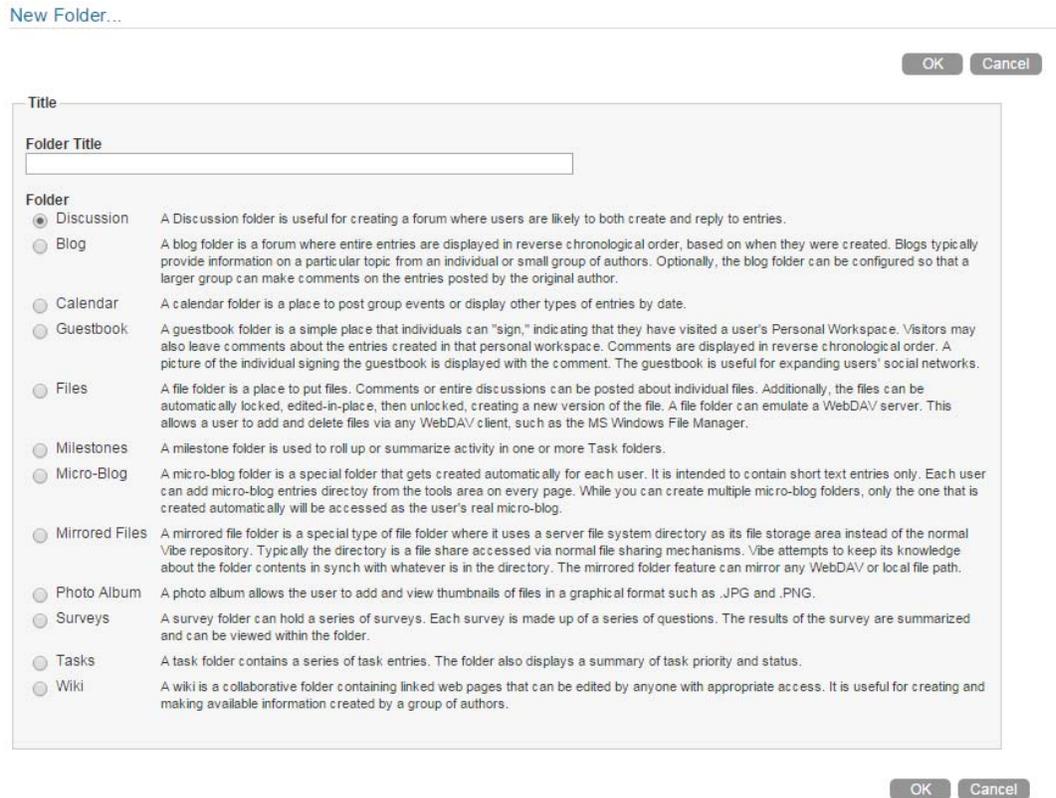
The Vibe Installation program reads the updated `installer.xml` file. If your edits inadvertently changed the syntax of the file, the Installation program cannot start. If this happens, correct the problem in the `installer.xml` file, or return to your backup copy and try your edits again.
- 3 Accept the License Agreement, then click **Next**.
- 4 Select **Reconfigure Settings**, then click **Next**.
- 5 Select **Advanced**, then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Next** until you reach the Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration page.
 

The Vibe Installation program displays the first three mirrored folder resource drivers listed in the `installer.xml` file.
- 7 (Conditional) If you placed the new resource drivers at the top of the list, review the information that you added, and make corrections if necessary.
- 8 Click **Next**.
- 9 Click **Install** to implement the new mirrored folder resources.
- 10 Start Vibe.

# Creating a Mirrored Files Folder for a Mirrored Folder Resource Driver

After you have set up one or more mirrored folder resource drivers in the Micro Focus Vibe Installation program, you need to create a Mirrored Files folder for each resource driver in order to make the data accessible to users on your Vibe site.

- 1 Navigate to the workspace where you want to create a mirrored folder.
- 2 Create a new File folder:
  - 2a Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **New Folder**.



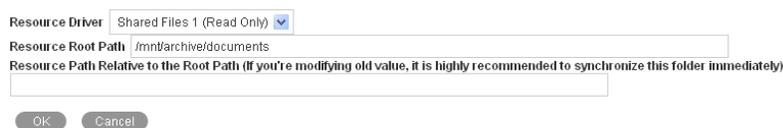
**Title**

Folder Title

**Folder**

- Discussion A Discussion folder is useful for creating a forum where users are likely to both create and reply to entries.
- Blog A blog folder is a forum where entire entries are displayed in reverse chronological order, based on when they were created. Blogs typically provide information on a particular topic from an individual or small group of authors. Optionally, the blog folder can be configured so that a larger group can make comments on the entries posted by the original author.
- Calendar A calendar folder is a place to post group events or display other types of entries by date.
- Guestbook A guestbook folder is a simple place that individuals can "sign," indicating that they have visited a user's Personal Workspace. Visitors may also leave comments about the entries created in that personal workspace. Comments are displayed in reverse chronological order. A picture of the individual signing the guestbook is displayed with the comment. The guestbook is useful for expanding users' social networks.
- Files A file folder is a place to put files. Comments or entire discussions can be posted about individual files. Additionally, the files can be automatically locked, edited-in-place, then unlocked, creating a new version of the file. A file folder can emulate a WebDAV server. This allows a user to add and delete files via any WebDAV client, such as the MS Windows File Manager.
- Milestones A milestone folder is used to roll up or summarize activity in one or more Task folders.
- Micro-Blog A micro-blog folder is a special folder that gets created automatically for each user. It is intended to contain short text entries only. Each user can add micro-blog entries directly from the tools area on every page. While you can create multiple micro-blog folders, only the one that is created automatically will be accessed as the user's real micro-blog.
- Mirrored Files A mirrored file folder is a special type of file folder where it uses a server file system directory as its file storage area instead of the normal Vibe repository. Typically the directory is a file share accessed via normal file sharing mechanisms. Vibe attempts to keep its knowledge about the folder contents in synch with whatever is in the directory. The mirrored folder feature can mirror any WebDAV or local file path.
- Photo Album A photo album allows the user to add and view thumbnails of files in a graphical format such as .JPG and .PNG.
- Surveys A survey folder can hold a series of surveys. Each survey is made up of a series of questions. The results of the survey are summarized and can be viewed within the folder.
- Tasks A task folder contains a series of task entries. The folder also displays a summary of task priority and status.
- Wiki A wiki is a collaborative folder containing linked web pages that can be edited by anyone with appropriate access. It is useful for creating and making available information created by a group of authors.

- 2b Specify a name for the folder that reflects the type of data that is available in the mirrored location.
- 2c Select **Mirrored Files**, then click **OK**.
- 3 Configure the new Mirrored Files folder to access the resource driver:
  - 3a Click the **Configure** icon  next to the folder title, then click **Edit Folder**.
  - 3b Scroll down to the mirrored folder options at the bottom of the page.



Resource Driver Shared Files 1 (Read Only)

Resource Root Path /mnt/archive/documents

Resource Path Relative to the Root Path (if you're modifying old value, it is highly recommended to synchronize this folder immediately)

OK Cancel

3c Set the mirrored folder options as needed:

**Resource Driver:** Select the name of the mirrored folder resource driver, as specified in the **Title** field on the Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration page in the Vibe Installation program or using the `title=` tag in the `installer.xml` file.

**Resource Root Path:** Displays the pathname you specified in the Vibe Installation program or the `installer.xml` file.

**Resource Path Relative to the Root Path:** (Optional) Add a subdirectory path to restrict the scope of the files available in the Mirrored File folder.

---

**IMPORTANT:** After you configure a Mirrored Files folder with a resource driver, you cannot edit any of the mirrored folder settings except for the subdirectory path. If you need to change other settings, you can delete the Mirrored File folder and create a new one with different settings.

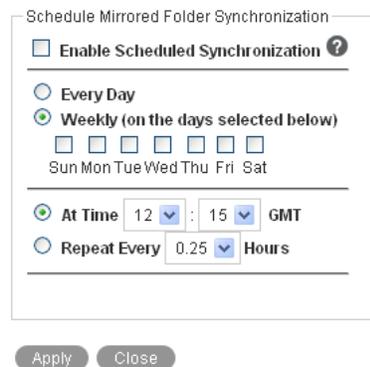
---

3d Click **OK** to save the mirrored folder settings.

4 Display the Mirrored Files folder, click the **Configure** icon  next to the folder title, then click **Manually Synchronize** to create the initial metadata for the mirrored folder.

5 Set up a synchronization schedule to keep the metadata current:

5a Click the **Configure** icon  next to the folder title, then click **Schedule Synchronization**.



6 Select **Enable Scheduled Synchronization**.

7 Set schedule options as needed.

You can choose to have mirrored folder synchronization performed every day, or you can select specific days of the week (for example, on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday). You can choose to have synchronization performed once a day at a specified time (for example, at 2:00 a.m.), or you can set a time interval, so that it is performed multiple times each day (for example, every four hours). The smallest time interval you can set is .25 hours (every 15 minutes).

8 Click **Apply > Close** to save the synchronization schedule options for the mirrored folder.

9 Click the new Mirrored Files folder to display the directories and files in the mirrored location.

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you set up multiple Mirrored Files folders that point to the same files, and if Vibe users have been granted write access to those files, multiple Vibe users can gain write access to the same mirrored file at the same time. File locking is associated with each Mirrored File folder entry, not with the physical source files. Make sure that all Vibe users have access to mirrored files through the same Mirrored File folder.

---

- 10 Set appropriate access controls on the Mirrored Files folder, as described in [Chapter 2, “Planning and Controlling User Access to Workspaces and Folders,”](#) on page 21.

# 18 Setting Up Zones (Virtual Vibe Sites)

You can set up multiple virtual Micro Focus Vibe sites within a single physical Vibe site by setting up Vibe zones. Each Vibe zone is completely independent. Each zone has its own unique URL, and data files for each zone are stored in a separate subdirectory of the Vibe file repository, so that no searching across zones is possible.

- ◆ “Creating a New Vibe Zone” on page 193
- ◆ “Configuring DNS to Support the New Zone” on page 194
- ◆ “Accessing the New Zone” on page 195
- ◆ “Setting Up Access Control for the New Zone” on page 195

## Creating a New Vibe Zone

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Zones**.

Zones

---

▸ Add a New Zone

| ID | Name    | Virtual Host |
|----|---------|--------------|
| 1  | kablink |              |

Close

The default zone name is `kablink`. It represents your initial Vibe site, from which all other zones can be managed.

- 4 Click **Add a New Zone**, then fill in the fields.

Zones

---

▾ Add a New Zone

Name

Virtual Host

Add

| ID | Name    | Virtual Host |
|----|---------|--------------|
| 1  | kablink |              |

Close

**Name:** Specify a unique name to describe the zone. The name can include alphanumeric characters, periods, and underscores. Do not include spaces, extended characters, or double-byte characters.

**Virtual Host:** Specify the hostname for the zone. You can use any hostname that does not conflict with an existing hostname.

- 5 Click **Add**, then click **Close** to create the zone.

## Configuring DNS to Support the New Zone

The new zone URL has the following format:

```
http://virtual_hostname[:port]
```

where *virtual\_hostname* is the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Micro Focus Vibe zone that you have set up in DNS.

All zones use the same port number as the physical Vibe site. If you have the Vibe site configured to listen on your browser default port, you do not need to include the port number in the zone URL. How you configure your Vibe site to listen on the browser default port varies by platform.

Linux: See “[Setting Up Port Forwarding](#)” in “[Single-server \(Basic\) Installation](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

Windows: Specify the desired port numbers when you run the Vibe Installation program, as described in “[HTTP/HTTPS Ports](#)” in “[Single-server \(Basic\) Installation](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

- 1 To perform an initial test of the Vibe zone, add the zone URL to the `hosts` file on your local workstation where you run your browser. The location of the `hosts` file and the format of the line to add vary by platform:

|         |                                                    |                            |                       |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Linux   | <code>/etc/hosts</code>                            |                            |                       |
|         | <code>ip_address</code>                            | <code>vibe_zone_url</code> | <code>hostname</code> |
|         | 172.16.5.18                                        | www.myvibesite.com         | vibel                 |
| Windows | <code>C:\Windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts</code> |                            |                       |
|         | <code>ip_address</code>                            | <code>vibe_zone_url</code> |                       |
|         | 172.16.5.18                                        | www.myvibesite.com         |                       |

- 2 Specify the zone URL in your web browser.

```
http://www.myvibesite.com
```

- 3 Log in to the new zone by using the default administrator user name (`admin`) and password (`admin`).

From this, you can see that each zone has its own site administrator who has administrative rights only within that particular zone.

- 4 Immediately change the site administrator password to a secure password of your own choosing, as described in “[Accessing Your Basic Vibe Site as the Site Administrator](#)” in “[Single-server \(Basic\) Installation](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

- 5 After you can access the new zone successfully following the instructions in [Step 1](#), have your network administrator make comparable changes to DNS so that the zone URL is recognized across your company or across the Internet as needed.

# Accessing the New Zone

As with your original Micro Focus Vibe site, the Vibe administrator user name is `admin`, and the password is `admin`. For the security of the new zone, you should immediately change the zone's administrator password.

- 1 In your web browser, specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether or not you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://zone_hostname  
https://zone_hostname
```

Replace `zone_hostname` with the zone hostname or fully qualified domain name that you set up in DNS.

- 2 Log in using `admin` as the login name and `admin` as the password.
- 3 Change the default zone administrator password to a secure password:
  - 3a Navigate to the personal workspace of the Vibe administrator.
  - 3b Click **Profile**, then click **Edit** on the Profile page.
  - 3c Specify a new password for the zone administrator in the **New Password** and **Confirm New Password** fields.
  - 3d (Optional) Provide useful information in the additional fields of the zone administrator's profile.
  - 3e Click **OK** to return to the zone administrator's profile.

---

**IMPORTANT:** The zone can only be administered by accessing the zone URL and by logging in through the zone administrator password. The zone cannot be administered from the main Vibe site, even when you are logged in as the main Vibe administrator.

---

# Setting Up Access Control for the New Zone

After you log in to the zone as the zone administrator, you can set access controls for the zone.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Access Control**.

Configure Access Control

Configure Access Control Close

Administrative Functions

Add User Names from Clipboard

Add a Role

| Add a Group        | Group Title | Group Name | Allow Adding Guest Access | Create Net Folders       | Enable Creating File Links          | Enable Sharing with Internal Users  | Enable Sharing with the All External Users Group | Enable Sharing with the All Internal Users Group | Enable Sharing with External Users  | Enable Forwarding of Sharing Rights | Enable Sharing with the Public      | Create Net Folder Servers | Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In | Override "Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In" | Token Requester          | Zone Administration      |
|--------------------|-------------|------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| All Internal Users |             | allusers   | <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>               | <input type="checkbox"/>                          | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Add a User         | User Title  | User Id    | Allow Adding Guest Access | Create Net Folders       | Enable Creating File Links          | Enable Sharing with Internal Users  | Enable Sharing with the All External Users Group | Enable Sharing with the All Internal Users Group | Enable Sharing with External Users  | Enable Forwarding of Sharing Rights | Enable Sharing with the Public      | Create Net Folder Servers | Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In | Override "Can Only See Members Of Groups I Am In" | Token Requester          | Zone Administration      |
| --no users--       |             |            |                           |                          |                                     |                                     |                                                  |                                                  |                                     |                                     |                                     |                           |                                        |                                                   |                          |                          |

Save Changes

Assigning roles to an application or application group at the zone level actually specifies the maximum set of rights that the application is allowed to use. This allows the site administrator to prevent an application from ever having more rights than are needed to perform its task. If no roles are assigned, then the application has no rights.

admin (admin) has been designated as the default site administrator with privileges to perform any task on any workspace or folder.

Close

- 4 (Conditional) If you want to have more than one zone administrator:
  - 4a Click **Add a User**, start typing the user's name, then select the user from the drop-down list.
  - 4b Select the check box in the **Zone Administration** column.
  - 4c Click **Save Changes**.
- 5 (Optional) Add roles, as described in ["Managing Roles to Refine Access Control"](#) on page 31.
- 6 (Optional) Set other access controls for the zone, as described in ["Controlling Access"](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

# 19 Managing a Multiple-Language Vibe Site

- ◆ “Accommodating Multiple Languages” on page 197
- ◆ “Adding a New Language” on page 198

## Accommodating Multiple Languages

- ◆ “Understanding the Vibe Site Default Language” on page 197
- ◆ “Setting Up a Multilingual Workspace Name” on page 197
- ◆ “Changing the Default Language on the Login Page” on page 198

## Understanding the Vibe Site Default Language

There can be only one default language for the entire Micro Focus Vibe site. You select the default language when you install Vibe, as described in “[Planning the Default Locale and Logging Time Zone](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

When you create Vibe users, you can select a locale for each user, which determines the language of each personal workspace. However, when users who speak various languages work together on a Vibe site, they can often see interface text that is not in their preferred language. Examples include:

- ◆ Standardized text such as **Home Workspace**, **Global Workspaces**, **Personal Workspaces**, and **Team Workspaces** in the Workspace tree
- ◆ Standardized group names, such as All Users
- ◆ Login page

Although you cannot change standardized group names, such as All Users, you can rename the standardized workspaces to include multiple languages. Although the Vibe login page can be displayed in only one language, you can change the page’s default language. You must be logged in as the Vibe administrator in order to perform these tasks.

## Setting Up a Multilingual Workspace Name

- 1 Browse to the workspace.
- 2 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Edit Workspace**.
- 3 In the **Title** field, add text in another language, then click **OK**.

## Changing the Default Language on the Login Page

The language of the Vibe login page is decided by the Guest user account. Because of this, you can display only one language for your entire Vibe site in the login page.

To change the language of the Guest user account, and therefore change the language that is displayed on the Vibe login page:

- 1 Navigate to the Guest workspace.
- 2 On the Profile page click **Edit**.  
The User page is launched.
- 3 In the **Locale** drop-down list, select the language that you want to be displayed on your login page.  
Users who log in as Guest view the Vibe site in the language that you select.
- 4 Click **OK**.

## Adding a New Language

- ♦ [“Current Language Availability” on page 198](#)
- ♦ [“Text to Translate” on page 199](#)
- ♦ [“New Language Implementation” on page 199](#)

## Current Language Availability

Micro Focus Vibe is currently translated into 15 languages. Each language is identified by a language code in the Vibe software. Directory names and filenames include the language codes to identify the languages of directories and files.

- ♦ Chinese-Simplified (zh\_TW)
- ♦ Chinese Traditional (zh\_CN)
- ♦ Danish (da)
- ♦ Dutch (nl)
- ♦ English (en)
- ♦ French (fr)
- ♦ German (de)
- ♦ Hungarian (hu\_HU)
- ♦ Italian (it)
- ♦ Japanese (ja)
- ♦ Polish (pl)
- ♦ Portuguese (pt\_BR)
- ♦ Russian (ru\_RU)
- ♦ Spanish (es)
- ♦ Swedish (sv)

Kablank Vibe is an open source project where additional languages can be contributed by interested members of the open source community.



```
i18n.locale.support=en,da,de,es,fr,hu_HU,it,ja,nl,pl,pt_BR,ru_RU,sv,  
zh_CN,zh_TW
```

- 5** Copy that line to the clipboard of your text editor.
- 6** Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7** Scroll to the end of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, then paste the line you copied.
- 8** Type a comma (,) at the end of the line, followed by your language code.
- 9** Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 10** Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 11** Stop and restart Vibe.

# Site Maintenance

- ◆ Chapter 20, “Managing Users,” on page 203
- ◆ Chapter 21, “Managing Groups,” on page 227
- ◆ Chapter 22, “Managing Workspaces,” on page 229
- ◆ Chapter 23, “Managing Disk Space Usage with Data Quotas and File Restrictions,” on page 237
- ◆ Chapter 24, “Managing Workspace and Folder Templates,” on page 257
- ◆ Chapter 25, “Creating and Managing Workflows,” on page 265
- ◆ Chapter 26, “Viewing and Updating the Vibe License,” on page 267
- ◆ Chapter 27, “Managing Email Configuration,” on page 269
- ◆ Chapter 28, “Managing the Lucene Index,” on page 277
- ◆ Chapter 29, “Managing Database Logs and File Archives,” on page 283
- ◆ Chapter 30, “Backing Up Vibe Data,” on page 285
- ◆ Chapter 31, “Monitoring the Vibe Site,” on page 289
- ◆ Chapter 32, “Reconfiguring the Vibe Site,” on page 309



# 20 Managing Users

As time passes on your Micro Focus Vibe site, users come and go, resulting in the need for periodic maintenance activities.

- ♦ “Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory” on page 203
- ♦ “Setting a Default Time and Locale for Non-LDAP and External Users” on page 217
- ♦ “Creating a New Local User” on page 218
- ♦ “Listing Vibe Users” on page 218
- ♦ “Modifying a User’s Profile Information” on page 219
- ♦ “Renaming a Vibe User” on page 220
- ♦ “Deleting a Vibe User” on page 221
- ♦ “Disabling Vibe User Accounts” on page 222
- ♦ “Limiting User Visibility” on page 223
- ♦ “Managing Local Users and Groups by Importing Profile Files” on page 224
- ♦ “Enabling Users to Bypass the XSS Security Filter” on page 224

## Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory

Unless you are planning a very small Micro Focus Vibe site, the most efficient way to create Vibe users is to synchronize initial user information from your network directory service (eDirectory, GroupWise, or Active Directory directory service) after you have installed the Vibe software. Over time, you can continue to synchronize user information from the LDAP directory to your Vibe site.

---

**IMPORTANT:** The following limitations apply when synchronizing user information to Vibe from an LDAP directory service:

- ♦ Vibe performs one-way synchronization from the LDAP directory to your Vibe site. If you change user information on the Vibe site, the changes are not synchronized back to your LDAP directory.
- ♦ If your LDAP directory contains a multi-value attribute, Vibe recognizes only one of the values. For example, if your LDAP directory contains multiple email addresses for a given user, only one of the email address is synchronized to Vibe.
- ♦ Users that are imported to Vibe via LDAP are always authenticated to Vibe via the LDAP source. If the LDAP source is unavailable for any reason, the LDAP-imported users cannot log in to Vibe.

For information about known issues with LDAP synchronization in Vibe, see “LDAP” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Release Notes*.

---

Table 20-1 shows user synchronization rates based on samples from test labs at Micro Focus. Results may vary depending on hardware, LDAP server, database, and network topology.

**Table 20-1** LDAP Synchronization Performance Rate Samples

| Number of Users Synchronized | Time Required to Complete Synchronization |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1,000                        | 20 seconds                                |
| 2,500                        | 44 seconds                                |
| 10,000                       | 2 minutes                                 |
| 20,000                       | 5 minutes                                 |
| 50,000                       | 13 minutes                                |

To synchronize users and groups from LDAP:

- 1 Log in to Vibe as the Vibe administrator.
  - 1a Launch a web browser.
  - 1b Specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://vibe_hostname:8080  
https://vibe_hostname:8443
```

Replace *vibe\_hostname* with the host name or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

Depending on how you have configured your Vibe system, you might not be required to enter the port number in the URL. If you are using NetIQ Access Manager, the Vibe login screen is not used.

- 2 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **LDAP**.
  - ◆ [“Configuring an LDAP Connection” on page 204](#)
  - ◆ [“Configuring LDAP Synchronization” on page 211](#)
  - ◆ [“Restricting Local User Accounts from Logging In” on page 213](#)
  - ◆ [“Synchronizing Additional LDAP Attributes” on page 214](#)
  - ◆ [“Allowing Users to Log In When the LDAP Server is Down” on page 215](#)
  - ◆ [“Previewing and Running the LDAP Synchronization” on page 216](#)
  - ◆ [“Viewing Synchronization Results” on page 217](#)
  - ◆ [“Deleting an LDAP Configuration” on page 217](#)

## Configuring an LDAP Connection

You can configure one or more LDAP connections to your directory.

You should never configure multiple LDAP connections to point to the same location on the same LDAP directory. If you need a failover solution, you should use a load balancer.

To configure an LDAP connection:

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **LDAP Servers** tab.
- 2 To create a new LDAP connection, click **Add**.

or

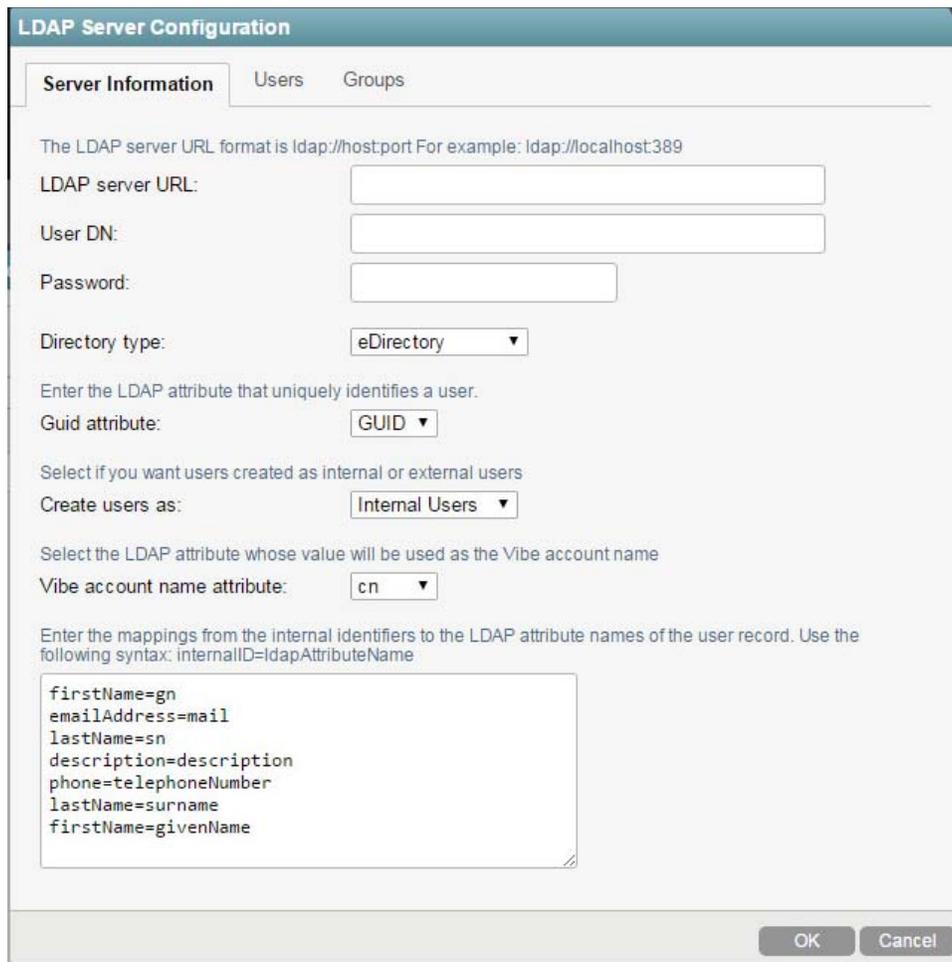
To modify an existing LDAP connection, click the URL of the connection in the **Server URL** column of the provided table.

- 3 On the LDAP Server Configuration dialog box, specify the information on each tab, as described in the following sections:
  - ♦ “Server Information” on page 205
  - ♦ “Users” on page 208
  - ♦ “Groups” on page 209

## Server Information

- 1 On the **LDAP Servers** tab, click Add.

The LDAP Server Configuration dialog box is displayed.



The screenshot shows the "LDAP Server Configuration" dialog box with the "Server Information" tab selected. The dialog has three tabs: "Server Information", "Users", and "Groups". Below the tabs, there is a text box with the instruction: "The LDAP server URL format is ldap://host:port For example: ldap://localhost:389". Below this are three input fields for "LDAP server URL:", "User DN:", and "Password:". There are three dropdown menus: "Directory type:" (set to "eDirectory"), "Guid attribute:" (set to "GUID"), and "Create users as:" (set to "Internal Users"). Below these is another dropdown menu: "Vibe account name attribute:" (set to "cn"). At the bottom, there is a text area with the instruction: "Enter the mappings from the internal identifiers to the LDAP attribute names of the user record. Use the following syntax: internalID=ldapAttributeName". The text area contains the following mappings: "firstName=gn", "emailAddress=mail", "lastName=sn", "description=description", "phone=telephoneNumber", "lastName=surname", and "firstName=givenName". At the bottom right of the dialog are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

- 2 Specify the following information on the **Server Information** tab:

---

**IMPORTANT:** When modifying an existing LDAP connection, do not modify the LDAP server URL. Doing so can lead to synchronized users being disabled or deleted.

---

**LDAP Server URL:** In order to synchronize initial user information, Vibe needs to access an LDAP server where your directory service is running. You need to provide the host name of the server, using a URL with the following format:

```
ldap://hostname
```

If the LDAP server requires a secure SSL connection, use the following format:

```
ldaps://hostname
```

If the LDAP server is configured with a default port number (389 for non-secure connections or 636 for secure SSL connections), you do not need to include the port number in the URL. If the LDAP server uses a different port number, use the following format for the LDAP URL:

```
ldap://hostname:port_number  
ldaps://hostname:port_number
```

If the LDAP server requires a secure SSL connection, additional setup is required. You must complete the steps in [“Securing LDAP Synchronization” on page 330](#) to import the root certificate for your LDAP directory into the Java keystore on the Vibe server before you configure Vibe for LDAP synchronization.

**User DN (proxy user for synchronizing users and groups):** Vibe needs the user name and password of a user on the LDAP server who has sufficient rights to access the user information stored there:

---

| Directory Service | Required Rights                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| eDirectory        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ [All Attribute Rights] - Compare &amp; Read</li><li>◆ [Entry Rights] - Browse (on the container containing the users that need to be imported into Vibe)</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Active Directory  | <p>Any authenticated user can be used as the proxy user as long as there are no read restrictions in place on the Organizational Unit (OU) that contains the users</p> <p>Required rights if OU read restrictions are in place:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ Read (on the Organizational Unit containing the users that need to be imported into Vibe)</li></ul> <p>Ensure that <b>This object &amp; all descendant objects</b> is selected in the <b>Security</b> tab under the advanced options.</p> |
| GroupWise         | GroupWise requires an Admin App user for this. See <a href="#">“Creating an Admin App in GroupWise”</a> in the <i>GroupWise Mobility Service 2014 R2 Administration Guide</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

---

You need to provide the fully qualified, comma-delimited user name, along with its context in your LDAP directory tree, in the format expected by your directory service.

---

| Directory Service | Format for the User Name                                            |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| eDirectory        | <code>cn=username,ou=organizational_unit,o=organization</code>      |
| Active Directory  | <code>cn=username,ou=organizational_unit,dc=domain_component</code> |
| GroupWise         | <code>cn=admin_app_user,o=system_name</code>                        |

---

**Password:** Password for the User DN.

**Directory Type:** The directory type that you are connecting to. Select **eDirectory**, **Active Directory**, or **GroupWise**.

**GUID attribute:** Depending on the directory type that you chose, this field is populated with the name of the LDAP attribute that uniquely identifies a user or group. For eDirectory, this value is `GUID`. For Active Directory, this value is `objectGUID`. For GroupWise, this value is `entryUUID`. This attribute always has a unique value that does not change when you rename or move a user in the LDAP directory. It ensures that Vibe modifies the existing user instead of creating a new user when the user is renamed or moved in the LDAP directory.

If this attribute is not set and you rename or move a user in the LDAP directory, Vibe assumes that the new name (or the new location of the same name) represents a new user, not a modified user, and creates a new Vibe user.

For example, suppose you have a Vibe user named William Jones. If William changes his name to Bill, and you make that change in the LDAP directory, Vibe creates a new user named Bill Jones.

If you want to map users to a different attribute, select **Other** in the drop-down list, specify the name of the LDAP attribute, then click **OK**. Before you do this, ensure that the attribute that you use is a binary attribute. For example, the `cn` attribute cannot be used because it is not a binary attribute.

**Create Users As:** Specify whether you want Vibe to treat the users as Internal or External. If you choose **External**, then the **Vibe Account Name** attribute will change from `cn` to `mail`. All external users use their email address as their login.

**Vibe account name attribute:** The attribute you choose here depends on the directory type you selected in the **Directory type** drop-down list. If you selected **eDirectory** in the **Directory type** drop-down list, you see `cn` and **Other** as options for this attribute. If you selected **GroupWise** in the **Directory type** drop-down list, you see only `cn` as an option for this attribute. If you selected **Active Directory** or **Other** in the **Directory type** drop-down list, you see `sAMAccountName`, `cn`, and **Other** as options for this attribute. If you select **Other** as the value for this attribute, you are prompted to enter the name of the LDAP attribute. The value of the attribute that you enter is used for the Vibe account name.

The Vibe account name attribute has two purposes:

- ◆ Used as the Vibe user name when the user is first provisioned from LDAP. The value of this attribute must be unique.
- ◆ During Vibe login, Vibe uses this attribute to locate the user in the LDAP directory and then tries to authenticate as that user.

LDAP directories differ in the LDAP attribute used to identify a User object. Both eDirectory and Active Directory might use the `cn` (common name) attribute. A more sure alternative for Active Directory is to use the `sAMAccountName` attribute. Other LDAP directories might use the `uid` (unique ID) attribute, depending on the structure and configuration of the directory tree.

You might need to consult with your directory administrator in order to determine which attribute is best to use. In some cases where not all users are imported successfully, you might need to set up two LDAP sources pointing to the same LDAP server and have each source use a different value for the **LDAP Attribute Used for Vibe Name**. For example, set up one LDAP source and use `cn` as the **Vibe account name attribute**. Then set up a separate source to the same LDAP server and use `sAMAccountName` as the **Vibe account name attribute**.

In addition to the attributes already mentioned in this section, other LDAP attributes can be used for the **Vibe account name attribute**, as long as the attribute is unique for each User object. For example, the `mail` LDAP attribute on User objects could be used to enable Vibe users to log in to the Vibe site by using their email addresses.

---

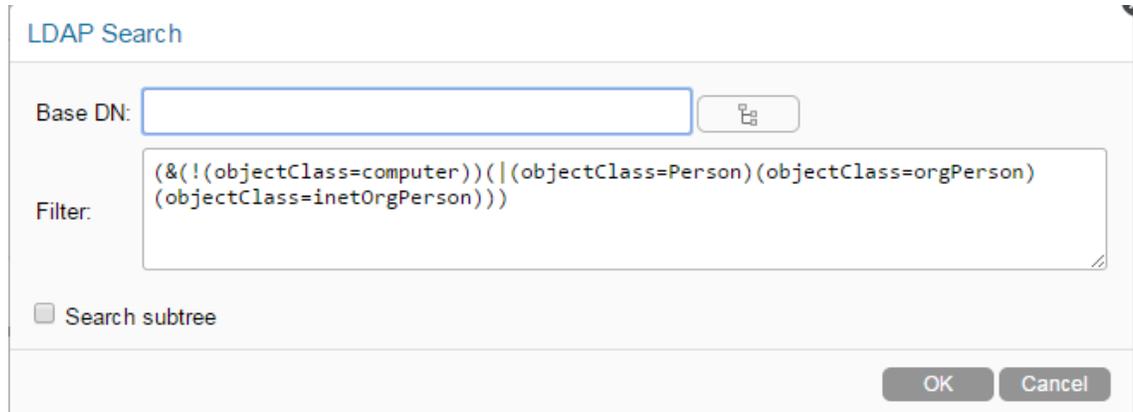
**NOTE:** Because the login name becomes part of the user's workspace URL, the at sign (@) in the email address is replaced with an underscore (\_) in the workspace URL because @ is not a valid character in a URL.

---

- 3 Continue with "Users" on page 208.

## Users

- 1 On the LDAP Server Configuration page, click the **Users** tab, then click **Add**.  
The LDAP Search dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Specify the following information in the LDAP search dialog box:

**Base DN:** Vibe can find and synchronize initial user information from User objects located in one or more containers in the LDAP directory tree. A container under which User objects are located is called a base DN (distinguished name). The format you use to specify a base DN depends on your directory service.

---

| Directory Service | Format for the User Container                     |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| eDirectory        | <i>ou=organizational_unit,o=organization</i>      |
| Active Directory  | <i>ou=organizational_unit,dc=domain_component</i> |
| GroupWise         | <i>cn=admin_app_user,o=system_name</i>            |

---

Container names cannot exceed 128 characters. If the container name exceeds 128 characters, users are not provisioned.

---

**TIP:** You can use the **Browse** icon  next to the **Base DN** field to browse the LDAP directory for the base DN that you want to use.

---

**Filter:** If you are using GroupWise, accept the default as is.

To identify potential Vibe users, Vibe by default filters on the following LDAP directory object attributes:

- ◆ Person
- ◆ orgPerson
- ◆ inetOrgPerson

You can add attributes to the user or group filter list if necessary. You can use the following operators in the filter:

- ◆ | OR (the default)
- ◆ & AND
- ◆ ! NOT

You might find it convenient to create a group that consists of all the users that you want to set up in Vibe, regardless of where they are located in your LDAP directory. After you create the group, you can use the following filter to search for User objects that have the specified group membership attribute:

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you create a filter to search for a specific group to find users, users that are located in any sub-groups to that group are not synchronized.

When synchronizing against Active Directory, you can create a filter that synchronizes users in sub-groups by using the following rule object identifier (OID):

```
<attribute name>:<matching rule OID>:=<value>
```

Be sure to include the parentheses in your filter.

---

| Directory Service | Filter to search for User objects                                                  |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| eDirectory        | <code>(groupMembership=cn=group_name,ou=organizational_unit,o=organization)</code> |
| Active Directory  | <code>(memberOf=cn=group_name,ou=organizational_unit,dc=domain_component)</code>   |
| GroupWise         | Use the default.                                                                   |

**Search subtree:** Select whether you want Vibe to search for users in containers underneath the base DN (that is, in subtrees).

- 3 Click **OK**.
- 4 Continue with [“Groups” on page 209](#).

## Groups

- 1 On the LDAP Server Configuration page, click the **Groups** tab, then click **Add**. The LDAP Search dialog box is displayed.

LDAP Search

Base DN:

Filter: `(|(objectClass=group)(objectClass=groupOfNames)(objectClass=groupOfUniqueNames))`

Search subtree

OK Cancel

2 Specify the following information on the LDAP Search dialog box:

**Base DN:** Vibe can find and synchronize initial user information from group objects located in one or more containers in the LDAP directory tree. A container under which User objects are located is called a base DN (distinguished name). The format you use to specify a base DN depends on your directory service.

---

| Directory Service | Format for the Group Container                    |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| eDirectory        | <i>ou=organizational_unit,o=organization</i>      |
| Active Directory  | <i>ou=organizational_unit,dc=domain_component</i> |
| GroupWise         | <i>cn=admin_app_user,o=system_name</i>            |

---

Container names cannot exceed 128 characters. If the container name exceeds 128 characters, users are not provisioned.

---

**TIP:** You can use the **Browse** icon  next to the **Base DN** field to browse the LDAP directory for the base DN that you want to use.

---

**Filter:** For GroupWise, use the default.

To import groups based on information in your LDAP directory, Vibe filters on the following LDAP directory object attributes:

- ◆ group
- ◆ groupOfNames
- ◆ groupOfUniqueNames

You can add attributes to the group filter list if necessary. You can use the following operators in the filter:

- ◆ | OR (the default)
- ◆ & AND
- ◆ ! NOT

---

**IMPORTANT:** Be sure to include the parentheses in your filter.

---

**TIP:** For information about how to import GroupWise distribution lists to be used in Vibe, see the following Cool Solutions article: “Using GroupWise Distribution Lists in Novell Vibe” (<https://www.novell.com/communities/cool solutions/using-groupwise-distribution-lists-novell-vibe/>)

---

---

| Directory Service | Filter to search for Group objects                                           |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| eDirectory        | <i>(groupMembership=cn=group_name,ou=organizational_unit,o=organization)</i> |
| Active Directory  | <i>(memberOf=cn=group_name,ou=organizational_unit,dc=domain_component)</i>   |
| GroupWise         | Use the default.                                                             |

---

**Search subtree:** Select whether you want Vibe to search for groups in containers beneath the base DN (that is, in subtrees).

- 3 Click **OK**, then click **OK** again to save the LDAP server configuration.
- 4 Continue with [“Configuring LDAP Synchronization” on page 211](#).

## Configuring LDAP Synchronization

When you configure LDAP synchronization, you configure user synchronization options, groups synchronization options, and the synchronization schedule.

---

**NOTE:** Because the synchronization options apply to all LDAP configurations within the same zone, you cannot have customized synchronization settings for each LDAP configuration. However, the Micro Focus Vibe site can have multiple zones. For more information about zones, see [Chapter 18, “Setting Up Zones \(Virtual Vibe Sites\),” on page 193](#).

---

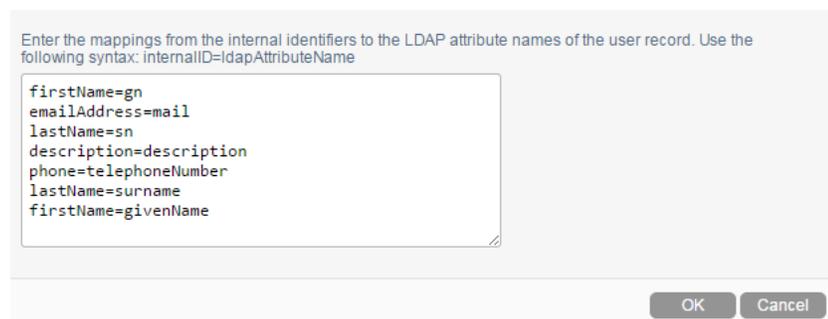
- ♦ [“Configuring User Synchronization Options” on page 211](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring Group Synchronization Options” on page 212](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring the Synchronization Schedule” on page 213](#)

## Configuring User Synchronization Options

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **User Settings** tab.
- 2 Specify the following information for enabling and configuring user synchronization from your LDAP directory to your Vibe site:

**Register LDAP user profiles automatically:** Select this option to automatically add LDAP users to the Vibe site. However, workspaces are not created until users log in to the Vibe site for the first time.

**Synchronize user profiles:** Select this option to synchronize user information whenever the LDAP directory information changes after initial Vibe site setup. The attributes that are synchronized are the attributes that are found in the map box on the **Server Information** tab on the LDAP Server Configuration page.



Enter the mappings from the internal identifiers to the LDAP attribute names of the user record. Use the following syntax: internalID=ldapAttributeName

```
firstName=gn
emailAddress=mail
lastName=sn
description=description
phone=telephoneNumber
lastName=surname
firstName=givenName
```

OK Cancel

By default, Vibe synchronizes the following attributes from the LDAP directory:

- ♦ First name
- ♦ Last name
- ♦ Phone number
- ♦ Email address
- ♦ Description

For information about how to add additional attributes to be automatically synchronized, see [“Synchronizing Additional LDAP Attributes” on page 214](#).

**For user accounts provisioned from LDAP that are no longer in LDAP:** Because deleting user accounts cannot be undone, Micro Focus recommends that you leave **Disable account** selected.

For more information about disabled users in Vibe, see [“Disabling Vibe User Accounts” on page 222](#).

Select **Delete account** only if you are certain that you want to delete users that exist on the Vibe site but do not exist in your LDAP directory. If you do decide to delete user accounts, you can select the option **Also delete associated user workspaces and content** to remove obsolete information along with the user accounts.

---

**IMPORTANT:** A deleted user cannot be undeleted; deleting a user is permanent and is not reversible.

---

If you are sure that you want to automatically delete users that are not in LDAP, this option is designed to be used under the following conditions:

- ◆ You have deleted users from your LDAP directory and you want the LDAP synchronization process to also delete them from Vibe.
- ◆ In addition to the users synchronized from LDAP, you create some Vibe users manually, as described in [“Creating a New Local User” on page 218](#), and you want the LDAP synchronization process to delete the manually created users.
- ◆ In addition to the users synchronized from LDAP, you allow Guest users to self-register, as described in [“Allowing Guest Access to Your Vibe Site” on page 104](#), and you want the LDAP synchronization process to delete the self-registered users.

**Use the following time zone when creating new users:** Select this option to set the time zone for user accounts that are synchronized from the LDAP directory into your Vibe site. The time zone list is grouped first by continent or region, optionally by country or state, and lastly by city.

Common selections for United States time zones:

---

| Time Zone     | Continent/City      |
|---------------|---------------------|
| Pacific Time  | America/Los Angeles |
| Mountain Time | America/Denver      |
| Central Time  | America/Chicago     |
| Eastern Time  | America/New York    |

---

**Use the following locale when creating new users:** Select this option to set the locale for user accounts that are synchronized from the LDAP directory into your Vibe site. The locale list is sorted alphabetically by language.

- 3 Continue with [“Configuring Group Synchronization Options” on page 212](#).

## Configuring Group Synchronization Options

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **Group Settings** tab.
- 2 Specify the following information for enabling and configuring user and group synchronization from your LDAP directory to your Vibe site:

**Register LDAP group profiles automatically:** Select this option to automatically add LDAP groups to the Vibe site.

**Synchronize group profiles:** Select this option to synchronize group information, such as the group description, to the Vibe site whenever this information changes in LDAP.

**Synchronize group membership:** Select this option so that the Vibe group includes the same users (and possibly groups) as the group in your LDAP directory. If you do not select this option, and you make changes to group membership in the LDAP directory, the changes are not reflected on your Vibe site.

If users have rights to files on your OES or Windows file systems through group membership, you must select this option to synchronize group membership to Vibe. If you do not synchronize group membership, users who have access rights to files through membership in a group might not have the appropriate access rights in Vibe.

**Delete groups that were provisioned in LDAP but are no longer in LDAP:** Select this option to delete groups that exist on the Vibe site but do not exist in your LDAP directory. Use this option under the following conditions:

- ◆ You have deleted groups from your LDAP directory and you want the LDAP synchronization process to delete them from Vibe as well.
  - ◆ In addition to the groups synchronized from LDAP, you create some Vibe groups manually, as described in [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#), and you want the LDAP synchronization process to delete the manually created groups.
- 3 Continue with [“Configuring the Synchronization Schedule” on page 213](#).

## Configuring the Synchronization Schedule

This section describes how to set a schedule for the LDAP synchronization.

When planning the schedule, take into account how often your LDAP directory user (and, optionally, group) information changes and the server resources required to perform the synchronization for the number of users (and, optionally, groups) that you have.

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **Synchronization Schedule** tab.
- 2 Select **Enable schedule** to enable a schedule for the LDAP synchronization to occur.
- 3 Select whether to run the LDAP synchronization every day, or select specific days of the week when you want it run (for example, on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday).  
You can choose to have it run once a day at a specified time (for example, at 2:00 a.m.), or you can set a time interval, so that it is run multiple times each day (for example, every four hours). The smallest time interval you can set is .25 hours (every 15 minutes).
- 4 (Conditional) If you want to restrict local users from logging in to the Vibe site, continue with [“Restricting Local User Accounts from Logging In” on page 213](#).
- 5 Continue with [“Previewing and Running the LDAP Synchronization” on page 216](#).

## Restricting Local User Accounts from Logging In

By default, Vibe allows locally created users to log in the Vibe site. This section describes how to configure Vibe to allow only users that are synchronized via LDAP to log in.

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **Local User Accounts** tab.
- 2 Leave **Allow log in for local user accounts (i.e. user accounts not in LDAP)** to allow users who you have created locally to log in to the Vibe site.  
For more information about creating users, see [“Creating a New Local User” on page 218](#).
- 3 Continue with [“Previewing and Running the LDAP Synchronization” on page 216](#).

## Synchronizing Additional LDAP Attributes

By default, Vibe synchronizes the following attributes from the LDAP directory:

- ♦ First name
- ♦ Last name
- ♦ Phone number
- ♦ Email address
- ♦ Description

This information displays on each user's personal user profile.

To synchronize additional LDAP attributes, complete the following sections:

- ♦ [“Identifying or Creating a Vibe Field for the LDAP Attribute” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [“Copying the Data Name of the Vibe Field” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [“Mapping the Vibe Field to the LDAP Attribute” on page 215](#)

### Identifying or Creating a Vibe Field for the LDAP Attribute

Before you can synchronize Vibe user profiles with additional attributes from your LDAP directory, you first need to ensure that there is a corresponding Vibe field for the LDAP attribute that you want to synchronize.

To view the existing fields in the user profile:

- 1 Navigate to a user profile and see if there is an existing field that corresponds to the LDAP attribute that you want to synchronize.
- 2 If the appropriate field already exists, continue with [“Copying the Data Name of the Vibe Field” on page 214](#).

If the appropriate field doesn't already exist, you must create it, as described in [“Customizing the Default User Profile View” on page 50](#).

### Copying the Data Name of the Vibe Field

Each field in Vibe has an internal data name, which is added when the field is created. When you create a field by using the Form and View Designers tool, Vibe requires that you enter a data name. This name is how Vibe identifies the field.

To map an LDAP attribute to a Vibe field, you must find the data name for the field.

The following procedure shows how to find the data name for a particular field in the user profile:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click the **Administrator** link in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **System** section, click **Form/View Designers**.
- 4 Expand **Profile View**, then click **User**.
- 5 Expand **Profile Form Definition**, expand **Form**, then locate the Vibe field that you want to synchronize with an LDAP attribute.

- 6 Click the name of the field, then click **Modify** in the dialog box on the right side of the page.
- 7 Copy the text in the **Data Name** field, then continue with [“Mapping the Vibe Field to the LDAP Attribute” on page 215.](#)

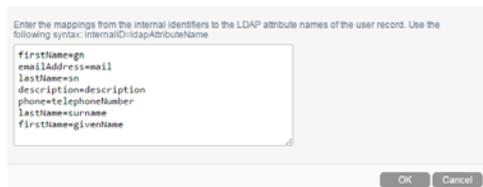
## Mapping the Vibe Field to the LDAP Attribute

After you have copied the data name of the Vibe field that you want to synchronize with an LDAP attribute as described in [“Copying the Data Name of the Vibe Field” on page 214](#), you can map the Vibe field to the LDAP attribute that you want to synchronize.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click the **Administrator** link in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
 

The Administration page is displayed.
- 3 In the **System** section, click **Configure LDAP**.
 

The map box in the **Users** section lists the LDAP attributes that are currently being synchronized.



The items in the list have the following format:

*vibe\_field\_name=ldap\_attribute\_name*

- 4 Add a new line to the list, specifying the Vibe field name to the left of the equal sign (=) and the LDAP attribute name to the right of the equal sign.
 

The *vibe\_field\_name* is the data name that you copied in [“Copying the Data Name of the Vibe Field” on page 214](#), and *ldap\_attribute\_name* is the name of the LDAP attribute in your LDAP directory.
- 5 Repeat Step 4 for each LDAP attribute that you want to add to the user profile.
- 6 Select **Run Immediately**, then click **Apply**.
 

The status box shows the LDAP attribute information being added to Vibe users.

## Allowing Users to Log In When the LDAP Server is Down

You can configure the Vibe server to allow users who are being synchronized through LDAP to still have access to the Vibe server when the LDAP server is down.

- 1 Change to the following directory:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config`

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.

- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for the following line:  

```
portal.password.auto.synchronize=false
```
- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the `portal.password.auto.synchronize=false` line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Change `false` to `true`, so that the line now reads `portal.password.auto.synchronize=true`.
- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe to enable users to log in to the Vibe site when the LDAP server is down.

## Previewing and Running the LDAP Synchronization

Before you run the LDAP synchronization, it is a good idea to preview the synchronization so that you are aware what changes will occur when you run the live synchronization.

- ♦ [“Previewing LDAP Synchronization” on page 216](#)
- ♦ [“Running the LDAP Synchronization” on page 216](#)

### Previewing LDAP Synchronization

After you have configured the LDAP connection, you can see a preview of what the synchronization results will be. This allows you to see beforehand the users and groups that will be added or deleted, as well as the users that will be disabled, before you run the actual synchronization.

To preview the LDAP synchronization:

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **LDAP Servers** tab, then click **Preview sync**.  
Users and groups that will be modified by running the LDAP sync are shown, along with information about how they will be modified (whether they will be added, modified, deleted, or disabled).
- 2 (Optional) Specify a user or group in the **Filter List** field to filter the list of users and groups to be synchronized.  
or  
Click the drop-down arrow next to the **Filter List** field, then select the type of users or groups that you want to display, then click **OK**. (For example, select to display added users, modified users, modified groups, and so forth.)
- 3 After you review the results of the synchronization, click **Close**, then continue with [“Running the LDAP Synchronization” on page 216](#).

### Running the LDAP Synchronization

After you have run the preview of the LDAP synchronization (as described in [“Running the LDAP Synchronization” on page 216](#)), you are ready to run the live synchronization.

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **LDAP Servers** tab, then click **Sync All**.

Users and groups that have been modified by running the LDAP sync are shown, along with information about how they have been modified (whether they were added, modified, deleted, or disabled).

- 2 (Optional) Specify a user or group in the **Filter List** field to filter the list of users and groups to be synchronized.

or

Click the drop-down arrow next to the Filter List field, then select the type of users or groups that you want to display. (For example, select to display added users, modified users, modified groups, and so forth.)

- 3 Click **Close**.

## Viewing Synchronization Results

You can view the synchronization results of the most recent LDAP synchronization for the current browser session. If you perform a synchronization, log out of Vibe, and then log in again, you cannot view the results of the LDAP synchronization for your previous session.

To view the results for a previous synchronization:

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **LDAP Servers** tab.
- 2 Click **Show sync results**.

## Deleting an LDAP Configuration

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you delete an LDAP configuration and you have selected the option to delete user accounts that are provisioned from LDAP that are no longer in LDAP, all users that were synchronized to the Vibe site through that LDAP configuration are deleted from the Vibe site. (For more information about the configuration option concerning user accounts provisioned from LDAP, see [“Configuring User Synchronization Options” on page 211.](#))

---

- 1 On the LDAP Configuration page, click the **LDAP Servers** tab.
- 2 Select the LDAP configuration that you want to delete, then click **Delete**.

## Setting a Default Time and Locale for Non-LDAP and External Users

**Path to Configuration Dialog:** [Vibe Administration Console](#) > [Management](#) > [Default User Settings](#)

By default, the locale setting for newly created local users is English (US) and the time zone is set to Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

This dialog lets you change the defaults for newly created local users.

You specify the default locale and time zone for LDAP users when you configure LDAP synchronization.

# Creating a New Local User

You can manually create users on the Vibe site, rather than synchronizing user information from an LDAP directory. Users created in this way are local users, and are not added to your LDAP directory. Local users are not authenticated through NetIQ Access Manager when Access Manager is fronting the Vibe system.

You can create local users from the Administration Console:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, and then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Users**.
- 4 Click **New**.  
The User page is displayed.
- 5 Provide the user's information in the User page, then click **OK**.

## Listing Vibe Users

On the Micro Focus Vibe site, you can view a comprehensive list of all the Vibe users.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Users**.  
All users in the Vibe site are displayed.

You can use this page in the following ways:

- ♦ [“Filtering Users” on page 218](#)
- ♦ [“Navigating to a User’s Individual Workspace” on page 219](#)
- ♦ [“Adding Local Users” on page 219](#)

## Filtering Users

You can filter the user list in the following ways: by specifying a name in the **Filter List** field in the upper-right corner.

- ♦ Specify a name in the **Filter List** field in the upper-right corner, then press Enter.
- ♦ Click the drop-down arrow next to the **Filter List** field, then select from the following options (by default, all options are selected):
  - ♦ **Show Internal Users:** Shows internal Vibe users.
  - ♦ **Show External Users:** Shows external Vibe users.
  - ♦ **Show Disabled Users:** Shows users that have been disabled.
  - ♦ **Show Enabled Users:** Shows users that are enabled.
  - ♦ **Show Administrators:** Shows users that have Administrative rights.

- ♦ **Show Users That Are Not Administrators:** Shows users that do not have Administrative rights.

## Navigating to a User's Individual Workspace

You can use the user list to navigate to a user's individual workspace.

- 1 In the user list, in the **Full Name** column, click the name of the user whose workspace you want to navigate to, then click **Workspace**.

If you have deleted a user workspace but have not yet purged the workspace, the user workspace is still displayed in the user list, but you are unable to navigate to the workspace.

If you want the user workspace to be removed from the user list, you must purge the workspace, as described in “[Making Disk Space Available by Deleting Items from the Trash](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

If you want to restore the workspace, see “[Restoring Items from the Trash](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Adding Local Users

A local user is a Vibe user who is not added to your LDAP directory. You can use the Users page to add new local users to your Vibe site.

For information about how to add local users, see “[Creating a New Local User](#)” on page 218.

## Modifying a User's Profile Information

You can modify the following information in a user's profile directly from Vibe, unless the information is being synchronized from an external directory via LDAP:

- ♦ Password
- ♦ Name
- ♦ Email addresses
- ♦ Time zone
- ♦ Locale
- ♦ Personal information, including job title, state, and postal code
- ♦ Contact information, including phone numbers
- ♦ Organization information, including department and manager
- ♦ Job responsibilities
- ♦ Profile picture

To modify a user's profile information:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Users**.  
All users in the Vibe site are displayed.
- 4 Click the name of the user whose profile information you want to change.

- 5 If the user has logged in to the Vibe site at least one time, click **Profile**.  
or  
If the user has never logged in to the Vibe site, click **Modify**.
- 6 Modify the user's profile information as desired, then click **OK**.

## Renaming a Vibe User

Micro Focus Vibe users are identified by name (first, middle, last) and by user ID. User names are used to identify personal workspaces. User IDs are used for logging in. You can change users' names, but not their user IDs. How you change users' name depends on how you created the user.

- ♦ [“Renaming a Vibe User from LDAP” on page 220](#)
- ♦ [“Renaming a Local Vibe User” on page 220](#)

### Renaming a Vibe User from LDAP

If you are synchronizing user information from an LDAP directory, as described in [“Adding Vibe Users from Your LDAP Directory”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*, you change a user's first, middle, or last name by updating it in the LDAP directory. The updated information then synchronizes to the Vibe site according to the schedule you have established for LDAP synchronization. If you change a user's first, middle, or last name by updating information on the Vibe site, the change is not synchronized back to the LDAP directory, so the two sources of user information can be out of sync.

### Renaming a Local Vibe User

If you manually create Vibe users on the Vibe site, rather than synchronizing user information from an LDAP directory, you can change users' names (first, middle, last) on the Vibe site.

When a user logs in to the Vibe site for the first time, the user's personal workspace is created. Before a user logs in, he or she does not have a personal workspace. Vibe enables site administrators to manually rename both types of users.

---

**NOTE:** Vibe does not allow you to change a user ID after the user account has been created.

---

To rename a local Vibe user:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Users**.  
All users in the Vibe site are displayed.
- 4 Click the name of the user who you want to rename.
- 5 If the user has logged in to the Vibe site at least one time, click **Profile**.  
or  
If the user has never logged in to the Vibe site, click **Modify**.
- 6 Modify the **First Name**, **Middle Name**, and **Last Name** fields as desired.
- 7 Click **OK**.

# Deleting a Vibe User

When users no longer need access to your Micro Focus Vibe site, you have two options to revoke their access to the Vibe site: disabling or deleting their Vibe user accounts.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Micro Focus recommends that you disable user accounts instead of deleting them. When you delete a user account, the account can never be re-activated. If there is the slightest possibility that the user might return to your Vibe site, disable the user account rather than deleting it. Disabled accounts do not count as a licensed user. For information on how to disable a user, see [“Disabling Vibe User Accounts” on page 222](#).

---

When you delete a user, the following user information is deleted and cannot be recovered:

- ◆ All profile information, including profile pictures
- ◆ Access controls to workspaces and folders

Entries and information that the user contributed are preserved even after the user is deleted.

How you delete a user depends on how you originally created the user.

- ◆ [“Deleting a Local User” on page 221](#)
- ◆ [“Deleting an LDAP User” on page 222](#)

## Deleting a Local User

Any user account that has been created manually (not created by the LDAP synchronization process) can be deleted as described in this section. To delete a user account that was created by the LDAP synchronization process, see [“Deleting an LDAP User” on page 222](#).

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you delete user accounts that were created by the LDAP synchronization process without following the instructions in [“Deleting an LDAP User” on page 222](#), new users with the same name are created the next time the users log in or the next time the LDAP synchronization occurs.

---

- 1 Log in to Vibe as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Users**.
- 4 Select the users whose accounts you want to delete, then click **Delete**.

The Delete Users dialog box is displayed.

- 5 Select **Move user workspaces to trash** if you want the workspaces to be recoverable.

or

Select **Delete user workspaces** to permanently delete the workspaces. You then have an additional option to **Delete user object**.

The first option deletes only the user’s personal workspace. The user account remains on the system, and the user can still log in, create a new workspace, and so on.

The second option also removes the user account from the system, so that the user no longer exists on the system, can’t log in, and so on.

- 6 Click **OK**.

## Deleting an LDAP User

User accounts can be synchronized to the Vibe site with an LDAP directory. While you can delete Vibe user accounts, Micro Focus recommends that you disable them, as described in [“Disabling Vibe User Accounts” on page 222](#).

If you decide to delete Vibe user accounts, it is safer to manually delete them rather than deleting them through the LDAP synchronization process.

- ♦ [“Manually Deleting User Accounts That Are Being Synchronized through LDAP” on page 222](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring LDAP to Automatically Delete User Accounts” on page 222](#)

## Manually Deleting User Accounts That Are Being Synchronized through LDAP

Following is the preferred method for deleting user accounts from the Vibe site that are being synchronized from an LDAP directory:

- 1 In your LDAP directory, modify the User objects that you want to delete from the Vibe site so that the User objects no longer match the LDAP synchronization criteria that you previously set.  
For information about setting LDAP synchronization criteria, see [“Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory” on page 203](#).
- 2 In Vibe, manually delete the user accounts, as described in [“Deleting a Local User” on page 221](#).  
Because user accounts that are deleted cannot be recovered, you should make sure you know exactly which users you are deleting, and the only way to be sure is by manually deleting them.

## Configuring LDAP to Automatically Delete User Accounts

---

**IMPORTANT:** While it is possible to configure LDAP synchronization to automatically delete Vibe users and workspaces, this should be avoided because it might result in unwanted deletion of users. For example, if the LDAP context is entered incorrectly and none of the users match the incorrect LDAP context, all of the users would be permanently deleted.

For more information about how to configure the LDAP synchronization to automatically delete Vibe users and workspaces, see [“Configuring LDAP Synchronization” on page 211](#).

---

## Disabling Vibe User Accounts

Micro Focus recommends that you disable user accounts instead of deleting them. When you delete a user account, the account can never be re-activated. If there is the slightest possibility that the user might return to your Vibe site, disable the user account rather than delete it. Disabled accounts do not count as a licensed user.

This section describes how to disable local user accounts as well as accounts that are being synchronized with an LDAP directory.

To disable user accounts:

- 1 Log in to Vibe as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Users**.
- 4 Select the users whose accounts you want to disable, then click **More > Disable User Account**.  
The user accounts are disabled

To re-enable user accounts:

- 1 Log in to Vibe as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Users**.
- 4 Select the users whose accounts you want to re-enable, then click **More > Enable User Account**.  
The user accounts are enabled

## Limiting User Visibility

**Path to Configuration Page:** Vibe Administration Console > **Management > Limit User Visibility**

By default, each Vibe user can see all other Vibe users on the site.

Vibe lets you restrict the users that appear in Vibe dialogs and so on, to only those within groups to which a user belongs.

For additional information and instructions on limiting user visibility, see [“Restricting Groups of Users from Seeing One Another” on page 103](#).

- ♦ [“Creating User Visibility Limitations” on page 223](#)

## Creating User Visibility Limitations

For administrative efficiency and as a best practice, user-visibility limitations are usually applied to one or more groups.

Most organization choose to limit visibility at the group level and then manage exceptions by creating overrides for individual users. However, limitations can be applied to individual users if needed.

- 1 Identify the groups whose users require and/or will benefit from having user-visibility limitations set.
- 2 Identify group users who will need to be able to collaborate and share on a system-wide basis and will therefore need overrides.
- 3 Log in as an administrator, open the Vibe Administration Console > **Management > Limit User Visibility**.
- 4 Use the **Add Limitation** button to add user-visibility limitations to the groups (or users) identified.
- 5 Use the **Add Override** as needed.
- 6 If you need to remove a limitation, select the line to be removed and use the **Remove Visibility Settings** button to remove the setting from the list.

# Managing Local Users and Groups by Importing Profile Files

You can manage local users and groups by importing profile files that contain user or group information in XML format. This is a good way to simultaneously perform multiple actions when you are not using LDAP.

You can perform the following actions:

- ◆ Create or modify users
- ◆ Delete users
- ◆ Create or modify groups

To manage local users and groups by importing profile files:

- 1 Log in to Vibe as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Users**.
- 4 Click the **Import Profiles** tab.
- 5 Click **Choose File**, then navigate to and select the file that contains user or group profile information in XML format.

Ensure that the format of your file matches the format that is shown in the provided sample file. To view the provided sample file, click **View a Sample File** in the **Import Files** tab.

- 6 Click **OK**.

## Enabling Users to Bypass the XSS Security Filter

Cross-site scripting (XSS) is a client-side computer attack that is aimed at web applications. Because XSS attacks can pose a major security threat, Micro Focus Vibe contains a built-in security filter that protects against XSS vulnerabilities. This security filter is enabled by default.

The XSS security filter protects the Vibe site from XSS in two key areas:

- ◆ Text and HTML fields in entries and folders
- ◆ Uploaded HTML files

Specific users might need to add some of the content described in [“Understanding What Content Is Not Permitted” on page 353](#). If you trust these users, you can enable them to bypass the XSS security filter by adding JavaScript and other restricted content.

---

**IMPORTANT:** We do not recommend that you turn off the XSS security filter for the entire site. For more information about keeping your Vibe site secure from XSS, see [“Securing the Vibe Site against XSS” on page 353](#).

---

Enabling a group to bypass the XSS filter is more efficient than enabling individual users because it requires you to modify the configuration file only once, when you initially authorize the group. After the initial setup, you can easily modify group membership.

- ◆ [“Enabling Groups to Bypass the XSS Security Filter” on page 225](#)
- ◆ [“Enabling Individual Users to Bypass the XSS Security Filter” on page 225](#)



```
<zone name="kablink">
  <xssConfiguration>
    <trustedUsers>
      <user name="jchavez"/>
    </trustedUsers>
  </xssConfiguration>
</zone>
```

The `user name` value should contain the user ID for the user you want to be able to upload HTML files to the Vibe site.

If your Vibe system began as Teaming version 1, the `zone name` value is `liferay.com` instead of `kablink`.

To enable multiple users to add HTML content to the Vibe site, create a group and enable the group to add content, as described in [“Enabling Groups to Bypass the XSS Security Filter” on page 225](#). Or, you can enable multiple users on an individual basis by using multiple `<user name>` elements. For example:

```
<user name="jchavez"/>
<user name="ahall"/>
<user name="cjones"/>
```

#### 4 Stop and restart Vibe.

# 21 Managing Groups

Group creating and maintenance is an useful way to manage users throughout your Vibe site. For more information about why it is important to create groups, see [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#).

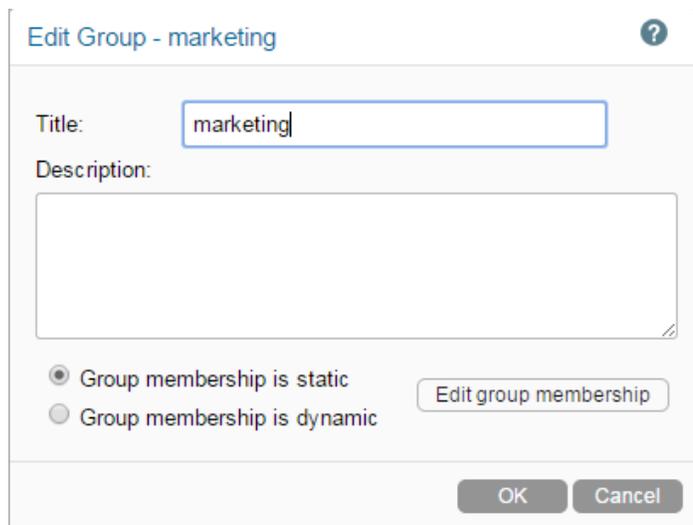
- ♦ [“Creating Groups” on page 227](#)
- ♦ [“Modifying Groups” on page 227](#)
- ♦ [“Deleting Groups” on page 228](#)

## Creating Groups

For information on how to create groups, see [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#).

## Modifying Groups

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Groups**.
- 4 Click the name of the group that you want to modify.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Group - marketing". It has a title bar with a question mark icon. The dialog contains the following elements:

- Title:** A text input field containing the word "marketing".
- Description:** A large, empty text area.
- Group membership is static:** A radio button that is selected.
- Group membership is dynamic:** A radio button that is unselected.
- Edit group membership:** A button located to the right of the radio buttons.
- OK:** A button at the bottom right.
- Cancel:** A button at the bottom right, to the left of the OK button.

- 5 Modify the title, description, and group membership, then click **OK**.

For more information about editing static and dynamic group membership, see [“Creating Groups of Users” on page 97](#).

# Deleting Groups

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Groups**.
- 4 Select the group that you want to delete, then click **Delete**.

# 22 Managing Workspaces

As an administrator for Micro Focus Vibe, you can perform management functions on all Vibe workspaces. For information on how to perform general workspace management functions, such as creating a workspace, deleting a workspace, moving a workspace, and so forth, see [“General Workspace Management”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

You can perform additional workspace management tasks as the Vibe administrator:

- ◆ [“Exporting/Importing Workspaces, Folders, and Entries”](#) on page 229
- ◆ [“Managing Workspace Disk Space Usage”](#) on page 235
- ◆ [“Modifying the Title, Description, and Branding of the Personal Workspaces Workspace”](#) on page 235

## Exporting/Importing Workspaces, Folders, and Entries

You can transfer data from one Micro Focus Vibe site to another by exporting it from the source Vibe site and importing it into the destination Vibe site. When you export data, it remains in the source Vibe site and a copy of the exported data is imported into the destination Vibe site.

By default, only the Vibe administrator can export and import workspaces, folders, and entries. For information on how to make this functionality available to all workspace and folder owners, see [“Customizing the Simple URL Prefix”](#) on page 94.

- ◆ [“Understanding the Export and Import Process”](#) on page 229
- ◆ [“Exporting Workspaces”](#) on page 232
- ◆ [“Importing Workspaces”](#) on page 232
- ◆ [“Exporting Folders”](#) on page 233
- ◆ [“Importing Folders”](#) on page 233
- ◆ [“Exporting Folder Entries”](#) on page 234
- ◆ [“Importing Folder Entries”](#) on page 234

If you want to simply move or copy data within a single Vibe site, see [“Copying a Workspace”](#) and [“Moving a Workspace”](#), [“Copying a Folder”](#) and [“Moving a Folder”](#), or [“Copying a Folder Entry”](#) and [“Moving a Folder Entry”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

## Understanding the Export and Import Process

The export process creates a `.zip` file named `export.zip` that you can save to any convenient location on disk. The `.zip` file contains all the workspaces, folders, folder entries, and attachments that you elected to export.

When you export and import a workspace, folder, or folder entry, not all types of data are preserved.

- ◆ [“Data That Is Preserved”](#) on page 230
- ◆ [“Data That Is Not Preserved”](#) on page 231

## Data That Is Preserved

- ◆ Hierarchical structure of the workspace

If you are selecting specific folders within the workspace to export, the hierarchical structure to the selected folders must be preserved. For example, if you select to export a sub-folder but not the parent folder, the parent folder is also included in the export as a blank folder in order to keep the structure.

- ◆ All folders in the workspace (unless they are specifically excluded)
- ◆ All content in exported folders
- ◆ Access control information

User and group IDs are also preserved and are matched to the same users and groups if they exist on the Vibe system where the workspace, folder, or entry is imported.

Access control settings are not preserved if the workspace, folder, or entry is inheriting its access control settings from the parent folder or workspace in the original Vibe system. When you import a workspace, folder, or entry that is inheriting its access control settings, the workspace, folder, or entry assumes the access control settings of the higher-level workspace or folder where it is being imported. For more information on access control, see [Chapter 2, “Planning and Controlling User Access to Workspaces and Folders,”](#) on page 21.

- ◆ Landing pages for workspaces or folders

For more information on landing pages, see [“Creating and Managing Landing Pages”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ◆ Entry definitions associated with any folder content

Entry definitions are custom entry forms that have been created in your folder or workspace. Entry definitions that are being used in any exported content are preserved, even if the definition is saved at a higher level in the workspace hierarchy. For more information on entry definitions, see [“Designing Custom Folder Entry Forms”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ◆ Workflows associated with any workspace content

Workflows that are being used in any exported content are preserved, even if the workflow is saved at a higher level in the workspace hierarchy.

---

**NOTE:** If your workflow contains an On Entry condition that starts a parallel workflow thread, as described in [“Adding On-Entry or On-Exit Events”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*, the parallel workflow is automatically restarted when the workflow is imported.

---

For more information on workflows, see [“Creating and Managing Workflows”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ◆ Custom forms associated with any workspace content

Custom forms that are being used in any exported content are preserved, even if the custom form is saved at a higher level in the workspace hierarchy. For more information on custom forms, see [“Designing Custom Folder Entry Forms”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ◆ Wiki links

For more information on wiki links, see [“Linking to a Folder or Folder Entry”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

- ◆ Content in Mirrored Files folders

When you export a Mirrored Files folder, the files from the mirrored folder are written in the export file. However, when the folder is imported, the resulting folder becomes a Vibe library folder where all the files are added as regular file entries that are no longer mirrored. There is no way to export a mirrored folder and import it back into Vibe as a mirrored folder.

## Data That Is Not Preserved

The following types of data are not included in the export and import processes:

- ◆ Profile information for user workspaces

When a user workspace is exported and imported, the profile information for the user is not preserved. To move user workspaces from one Vibe site to another, add users to the target Vibe server in one of the ways described in [“Adding New Users to Your Vibe Site,” on page 97](#). You can then export the folders within the workspace from the source Vibe site, then re-import the folders into the target Vibe site to the user workspace for each appropriate user.

- ◆ Accessories

For more information on accessories, see [“Managing Accessories”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

- ◆ Custom JSP files

Custom JSP files must be exported as part of an extension. (For more information on extensions, see [Chapter 15, “Adding Software Extensions to Your Vibe Site,” on page 177](#).) However, if you have a workspace that leverages custom JSP files, the workspace still retains the settings that point to the custom JSP files. Therefore, if you export a workspace or folder that is referencing custom JSP files, and the Vibe site where you import the workspace has the same custom JSP files, the imported workspace or folder points to the correct custom JSP files.

- ◆ Permalinks

Entries that are exported receive new permalinks when they are imported. However, if an entry description contains a permalink to another entry that was also imported, then the permalink is preserved.

- ◆ Activity data, such as who visited the place, edit history, and workflow history

For more information about activity data, see [“Generating Activity Reports for a Workspace”](#), [“Generating an Activity Report on a Folder”](#), and [“Generating Reports about a Folder Entry”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

- ◆ Entry ratings

For more information on entry ratings, see [“Rating a Folder Entry”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

- ◆ Entry definitions that are not associated with folder content

Entry definitions are custom entry forms that have been created in your folder or workspace. For more information on entry definitions, see [“Designing Custom Folder Entry Forms”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ◆ Workflows that are not associated with workspace content

For more information on workflows, see [“Creating and Managing Workflows”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- ◆ Email notification settings
- ◆ Default folder columns
- ◆ Global filters

## Exporting Workspaces

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Navigate to the workspace that you want to export.
- 3 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Import/Export Workspace**.  
The Export/Import page is displayed.

Export / Import

---

Export This Folder or Workspace    Import into This Folder or Workspace

---

**Select the Items to be Exported:**

Selecting an item will export that item and all of its child folders and workspaces unless this is turned off below.  
Making no selections will result in exporting everything.

Only export child folders or workspaces that are specifically checked.

 Marketing

---

OK

Close

- 4 Select **Export This Folder or Workspace**.
- 5 To export all contents of the folder or workspace, click **OK**.  
or  
To export only individual workspaces and folders, select **Only export child folders or workspaces that are specifically checked**, then expand the workspace tree and select the workspaces and folders that you want to export. Then click **OK**.

## Importing Workspaces

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Navigate to the workspace where you want the imported workspace to reside.
- 3 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Import/Export Workspace**.  
The Export/Import page is displayed.
- 4 Select **Import into This Folder or Workspace**.

## Export / Import

---

Export This Folder or Workspace  Import into This Folder or Workspace

### Select the Import File

No file chosen

- 5 Browse to and select the workspace that you want to import, then click **OK**.

## Exporting Folders

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Navigate to the folder that you want to export.
- 3 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the folder title, then click **Import/Export Folder**. The Export/Import page is displayed.

## Export / Import

---

Export This Folder or Workspace  Import into This Folder or Workspace

### Select the Items to be Exported:

Selecting an item will export that item and all of its child folders and workspaces unless this is turned off below.  
Making no selections will result in exporting everything.

Only export child folders or workspaces that are specifically checked.

 Blog

- 4 Select **Export This Folder or Workspace**.
- 5 To export all contents of the folder or workspace, click **OK**.

or

To export only individual workspaces and folders, select **Only export child folders or workspaces that are specifically checked**, then expand the workspace tree and select the workspaces and folders that you want to export. Then click **OK**.

## Importing Folders

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Navigate to the folder or workspace where you want the imported folder to reside.

- 3 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the folder or workspace title, then click **Import/Export Folder** if you are importing into a folder.

The Export/Import page is displayed.

- 4 Select **Import into This Folder or Workspace**.

Export / Import

---

Export This Folder or Workspace  Import into This Folder or Workspace

---

Select the Import File

No file chosen

---

- 5 Browse to and select the folder that you want to import, then click **OK**.

## Exporting Folder Entries

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Navigate to and select the folder entry that you want to export.
- 3 In the entry footer, click **Export this entry**.

You can now download the entry to your computer's file system.

## Importing Folder Entries

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Navigate to the folder where you want the imported folder entry to reside.
- 3 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the folder title, then click **Import/Export Folder**.  
The Export/Import page is displayed.
- 4 Select **Import into This Folder or Workspace**.

Export / Import

---

Export This Folder or Workspace  Import into This Folder or Workspace

---

Select the Import File

No file chosen

---

- 5 Browse to and select the folder entry that you want to import, then click **OK**.

# Managing Workspace Disk Space Usage

Disk space usage is managed on both a folder and workspace basis as well as an individual user or group basis.

You can enforce one or both of these types of data quotas. See [“Managing the File Upload Size Limit” on page 253](#).

## Modifying the Title, Description, and Branding of the Personal Workspaces Workspace

By default, the workspace that contains all of the personal workspaces is named **Personal Workspaces**. (This is an alternate way of viewing users in your Vibe system.) The brand for this workspace is inherited from the parent workspace, and there is no workspace description. However, Vibe lets you modify the name, description, and brand of the workspace.

- ♦ [“Modifying the Title and Description” on page 235](#)
- ♦ [“Modifying the Brand” on page 235](#)

### Modifying the Title and Description

- 1 Navigate to the Personal Workspaces workspace by clicking the **Workspace Tree** icon  in the Action toolbar, expanding **Home Workspace**, then clicking **Personal Workspaces**.
- 2 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Edit Workspace**.  
Use this page to change the title and description of the workspace.

### Modifying the Brand

- 1 Navigate to the Personal Workspaces workspace by clicking the **Workspace Tree** icon  in the Action toolbar, expanding **Home Workspace**, then clicking **Personal Workspaces**.
- 2 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace title, then click **Brand Workspace**.  
Use the Workspace/Folder branding dialog box to modify the workspace brand. For more information about how to brand a workspace, see [“Branding a Folder or Workspace”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.



# 23 Managing Disk Space Usage with Data Quotas and File Restrictions

As time passes, your Micro Focus Vibe site occupies more and more disk space as users post folder entries, attach files, create new versions of files, and so on. As the Vibe administrator, you can impose limits on the amount of data that is uploaded into the Vibe site.

Only files and attachments count toward the data quota. Workspaces, folders, and entries that do not contain files and attachments do not count toward the data quota.

You can limit the amount of files and attachments for individual users and groups as well as individual workspaces and folders.

- ◆ [“Understanding the Types of Data Quotas” on page 237](#)
- ◆ [“Understanding Data Quota Behavior and Exclusions” on page 238](#)
- ◆ [“Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#)
- ◆ [“Managing User Data Quotas” on page 242](#)
- ◆ [“General Data Quota Management” on page 252](#)
- ◆ [“Managing the File Upload Size Limit” on page 253](#)
- ◆ [“Setting a Maximum Number of Versions for Each File” on page 255](#)
- ◆ [“Automatically Deleting Old File Versions” on page 255](#)

## Understanding the Types of Data Quotas

You as the Micro Focus Vibe administrator can enable two kinds of data quotas:

- ◆ User data quotas
- ◆ Workspace and folder data quotas

You can enable one of these quotas, or both of them.

- ◆ [“Understanding User Data Quotas” on page 237](#)
- ◆ [“Understanding Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 238](#)

## Understanding User Data Quotas

User data quotas limit the amount of data individual users can add to the Vibe site. Any files and attachments that a user adds to the Vibe site counts toward his or her data quota, regardless of the folders or workspaces where the user adds them.

## Understanding Workspace and Folder Data Quotas

Workspace and folder quotas limit the amount of data that can be stored in individual workspaces and folders.

Sub-workspaces and sub-folders that have a data quota are subject to their own data quota as well as any data quotas that exist on parent folders and workspaces. For example, consider a workspace that has a data quota of 50 MB. The workspace contains two sub-workspaces: Workspace A and Workspace B. Users cannot upload data that is in excess of 50 MB into either of these sub-workspaces. Furthermore, users cannot upload data into both of these sub-workspaces that is in excess of 50 MB (for example, users cannot upload data that is in excess of 30 MB into both sub-workspace, because the amount of combined data for both sub-workspaces is greater than 50 MB).

## Understanding Data Quota Behavior and Exclusions

- ♦ [“Understanding Default Data Quota Behavior” on page 238](#)
- ♦ [“Understanding Data Quota Exclusions” on page 239](#)

### Understanding Default Data Quota Behavior

The following sections describe the default behavior for how user data quotas work after they have been enabled. (For information on how to enable data quotas for your Vibe site, see [“Enabling Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#) and [“Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#).)

- ♦ [“Exceeding the Data Quota” on page 238](#)
- ♦ [“Exceeding the High-Water Mark” on page 238](#)

### Exceeding the Data Quota

By default, Vibe users are strictly held to the data quota that you set. If a user who is approaching his or her data quota tries to upload a file to the Vibe site and that file exceeds the user’s data quota, Vibe rejects the upload attempt and the entry is lost. This is also true with data quotas that are set on workspaces and folders.

For user data quotas (not for workspace and folder data quotas), you can allow users to post a final entry to the Vibe site even if the entry exceeds the user data quota. This approach is less strict and does not guarantee that users won’t exceed the data quota; however, it is more forgiving because it allows users to post one final upload to the Vibe site and does not erase the entry and attached file that they are trying to upload.

For information on how to configure your Vibe data quotas to be less strict by allowing users one final upload to the Vibe site, see [“Configuring Data Quotas to Be Less Strict” on page 252](#).

### Exceeding the High-Water Mark

When users exceed the data quota high-water mark, they are notified that they are approaching the data quota. Vibe informs them how many kilobytes of disk space are still available.

For more information on selecting an appropriate high-water mark, see [“Selecting an Appropriate High-Water Mark” on page 243](#).

## Understanding Data Quota Exclusions

Files stored in mirrored folders do not count against data quotas because they are not uploaded into the Vibe site.

## Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas

- ♦ [“Enabling Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#)
- ♦ [“Setting Quotas on Workspaces and Folders” on page 240](#)
- ♦ [“Validating Workspace and Folder Quotas” on page 241](#)

## Enabling Workspace and Folder Data Quotas

Before you can set data quotas on workspaces and folders, you must first enable them. You can enable data quotas so that only you as the Vibe administrator can manage workspace and folder quotas, or you can enable data quotas so that all users can manage the data quotas for their own workspaces and folders.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Personal Storage**.
- 4 Click **Initialize Workspace and Folder Quota Counts**.

This sets up the workspace and folder data quota for your Vibe site. This operation can take a significant amount of time (10 to 20 minutes).

**Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas**

Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas

**Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts**

**Apply**

**Enable User Data Quotas** ?

Default User Data Quota Size:  MB

Default High-Water Mark:  %

**Add a Group**

**Add a User**

**Apply** **Close**

- 5 Select **Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas**.
- 6 (Optional) If you want to allow users to manage the data quotas for their own workspaces and folders, select **Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas**.
- 7 Click **Apply** > **Close**.
- 8 Set data quotas on workspaces and folders as described in [“Setting Quotas on Workspaces and Folders”](#) on page 240.

## Setting Quotas on Workspaces and Folders

Before you can set data quotas on workspaces and folders, you need to enable them, as described in [“Enabling Workspace and Folder Data Quotas”](#) on page 239.

You can set quotas on individual workspaces and folders, or you can set quotas on all workspaces and folders of a certain type. For example, you can configure all Photo Album folders in your Vibe site to have a data quota of 10 MB.

- ♦ [“Setting Quotas on Individual Workspaces and Folders”](#) on page 240
- ♦ [“Setting Quotas on All Workspaces and Folders of a Certain Type”](#) on page 241

## Setting Quotas on Individual Workspaces and Folders

- 1 Navigate to the workspace and folder where you want to set the quota.
- 2 Click the **Configure** icon  next to the workspace or folder title, then **Configure Views, URLs and Controls**.

- 3 Click the **Quotas** tab.
- 4 In the **Set a Quota** field, specify the new data quota, then click **OK**.

## Setting Quotas on All Workspaces and Folders of a Certain Type

When you set data quotas on all workspaces or folders of a certain type, the quota applies only to workspaces or folders that are created after you set the quota. Workspaces and folders that were created before the quota was set do not automatically have a data quota assigned to them.

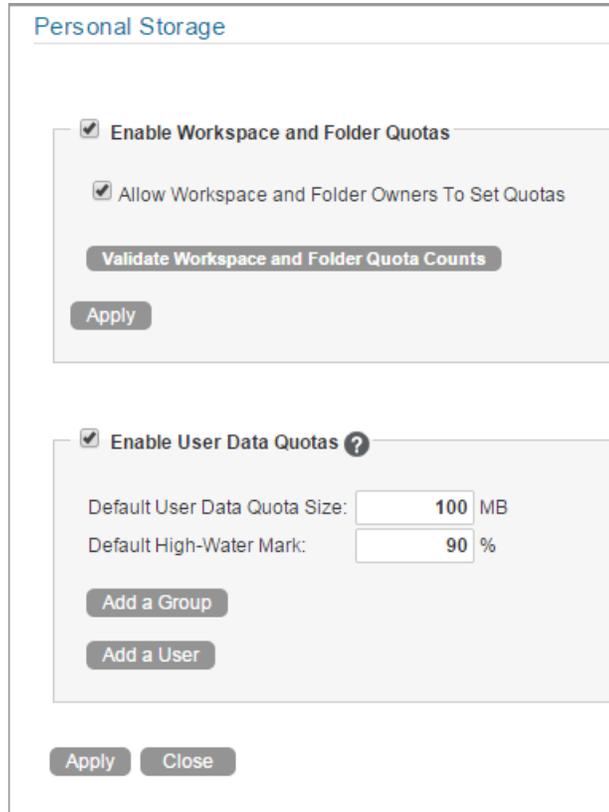
To set a data quota on all workspaces and folders of a certain type, you need to modify the template for the workspace or folder where you want to set the data quota. For information on how to modify the template for workspaces and folders, see [“Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 257](#).

## Validating Workspace and Folder Quotas

Quota counts for workspaces and folders can become marginally inaccurate over time if multiple users are frequently adding and deleting files in a workspace or folder where a data quota has been set.

You can repair any data quota inaccuracies by validating the data quota:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Personal Storage**.



The screenshot shows the 'Personal Storage' configuration page. It features two main sections for enabling and configuring quotas. The first section, 'Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas', has a checked checkbox and includes a sub-section 'Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas' with its own checked checkbox. Below these are buttons for 'Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts' and 'Apply'. The second section, 'Enable User Data Quotas', also has a checked checkbox and includes a help icon. It contains two input fields: 'Default User Data Quota Size' set to '100 MB' and 'Default High-Water Mark' set to '90 %'. Below these are buttons for 'Add a Group' and 'Add a User'. At the bottom of the page are 'Apply' and 'Close' buttons.

- 4 Click **Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts**.
- 5 Click **Apply > Close**.

## Managing User Data Quotas

Each user's data quota establishes how much disk space the user's attached files and file versions can occupy in the Vibe site. Workspaces, folders, and entries that do not contain files or attachments do not count toward a user's data quota.

By default, users are not limited in the disk space that their attached files and file versions occupy in the Vibe site. As the Vibe administrator, you can decide when limiting users' disk space usage becomes appropriate.

- ◆ [“Planning User Data Quotas” on page 242](#)
- ◆ [“Setting User Data Quotas” on page 243](#)
- ◆ [“Modifying User Data Quotas” on page 246](#)
- ◆ [“Removing User Data Quotas” on page 249](#)
- ◆ [“Managing Your Personal Data Quota” on page 251](#)
- ◆ [“Monitoring User Data Quotas” on page 252](#)

## Planning User Data Quotas

- ◆ [“Understanding User Data Quota Priority” on page 242](#)
- ◆ [“Selecting the Default User Data Quota for All Users” on page 243](#)
- ◆ [“Selecting an Appropriate High-Water Mark” on page 243](#)
- ◆ [“Determining Data Quotas for Specific Users” on page 243](#)
- ◆ [“Determining Data Quotas for Specific Groups” on page 243](#)

## Understanding User Data Quota Priority

Because users can have multiple data quotas assigned to them, either individually, through group membership, or through the site-wide default, Vibe prioritizes the existing data quotas and uses only one for each individual Vibe user. If users have multiple data quotas that pertain to them, the priority level is as follows:

1. **User Quota:** A quota that is set for an individual user overrides the site-wide default quota and any other quotas that are associated with any groups where the user is a member.
2. **Group Quota:** A quota that is set for an individual group overrides the site-wide default quota. This pertains to all users who are members of that group.

When a user is a member of multiple groups that have data quotas associated with them, the user is given the highest data quota. For example, if a Vibe user is a member of Group A, Group B, and Group C, and the data quotas for each of these groups is 10, 20, and 30, the Vibe user's data quota is 30.

3. **Site-Wide Default:** The site-wide default quota is used for all Vibe users who have not been assigned individual quotas, and who are not associated with any groups where a quota has been set.

## Selecting the Default User Data Quota for All Users

When you enable the data quota feature, the initial default data quota is 100 MB. This means that each Vibe user can upload 100 MB of files and attachments to the Vibe site. There is one default data quota for each Vibe zone.

When you select the default data quota for your Vibe site, consider the size of your Vibe site, the number of Vibe users, the amount of available disk space, and so on. You can override the default data quota on a per-user and per-group basis, as described in [“Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#).

As described in [“Exceeding the Data Quota” on page 238](#), when a user adds enough files and attachments to exceed the data quota, the user can no longer attach files or create versions until existing files have been deleted and purged to free up storage space.

For information about purging deleted files to make storage space available, see [“Permanently Deleting Files from the Trash” on page 253](#).

For information about the user experience when nearing or exceeding a data quota, see [“Adding Files and Attachments to the Vibe Site When You Are Over Your Quota”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

For information about which data quota is used when users have multiple data quotas that pertain to them, see [“Understanding User Data Quota Priority” on page 242](#).

## Selecting an Appropriate High-Water Mark

The high-water mark is the percentage of the data quota when users are notified that they are approaching their data quotas. The default high-water mark is 90% of a user’s data quota.

This high-water mark also applies to data quotas that are set on workspaces and folders.

## Determining Data Quotas for Specific Users

If there is a user in your Vibe site who needs either a higher or lower data quota than the site-wide default, you can assign that user an individual user data quota.

When you set data quotas for specific users, remember that individual user data quotas override the default user data quota, as well as quotas that are assigned to any groups where the user is a member, as described in [“Understanding User Data Quota Priority” on page 242](#).

## Determining Data Quotas for Specific Groups

When you set data quotas for specific groups, remember that group data quotas override the default site-wide data quota, but do not override individual user quotas, as described in [“Understanding User Data Quota Priority” on page 242](#).

## Setting User Data Quotas

You can set data quotas for the entire Vibe site, for individual groups, and for individual users.

- ◆ [“Setting a Default Data Quota” on page 244](#)
- ◆ [“Setting Data Quotas for Individual Groups” on page 244](#)

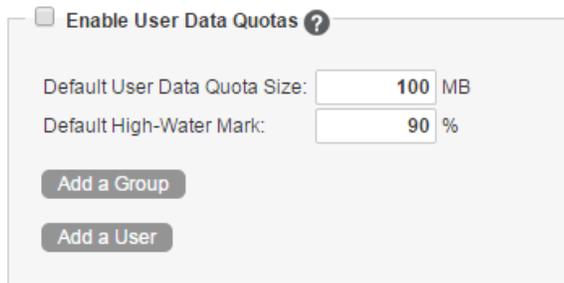
- ♦ “Setting Data Quotas for Individual Users” on page 245
- ♦ “Setting Data Quotas on Outgoing Email Messages” on page 246

## Setting a Default Data Quota

When you set a default data quota, the quota applies to all Vibe users who have not been assigned individual quotas, and who are not associated with any groups where a quota has been set.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Personal Storage**.

### Personal Storage

**Apply** **Close**

- 4 Select **Enable User Data Quotas**.
- 5 Set the **Default Data Quota Size** and **Default High-Water Mark** options as determined in “Planning User Data Quotas” on page 242.
- 6 Click **Apply** > **Close** to save the user data quota settings.

## Setting Data Quotas for Individual Groups

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Data Quotas and File Upload Limits**.

## Personal Storage

**Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas**

Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas

**Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts**

**Apply**

**Enable User Data Quotas ?**

Default User Data Quota Size:  MB

Default High-Water Mark:  %

**Add a Group**

**Add a User**

**Apply** **Close**

- 4 Select **Enable User Data Quotas**.
- 5 Click **Add a Group**.

**Add a Group**

**Add a Group**

Group:

Quota:  MB

**OK** **Cancel**

- 6 In the **Group** field, start typing the name of the group for which you want to set a quota, then click the group name when it appears in the drop-down list.  
Repeat this process to add additional groups for which you want to assign the same data quota.
- 7 In the **Quota** field, specify the disk space limit for the group.
- 8 Click **OK**, then click **Apply** > **Close** to save the user data quota settings.

## Setting Data Quotas for Individual Users

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Data Quotas and File Upload Limits**.

## Personal Storage

Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas

Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas

Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts

Apply

Enable User Data Quotas ?

Default User Data Quota Size:  MB

Default High-Water Mark:  %

Add a Group

Add a User

Apply Close

4 Select **Enable User Data Quotas**.

5 Click **Add a User**.

Add a User

Add a User

User:

People

Quota:  MB

OK Cancel

6 In the **User** field, start typing the name of the user for which you want to set a quota, then click the user's name when it appears in the drop-down list.

Repeat this process to add additional users for which you want to assign the same data quota.

7 In the **Quota** field, specify the disk space limit for the user.

8 Click **OK**, then click **Apply > Close** to save the user data quota settings.

## Setting Data Quotas on Outgoing Email Messages

You can set a maximum file size on individual email messages that are sent from the Vibe system. For more information, see [“Enabling/Disabling Outbound Emailing of Folder Digests” on page 163](#).

## Modifying User Data Quotas

Vibe lets you modify data quotas that you have previously set. You can modify data quotas for your entire Vibe site, or modify data quotas for individual groups and users.

- ◆ [“Modifying User Data Quotas for the Entire Vibe Site” on page 247](#)
- ◆ [“Modifying User Data Quotas for Individual Groups and Users” on page 248](#)

## Modifying User Data Quotas for the Entire Vibe Site

Vibe lets you easily modify the site-wide default user data quota.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Personal Storage**.

### Personal Storage

**Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas**

Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas

**Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts**

**Apply**

**Enable User Data Quotas** 

Default User Data Quota Size:  MB

Default High-Water Mark:  %

**Add a Group**

**Group Quotas**

Delete	Group Name	Group Title	Quota
<input type="checkbox"/>	marketing	marketing	200

**Delete**

**Add a User**

**User Quotas**

Delete	Full Name	User Id	Quota	Data Quota Used
<input type="checkbox"/>	Janet Desoto	jdesoto	175	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Julio Chavez	jchavez	150	0.01

**Delete**

**Apply** **Close**

- 4 In the **Default User Data Quota Size** field, delete the existing quota and specify the new quota. You can also modify the default high-water mark in the **Default High-Water Mark** field. For more information about the high-water mark, see [“Selecting an Appropriate High-Water Mark” on page 243](#).
- 5 Click **Apply** > **Close** to save the user data quota settings.

# Modifying User Data Quotas for Individual Groups and Users

Vibe lets you easily modify individual group and user data quota settings that you have previously set.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Personal Storage**.

## Personal Storage

**Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas**

Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas

**Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts**

**Apply**

**Enable User Data Quotas** 

Default User Data Quota Size:  MB

Default High-Water Mark:  %

**Add a Group**

**Group Quotas**

Delete	Group Name	Group Title	Quota
<input type="checkbox"/>	marketing	marketing	200

**Delete**

**Add a User**

**User Quotas**

Delete	Full Name	User Id	Quota	Data Quota Used
<input type="checkbox"/>	Janet Desoto	jdesoto	175	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Julio Chavez	jchavez	150	0.01

**Delete**

**Apply** **Close**

- 4 In the **Group Quotas** table or **User Quotas** table, click the group name or user name that represents the group or user whose quota you want to modify.



- 5 In the **Quota** field, delete the existing quota and specify a new quota.
- 6 Click **OK**, then click **Apply > Close** to save the user data quota settings.

## Removing User Data Quotas

Vibe lets you disable data quotas that you have previously set. You can disable data quotas for your entire Vibe site, or remove data quotas from individual groups and users.

- ♦ [“Disabling User Data Quotas for the Entire Vibe Site” on page 249](#)
- ♦ [“Removing User Data Quotas from Individual Groups and Users” on page 250](#)

## Disabling User Data Quotas for the Entire Vibe Site

If you decide that you no longer need to impose limits on the amount of data that users are permitted to upload into the Vibe site, you can disable the data quota feature. Disabling the data quota feature enables all Vibe users to upload as much data to the Vibe site as they want.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Personal Storage**.  
The Data Quotas and File Upload Limits page is displayed.
- 4 Deselect **Enable User Data Quotas**, then click **Apply**.

## Personal Storage

**Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas**

Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas

**Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts**

**Apply**

**Enable User Data Quotas** ?

Default User Data Quota Size:  MB

Default High-Water Mark:  %

**Add a Group**

**Group Quotas**

Delete	Group Name	Group Title	Quota
<input type="checkbox"/>	marketing	marketing	200

**Delete**

**Add a User**

**User Quotas**

Delete	Full Name	User Id	Quota	Data Quota Used
<input type="checkbox"/>	Janet Desoto	jdesoto	175	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Julio Chavez	jchavez	150	0.01

**Delete**

**Data quotas are not enabled.**

**Apply** **Close**

Data quotas are no longer enabled for your Vibe site.

## Removing User Data Quotas from Individual Groups and Users

You can remove data quotas that you have previously set for individual groups and users. Users are held to the site-wide data quota default setting if they do not have an individual quota defined for them and they are not members of any groups where a group quota has been assigned.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Personal Storage**.

**Enable Workspace and Folder Quotas**

Allow Workspace and Folder Owners To Set Quotas

**Validate Workspace and Folder Quota Counts**

**Apply**

**Enable User Data Quotas ?**

Default User Data Quota Size:  MB

Default High-Water Mark:  %

**Add a Group**

Group Quotas			
Delete	Group Name	Group Title	Quota
<input type="checkbox"/>	marketing	marketing	200

**Delete**

**Add a User**

User Quotas				
Delete	Full Name	User Id	Quota	Data Quota Used
<input type="checkbox"/>	Janet Desoto	jdesoto	175	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	Julio Chavez	jchavez	150	0.01

**Delete**

**Apply** **Close**

- 4 In the **Group Quotas** table or **User Quotas** table, select the check box next to the group or user whose quota you want to remove, then click **Delete**.
- 5 Click **Apply** > **Close** to save the user data quota settings.

## Managing Your Personal Data Quota

**NOTE:** As a Vibe administrator, you are also held to a data quota. If you want to assign yourself a larger quota than the site-wide default, you can add an individual quota for yourself, as described in [“Setting Data Quotas for Individual Users”](#) on page 245.

All Vibe users need to manage their personal data quotas. When you have a limited allocation of disk space, you need to be aware of the amount of disk space that you have available, know how to make more disk space available as you approach your quota, and know what counts against your quota and what doesn't.

For information on how to accomplish these and other important tasks as you manage your data quota, see [“Managing Your Data Quota”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Monitoring User Data Quotas

You can monitor which users in the Vibe site have exceeded or are close to exceeding their data quotas by generating the following reports:

- ♦ [“Data Quota Exceeded Report” on page 300](#)
- ♦ [“Data Quota Highwater Exceeded Report” on page 301](#)

## General Data Quota Management

This section describes tasks that are common to both types of data quotas: workspace and folder data quotas and user data quotas.

- ♦ [“Configuring Data Quotas to Be Less Strict” on page 252](#)
- ♦ [“Permanently Deleting Files from the Trash” on page 253](#)

## Configuring Data Quotas to Be Less Strict

This section applies only to user data quotas. You cannot configure workspace and folder quotas to be less strict, as described in this section.

As a Vibe administrator, you can decide how strictly you want to enforce user data quota adherence. You can maintain the default behavior, or you can be less strict by allowing users to post a final entry that exceeds the data quota.

For more information about the default behavior for a data quota, see [“Understanding Default Data Quota Behavior” on page 238](#).

To configure Vibe to allow users to post a final entry that exceeds the data quota:

- 1 Change to the following directory:

Linux:	<code>/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/ webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config</code>
Windows:	<code>c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\ INF\classes\config</code> <code>webapps\ssf\WEB-</code>

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Add the following line to the `ssf-ext.properties` file:  
`data.quota.strict.conformance=false`
- 5 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 6 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Permanently Deleting Files from the Trash

When users delete files or file versions, the disk space occupied by the deleted files and versions counts against the data quotas until users permanently delete the files and versions from the Trash, as described in [“Making Disk Space Available by Deleting Items from the Trash”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

As a Vibe administrator, you can permanently delete files and versions anywhere on the Vibe site in order to recover disk space.

---

**IMPORTANT:** After items have been permanently deleted, they cannot be recovered except through a tedious manual process from the archive store with the help of Micro Focus Technical Support. For more information, see [“Manually Restoring Individual Entries”](#) on page 287.

---

To permanently delete files and file versions from the Trash:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click the **Workspace tree** icon , then click **Home Workspace**.  
All global workspaces, team workspaces, and personal workspaces are located under the Home Workspace.
- 3 Click **Trash** at the bottom of the Left Navigation pane to display a list of all deleted files and versions.  
By default, the list is ordered alphabetically by title.
- 4 (Optional) Click a column heading to sort the list by when items were deleted, who deleted the items, or where the items were deleted on the Vibe site.
- 5 Select items to permanently delete, then click **Delete**.

## Managing the File Upload Size Limit

The file upload size limit conserves disk space on your Micro Focus Vibe site because it prevents users from uploading large files to the Vibe site. The default size limit for uploading files into your Vibe site is 2 GB.

Browsers also impose limits on the size of files that can be uploaded. This limit differs depending on which browser you are using to run Vibe.

If you are using Vibe Desktop to upload and download files between user workstations and the Vibe site, see [“Configuring the Maximum File Size Limit for Vibe Desktop”](#) on page 148 for more information about controlling maximum file size limits.

- ♦ [“Modifying the File Upload Size Limit for the Vibe Site”](#) on page 254
- ♦ [“Setting a File Upload Size Limit for Individual Users and Groups”](#) on page 254
- ♦ [“Setting a File Upload Size Limit for Individual Workspaces and Folders”](#) on page 255

## Modifying the File Upload Size Limit for the Vibe Site

You as the Vibe administrator can increase or decrease this size limit for the Vibe site. Workspace and folder owners can set a file upload size limit for their own workspaces and folders, but the limit in individual workspaces and folders cannot exceed what you set for the Vibe site.

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **File Upload Limits**.
- 3 In the **File Upload Size Limits** section, specify the new file upload size limit.
- 4 Click **Apply > Close**.

## Setting a File Upload Size Limit for Individual Users and Groups

You can assign a file upload size limit to individual users and groups that is different from the site-wide file upload size limit. For example, if the file upload size limit for your Vibe site is 2 GB, but your Marketing team often uploads large files, you can give the `Marketing` group a file upload size of 3 GB.

- ♦ [“Setting a Limit for a Group” on page 254](#)
- ♦ [“Setting a Limit for a User” on page 254](#)

### Setting a Limit for a Group

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **File Upload Limits**.
- 3 In the **File Upload Size Limits** section, click **Add a Group**.
- 4 Specify the following information:
  - Group:** Begin typing the group name for which you want to set a file upload size limit, then click the name when it appears in the list.
  - File Size Limit:** Specify the new file size limit for the group.
- 5 Click **OK**.

### Setting a Limit for a User

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **File Upload Limits**.
- 3 In the **File Upload Size Limits** section, click **Add a User**.
- 4 Specify the following information:
  - User:** Begin typing the user name for which you want to set a file upload size limit, then click the name when it appears in the list.
  - File Size Limit:** Specify the new file size limit for the user.
- 5 Click **OK**.

## Setting a File Upload Size Limit for Individual Workspaces and Folders

Workspace and folder owners can set a file upload size limit on individual workspaces and folders. If a site-wide limit has been set by the Vibe administrator, the limit on the workspace or folder must be less than the site-wide limit. For more information, see [“Limiting the File Upload Size for Folders and Workspaces”](#) in [“Managing Folders”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Setting a Maximum Number of Versions for Each File

Because a significant amount of data can be consumed by old versions of files, you can configure the Vibe site to allow only a certain number of file versions for each file version set within the folder or workspace. (A file version set includes the major file version and all minor file versions. For more information about major and minor file versions, see [“Incrementing the Major Version Number of a File”](#) in [“Working with Files in a Folder Entry”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.)

To configure the Vibe site in this way, navigate to the top-level workspace (which by default is called **Home Workspaces**), then follow the instruction in [“Automatically Deleting Minor File Versions That Exceed the Allowed Maximum”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

## Automatically Deleting Old File Versions

Because a significant amount of data can be consumed by old versions of files, you can configure all minor versions of each file to be automatically deleted after a specified number of days on the Vibe site. When you configure your Vibe site in this way, all minor versions of each document are deleted after the specified number of days (major versions are never deleted).

Workspace and Folder owners can remove this setting for their workspaces and folders, or specify a different number of days, as described in [“Automatically Deleting Minor File Versions after a Specified Number of Days”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **System**, click **File Version Aging**.
- 3 Specify the number of days to wait before each lower-level version is automatically deleted, then click **Apply > Close**.



# 24 Managing Workspace and Folder Templates

Workspace and Folder templates are a powerful and efficient way to manage your Micro Focus Vibe site. They enable you to customize the default features, default layout, and default access control settings of the workspaces and folders throughout your Vibe site.

For example, the Team Workspaces template is used when any team workspace is created. By default, the access control settings for the Team Workspaces template specify that only team members are able to view the team workspace. However, if you want to run a more relaxed Vibe site and allow all Vibe users to view any team workspace, you can simply modify the access control settings on the Team Workspaces template.

Changes that you make to templates affect only those workspaces and folders that are created after the template was modified.

For more information about templates, see [“Understanding Templates” on page 61](#).

- ♦ [“Creating Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 257](#)
- ♦ [“Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 257](#)
- ♦ [“Exporting Templates” on page 261](#)
- ♦ [“Importing Templates” on page 263](#)
- ♦ [“Reverting All Templates to the Factory Default” on page 263](#)

## Creating Workspace and Folder Templates

For information on how to create new workspace and folder templates, see [“Creating Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 64](#).

## Modifying Workspace and Folder Templates

Micro Focus Vibe lets you modify default templates as well as custom templates that you have already created.

For information on how to create custom templates, see [“Creating Workspace and Folder Templates” on page 64](#).

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.

New ▼ Reset Import Export

### Standard Templates

- **Discussion** - A Discussion folder is useful for creating a forum where users are likely to both create and reply to entries.
- **Blog** - A blog folder is a forum where entire entries are displayed in reverse chronological order, based on when they were created. Blogs typically provide information on a particular topic from an individual or small group of authors. Optionally, the blog folder can be configured so that a larger group can make comments on the entries posted by the original author.
- **Calendar** - A calendar folder is a place to post group events or display other types of entries by date.
- **Guestbook** - A guestbook folder is a simple place that individuals can "sign," indicating that they have visited a user's Personal Workspace. Visitors may also leave comments about the entries created in that personal workspace. Comments are displayed in reverse chronological order. A picture of the individual signing the guestbook is displayed with the comment. The guestbook is useful for expanding users' social networks.
- **Files** - A file folder is a place to put files. Comments or entire discussions can be posted about individual files. Additionally, the files can be automatically locked, edited-in-place, then unlocked, creating a new version of the file. A file folder can emulate a WebDAV server. This allows a user to add and delete files via any WebDAV client, such as the MS Windows File Manager.
- **Milestones** - A milestones folder is used to call up or summarize activity in one or more Task folders.

### 3 Click the workspace or folder template that you want to modify.

From this page you can do any of the following:

- ♦ ["Deleting the Template" on page 258](#)
- ♦ ["Exporting the Template" on page 258](#)
- ♦ ["Renaming the Template" on page 259](#)
- ♦ ["Adding an Existing Workspace Template" on page 259](#)
- ♦ ["Adding an Existing Folder Template" on page 259](#)
- ♦ ["Removing a Folder Template or Workspace Template from the Template" on page 260](#)
- ♦ ["Adding Access Controls to the Template" on page 260](#)
- ♦ ["Adding a Data Quota to the Template" on page 260](#)
- ♦ ["Changing the Default View for the Template" on page 260](#)
- ♦ ["Changing the Title, Description, Brand, and Icon for the Template" on page 261](#)
- ♦ ["Modifying the Accessory Panel for the Template" on page 261](#)

## Deleting the Template

Deleting a template deletes the template and all sub-templates.

- 1 Click **Manage This Template**.
- 2 Click **Delete This Template > OK**.

## Exporting the Template

- 1 Click **Manage This Template**.
- 2 Click **Export This Template > OK**.

For information on how to export multiple templates simultaneously, see ["Exporting Multiple Templates" on page 262](#).

## Renaming the Template

You can change the information that is displayed on the Add New Workspace page (or Add New Folder page), when users select which type of workspace they want to add.

- 1 Click **Manage This Template**.
- 2 Click **Modify This Template**.
- 3 Specify the following information:
  - Name:** This is the internal database name.
  - Template Title:** This name appears in the Add New Workspace page (or Add New Folder page) when users select which type of workspace they want to add.
  - Description:** This description appears in the Add New Workspace page (or Add New Folder page) when users select which type of workspace they want to add.
- 4 Click **Modify**.

## Adding an Existing Workspace Template

You can add a workspace template to the template that you are currently modifying. The workspace template that you add becomes a sub-workspace to the main workspace. All template sub-workspaces and sub-folders that you add are preserved when the template is used in your Vibe site.

- 1 Click **Manage This Template**.
- 2 Click **Add Workspace Template**.
- 3 In the Currently Defined Templates section, select the workspace template that you want to add.
- 4 Click **Add**.
  - A cloned copy of the workspace template is added as a sub-folder to the main workspace.

## Adding an Existing Folder Template

You can add a folder template to the template that you are currently modifying. The folder template that you add becomes a sub-folder to the main workspace or folder. All template sub-workspaces and sub-folders that you add are preserved when the template is used in your Vibe site.

You can add a folder template to the template that you are currently modifying.

- 1 Click **Manage This Template**.
- 2 Click **Add Folder Template**.
- 3 In the Currently Defined Templates section, select the folder template that you want to add.
- 4 Click **Add**.
  - A cloned copy of the folder template is added as a sub-folder to the main folder or workspace.

## Removing a Folder Template or Workspace Template from the Template

You can also remove folder or workspace templates that you previously added to the template that you are modifying (as described in [“Adding an Existing Workspace Template” on page 259](#) and [“Adding an Existing Folder Template” on page 259](#).) Or you can remove folder or workspace templates that exist by default in the template that you are modifying. For example, you can remove the Files folder template from the User Workspace template.

- 1 Expand the workspace tree on the Workspace and Folder Templates page.
- 2 Select the workspace or folder template that you want to remove.
- 3 Click **Manage This Template**.
- 4 Click **Delete This Template > OK**.

## Adding Access Controls to the Template

- 1 Click **Manage This Target**.
- 2 Click **Access Control**.

The Configure Access Control page is displayed.

For information on how to use this page, see [Chapter 2, “Planning and Controlling User Access to Workspaces and Folders,” on page 21](#).

- 3 After you have made your access control modifications, click **Close**.

An example of adding access controls to a template is described in [“Restricting Access to Personal Workspaces throughout the Vibe Site” on page 26](#).

## Adding a Data Quota to the Template

- 1 Click **Manage This Target**.
- 2 Click **Configure Views, URLs, and Controls**.
- 3 Click the **Quotas** tab.
- 4 Specify the quota in the **Set a Quota** field, then click **OK**.

For information on data quotas for workspaces and folders, see [“Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#).

## Changing the Default View for the Template

- 1 Click **Manage This Target > Configure Views, URLs and Controls**.  
A page with various configuration options is displayed.
- 2 In the **Default View** section, select the default view that you want the template to have.
- 3 Click **Apply > Close**.

# Changing the Title, Description, Brand, and Icon for the Template

You can change the attributes of the template that are displayed in the workspace after the workspace is created.

- 1 Click **Manage This Target**.
- 2 Click **Modify**.
- 3 Change the title, description, brand, and icon as desired, then click **OK**.

## Modifying the Accessory Panel for the Template

Vibe lets you modify the Accessory Panel in a template.

If the Accessory Panel already contains accessories, you can modify them; or, you can create new accessories. For information on how to modify and create accessories, see [“Managing Accessories”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

## Exporting Templates

You might want to export templates for the following reasons:

- ♦ To import the template into another system.

For information on how to import a template, see [“Importing Templates” on page 263](#).

- ♦ To back up the template.

This can be useful if you want to edit a template, so you can restore the original if your edits don't go according to plan.

Micro Focus Vibe lets you export individual templates, or export multiple templates simultaneously.

- ♦ [“Exporting a Single Template” on page 261](#)
- ♦ [“Exporting Multiple Templates” on page 262](#)

## Exporting a Single Template

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.
- 3 Click the workspace or folder template that you want to export.
- 4 Click **Manage This Template**.
- 5 Click **Export This Template**.
- 6 Click **OK**.

# Exporting Multiple Templates

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.

## Workspace and Folder Templates

New

### Standard Templates

- **Discussion** - A Discussion folder is useful for creating a forum where users are likely to both create and reply to entries.
- **Blog** - A blog folder is a forum where entire entries are displayed in reverse chronological order, based on when they were created. Blogs typically provide information on a particular topic from an individual or small group of authors. Optionally, the blog folder can be configured so that a larger group can make comments on the entries posted by the original author.
- **Calendar** - A calendar folder is a place to post group events or display other types of entries by date.
- **Guestbook** - A guestbook folder is a simple place that individuals can "sign," indicating that they have visited a user's Personal Workspace. Visitors may also leave comments about the entries created in that personal workspace. Comments are displayed in reverse chronological order. A picture of the individual signing the guestbook is displayed with the comment. The guestbook is useful for expanding users' social networks.
- **Files** - A file folder is a place to put files. Comments or entire discussions can be posted about individual files. Additionally, the files can be automatically locked, edited-in-place, then unlocked, creating a new version of the file. A file folder can emulate a WebDAV server. This allows a user to add and delete files via any WebDAV client, such as the MS Windows File Manager.

- 3 Click **Export**.

## Workspace and Folder Templates

### Select the Templates to be Exported:

Select All

Templates

- Discussion
- Blog
- Calendar
- Guestbook
- Files
- Milestones
- Micro-Blog
- Mirrored Files
- Photo Album
- Surveys
- Tasks
- Wiki
- Running Workspace
- Discussions Workspace
- Project Management Workspace
- Team Workspace
- Workspace
- Landing Page
- Guest (guest)
- User workspace
- External User workspace

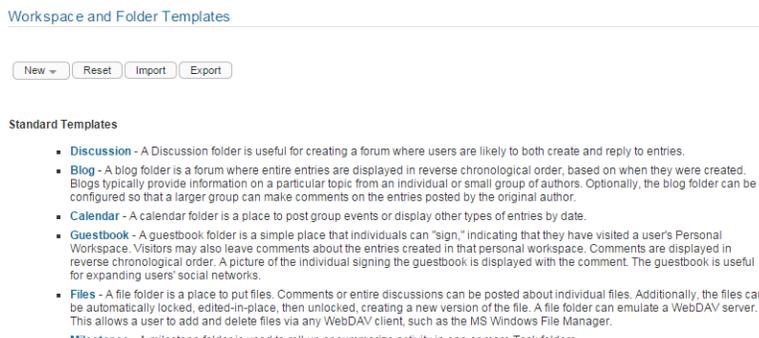
Select All

- 4 In the **Select the Templates to be Exported** section, select the template or templates that you want to export, then click **OK**.

# Importing Templates

You can import a template after you have exported it. For information on how to export a template, see “Exporting Templates” on page 261.

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console icon** .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.

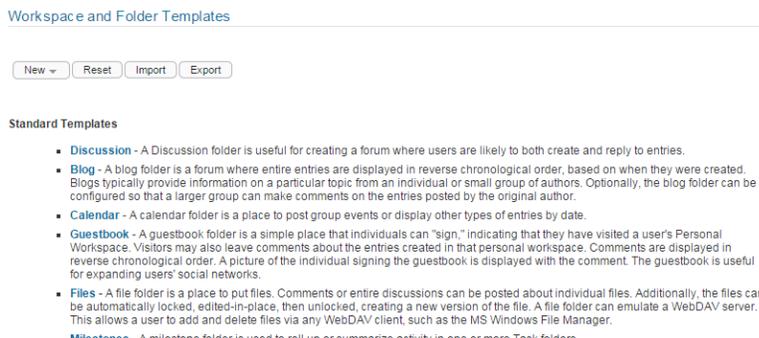


- 3 Click **Import**.  
The **Import Templates** page is displayed.
- 4 Browse for and select the templates that you want to import, then click **OK**.  
The imported templates are displayed in the Manage Workspace and Folder Templates page.

# Reverting All Templates to the Factory Default

When you revert all templates to the factory default, you lose any modifications that you have made to existing templates, as well as any custom templates that you might have created.

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console icon** .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **Workspace and Folder Templates**.



- 3 Click **Reset**, then click **OK**.



# 25 Creating and Managing Workflows

Workflows can improve efficiency in your organization by automating common business processes.

As an administrator for Micro Focus Vibe, you have the ability to create workflows and make them available to all Vibe users. You can also import existing workflows and then tailor them to your specific organization.

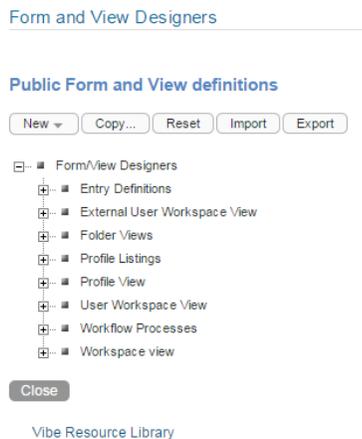
Examples of workflows include approving documents, ordering supplies, hiring new employees, requesting paid time off, and getting expense reimbursements.

- ♦ “Creating Global Workflows” on page 265
- ♦ “Downloading Existing Custom Forms and Workflows” on page 266

## Creating Global Workflows

You can create workflows that are accessible to all Micro Focus Vibe users.

- 1 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **System**, click **Form/View Designers**.



- 3 Follow the steps for creating and managing a workflow, as described in “Creating and Managing Workflows” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

Remember that when you create workflows at the Administration level, the workflows that you create can be leveraged by all users in your Vibe site.

# Downloading Existing Custom Forms and Workflows

The Micro Focus Vibe Resource Library provides a collection of existing Micro Focus Vibe folder entry forms and workflows that have been designed to solve specific business problems. You can easily download the custom forms and workflows, then import them into your Vibe environment. You can further customize these forms and workflows to suit your individual business needs.

- 1 Visit the [Micro Focus Vibe Resource Library](http://www.novell.com/products/vibe/resource-library/) (<http://www.novell.com/products/vibe/resource-library/>).
- 2 Select the custom form or workflow that you want to use in your Vibe environment.
- 3 In the **Attachment** section, click the `zip` file to download it.
- 4 Import the file into your Vibe environment and deploy it for use.

For information on how to do this, follow the [Micro Focus Vibe Resource Library Deployment Instructions](http://www.novell.com/products/vibe/resource-library/demos/form_workflow_deployment.html) ([http://www.novell.com/products/vibe/resource-library/demos/form\\_workflow\\_deployment.html](http://www.novell.com/products/vibe/resource-library/demos/form_workflow_deployment.html)).

# 26 Viewing and Updating the Vibe License

- ♦ “Viewing the Vibe License” on page 267
- ♦ “Updating the Vibe License” on page 267

## Viewing the Vibe License

- 1 Click the **admin** link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 2 Under **Management**, click **License**.  
The Vibe license is displayed.
- 3 (Conditional) If you have updated your Vibe license and the contents of the new license are not being displayed, click **Reload Vibe License**.

## Updating the Vibe License

You update the Vibe license as described in “[Updating Your Vibe License](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.



# 27 Managing Email Configuration

After you enable email integration for the Vibe site as described in [Chapter 10, “Configuring Email Integration,”](#) on page 163, you can further modify the way emails are managed on the Vibe site.

- ♦ [“Configuring Outbound Email with TLS over SMTP”](#) on page 269
- ♦ [“Customizing Email Templates”](#) on page 270
- ♦ [“Configuring the Field that Vibe Uses When Sending Emails”](#) on page 271
- ♦ [“Configuring the Number of Users Who Can Be Included in the Same Email Notification”](#) on page 272
- ♦ [“Configuring Vibe to Send Email Messages and Notifications from a Custom Address”](#) on page 273
- ♦ [“Enabling Users to Configure a Folder or External Email Address to Receive Sent Emails”](#) on page 275
- ♦ [“Displaying the User’s Profile Picture in Email Notifications”](#) on page 275

## Configuring Outbound Email with TLS over SMTP

Depending on how your email application is configured, it may require that Vibe outbound email be configured with TLS over SMTP for secure email. Micro Focus GroupWise, for example, can be configured to require this. If you are using GroupWise or another email application that requires this type of configuration, you can configure Vibe with TLS over SMTP by using STARTTLS.

---

**NOTE:** In the Vibe installation program, on the Outbound Email Configuration page, ensure that you have selected **SMTP** in the **Protocol** drop-down list. For more information about outbound email configuration in the Vibe installation program, see [“Planning for Outbound Email”](#) in the [Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide](#).

---

To configure outbound email with TLS over SMTP:

- 1 Import the root certificate from the email server into the Vibe Java keystore file (`cacerts`).

The import process is the same as that described for securing LDAP synchronization in [“Securing LDAP Synchronization”](#) on page 330.

The default location for the Java keystore file is:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/jre/lib/security`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\jre\lib\security`

- 2 Change to the following directory:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
conf/Catalina/localhost`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
conf\Catalina\localhost`

- 3 Open the `ssf.xml` file in a text editor.
- 4 Add the following attribute to the resource node that begins with `<Resource name="mail/SiteScapePool"` (this is the first resource node in the list):

```
mail.smtp.starttls.enable="true"
```

- 5 (Optional) To enable tracing of sent email to assist with debugging mail issues, add the following attribute to the same resource node:

```
mail.debug="true"
```

- 6 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Customizing Email Templates

- ♦ [“About Vibe’s Email Templates” on page 270](#)
- ♦ [“Tips and Documentation” on page 270](#)
- ♦ [“Modifying the Template Files” on page 271](#)
- ♦ [“A Video Walkthrough” on page 271](#)

## About Vibe’s Email Templates

Vibe generates email notifications using Apache Velocity version 1.5 templates.

You can customize the following templates, beginning with the Vibe 4.0.1 release:

Template Name	Purpose
footer.vm	Text or images applied at the end of each email
header.vm	Text or images applied at the beginning of each email
passwordChangedNotification.vm	Notification that user’s password changed
publicLinkNotification.vm	Notification of a publicly available link to a file
selfRegistrationRequired.vm	Shared item notification to user who must register with Vibe in order to view it
sharedEntryInvite.vm	Shared file invitation to an existing Vibe user
sharedEntryNotification.vm	Shared file notification of change to existing Vibe user
sharedFolderInvite.vm	Shared folder invitation to existing Vibe user
sharedFolderNotification.vm	Shared folder notification of change to existing Vibe user
style.vm	CSS style sheet for email notifications
teaming.vm	Macros that get applied to all emails

## Tips and Documentation

The following are tips about the template files in Vibe.

- ♦ Each template contains a brief explanation about what you can customize.

- ◆ Vibe system-generated emails contain both text and HTML MIME parts. You can customize these independently.
- ◆ You can customize by language to localize the emails your Vibe system generates.
- ◆ You can revert back to the default template by selecting a customize template in the list and then clicking the Delete button.
- ◆ Make sure you use the [Velocity documentation \(https://velocity.apache.org/engine/releases/velocity-1.5/user-guide.html\)](https://velocity.apache.org/engine/releases/velocity-1.5/user-guide.html).

For example, one user assumed that the hash marks (#) indicated comments, when in fact they are part of many scripting languages, including Velocity.

Complete information and instructions for the Apache Velocity version 1.5 template language are available on the [Apache Velocity Project website \(https://velocity.apache.org/engine/releases/velocity-1.5/\)](https://velocity.apache.org/engine/releases/velocity-1.5/).

## Modifying the Template Files

The default email templates that reside on the Vibe 4.0.4 system cannot be changed or deleted, but you can create and deploy customized copies of them by doing the following:

1. Download a template to your local disk by clicking it in the Email Templates dialog
2. Open it in a text editor
3. Save it on your local disk.
4. Upload the customized file by dragging and dropping it into the Email Templates dialog.

The **Type** then changes to **Customized**.

## A Video Walkthrough

To see a demonstration of the email template customization process for the Filr product, view the following video:

 <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AA4A-nG3dIY>

The same principles apply to Vibe.

## Configuring the Field that Vibe Uses When Sending Emails

By default, emails that are sent from Vibe are sent with the recipients in the **BCC** field. You can configure Vibe to use the **To** field rather than the **BCC** field for all sent messages.

Configuring Vibe in this way makes it so message recipients can see other message recipients in the email notification. For information about how to configure Vibe to send individual messages to each user rather than including multiple users on the same message, see [“Configuring the Number of Users Who Can Be Included in the Same Email Notification” on page 272](#).

- 1 Change to the following directory:



- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe to configure Vibe to include only one user in each email notification that is sent.

## Configuring Vibe to Send Email Messages and Notifications from a Custom Address

For security reasons, your corporation's email system might be set up to automatically delete messages from internal users that are not sent from the corporate email system. If your corporate email system is configured in this way, email messages and notifications sent from Micro Focus Vibe are automatically deleted.

You can configure Vibe to send email messages directly from the Vibe server, rather than from internal users. These are messages that are sent when a user performs an action that creates a message. For example, when a user shares a workspace with another Vibe user, a message is sent to the receiving user's email mailbox. By default, this message is sent from the internal user. However, you can configure Vibe to send such messages from the Vibe server itself. Configuring Vibe in this way enables email messages to be sent from Vibe, while maintaining the same level of security for your corporation.

By default, Vibe is configured to send messages from individual users in the following scenarios:

- ♦ When sending a workflow notification, as described in “[Adding On-Entry or On-Exit Events](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.
- ♦ When creating an entry, as described in “[Creating a Folder Entry](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

You can configure Vibe to send email messages from an external address for an individual zone or for the entire Vibe site:

- ♦ “[Configuring a Zone-Specific Email Address for Sent Messages](#)” on page 273
- ♦ “[Configuring a Site-Wide Email Address for Sent Messages](#)” on page 274

## Configuring a Zone-Specific Email Address for Sent Messages

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
            webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config  
  
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
            webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for the following line:

```
ssf.outgoing.from.address.<zone name>=zoned@company.com
```

- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.

- 6 Copy the `ssf.outgoing.from.address.<zone name>=zoned@company.com` line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Replace `<zone name>` with the name of the Vibe zone that you want email messages to be addressed from and edit the email address to reflect your company's email.  
For example, if the name of your Vibe zone is `kablink`, and the name of your company is `greenergy`, the line would read:  

```
ssf.outgoing.from.address.kablink=zone@greenergy.com
```
- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe.

## Configuring a Site-Wide Email Address for Sent Messages

- 1 Change to the following directory:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config`

- 2 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, which is located in the same directory as the `ssf.properties` file.
- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Search for the following line:

```
ssf.outgoing.from.address=global@company.com
```

- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the `ssf.outgoing.from.address=global@company.com` line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.  
Edit the email address to reflect your company's email.  
For example, if the name of your company is `greenergy`, the line would read:

```
ssf.outgoing.from.address=global@greenergy.com
```

- 7 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 8 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 9 Stop and restart Vibe.



- 5 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 6 Copy the `email.showAvatarInHeader=false` line from the `ssf.properties` file to the bottom of the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 7 Replace `false` with `true` so that the line now reads  

```
email.showAvatarInHeader=true
```
- 8 Save and close the `ssf-ext.properties` file.
- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving it.
- 10 Stop and restart Vibe.

# 28 Managing the Lucene Index

For background information about the Lucene index, see “[Understanding Indexing](#)” in “[Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

- ♦ “[Starting and Stopping the Lucene Index Server](#)” on page 277
- ♦ “[Changing Your Lucene Configuration](#)” on page 277
- ♦ “[Optimizing the Lucene Index](#)” on page 278
- ♦ “[Rebuilding the Lucene Index](#)” on page 279
- ♦ “[Performing Maintenance on a High Availability Lucene Index](#)” on page 281

## Starting and Stopping the Lucene Index Server

- ♦ “[On Linux](#)” on page 277
- ♦ “[On Windows](#)” on page 277

### On Linux

Use the following commands to manually start and stop the Lucene Index Server:

```
/etc/init.d/indexserver start  
/etc/init.d/indexserver stop
```

### On Windows

Use the following command at a DOS command prompt to manually start the Lucene Index Server:

```
c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\  
indexserver-startup.bat
```

To stop the Lucene Index Server, close the command prompt window where you started the Lucene Index Server.

## Changing Your Lucene Configuration

The default Lucene Index Server configuration is appropriate for a medium-sized Micro Focus Vibe site. If you have a larger Vibe site, you can change its Lucene Index Server configuration by rerunning the Vibe Installation program, selecting **Reconfigure Settings**, then selecting **Advanced**. For instructions, see “[Changing Your Lucene Index Server Configuration](#)” in “[Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

# Optimizing the Lucene Index

If you notice that search performance in Micro Focus Vibe is becoming slower over time, you might want to optimize your Lucene index.

For a medium to large Vibe system, it is recommended that you run the optimization once a week. You should run the optimization during off hours or on weekends when the Vibe system is not being heavily used.

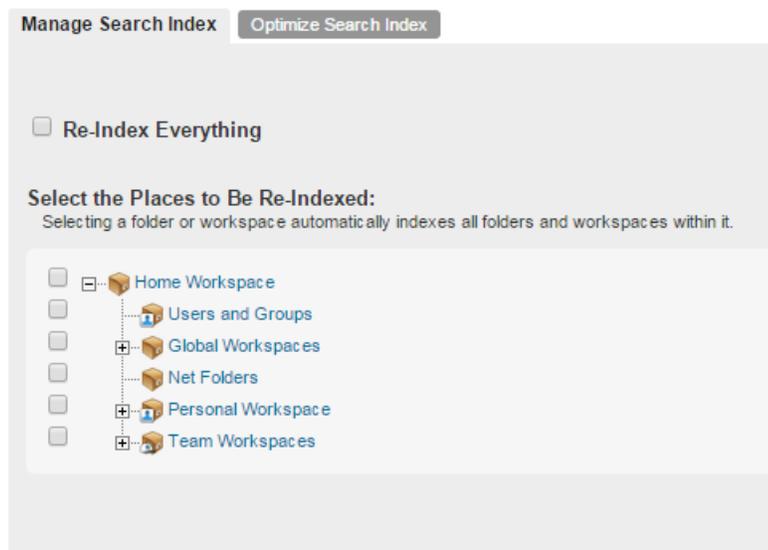
Optimizing the Lucene index does not repair a damaged or out-of-date index. To repair a damaged or out-of-date index, you must rebuild the index, as described in [“Rebuilding the Lucene Index” on page 279](#).

- ♦ [“Optimizing a Single Search Index” on page 278](#)
- ♦ [“Optimizing the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers” on page 279](#)

## Optimizing a Single Search Index

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **Management**, click **Search Index**.

[Search Index](#) 



- 4 Click the **Optimize Search Index** tab.
- 5 Select **Run Immediately** if you want to run the optimization right now.
- 6 Select **Run at Scheduled Time**, then specify the days and times that you want the optimization to occur.
- 7 Click **OK**.

## Optimizing the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Search Index** section, click **Index**.
- 4 Click the **Optimize Search Index** tab.
- 5 Select **Run Immediately** if you want to run the optimization right now.
- 6 Select **Run at Scheduled Time**, then specify the days and times that you want the optimization to occur.
- 7 Select each node that you want to optimize.
- 8 Click **OK**.

## Rebuilding the Lucene Index

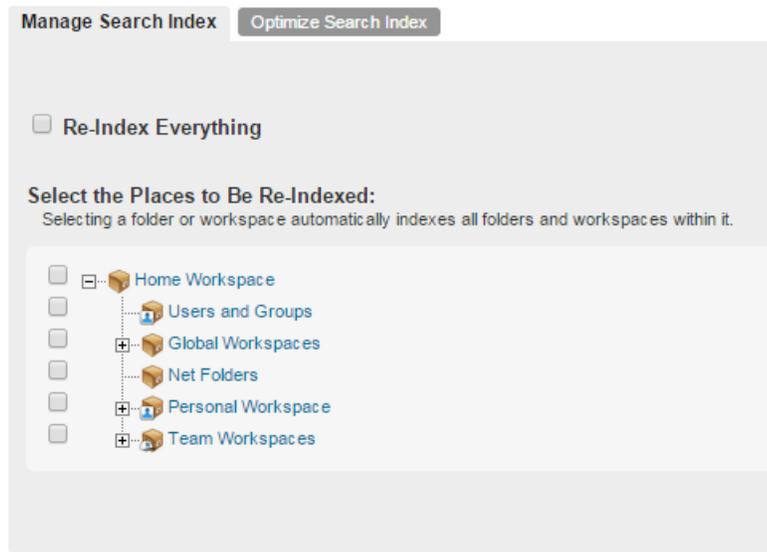
The Lucene index provides access to all data in your Micro Focus Vibe site. If it becomes damaged or out-of-date for some reason, you can rebuild it. Users might first notice a problem with the Lucene index if they cannot find information that they know should be available on the Vibe site. If you are running multiple Lucene Index Servers, follow the instructions in [“Performing Maintenance on a High Availability Lucene Index” on page 281](#).

The steps to reset the search index differ depending on whether you have multiple Lucene Index servers.

- ♦ [“Rebuilding a Single Search Index” on page 279](#)
- ♦ [“Rebuilding the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers” on page 280](#)

### Rebuilding a Single Search Index

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Management** section, click **Search Index**.



- 4 To reindex the entire Vibe site, select **Re-Index Everything**.

Depending on the size of your Vibe site, this can be a very time-consuming process.

or

Select one or more parts of your Vibe site to reindex.

- 5 Click **OK** to start the indexing.

Users can still access the Vibe site during the indexing process, but search results might not be accurate until the index has been completely rebuilt.

A message notifies you when indexing is complete.

## Rebuilding the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 In the **Search Index** section, click **Index**.

- 4 To reindex the entire Vibe site, select **Re-Index Everything**.

Depending on the size of your Vibe site, this can be a very time-consuming process.

or

Select one or more parts of your Vibe site to reindex.

- 5 Select each node that you want to re-index.

- 6 Click **OK** to start the indexing.

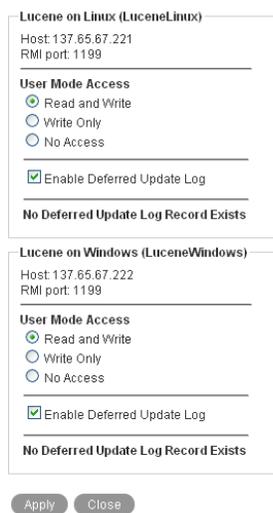
Users can still access the Vibe site during the indexing process, but search results might not be accurate until the index has been completely rebuilt.

A message notifies you when indexing is complete.

# Performing Maintenance on a High Availability Lucene Index

If you have a high availability Lucene configuration, you can take one Lucene node out of service for maintenance while other Lucene nodes continue to operate. Then you can synchronize the out-of-date Lucene node with the current indexing data.

- 1 Log in to the Micro Focus Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Take the Lucene node that needs maintenance out of service:
  - 2a Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
  - 2b Under **Search Index**, click **Nodes**.



The screenshot shows two configuration panels for Lucene nodes. The top panel is for 'Lucene on Linux (LuceneLinux)' with Host: 137.65.67.221 and RMI port: 1199. The bottom panel is for 'Lucene on Windows (LuceneWindows)' with Host: 137.65.67.222 and RMI port: 1199. Both panels have 'User Mode Access' with 'Read and Write' selected, 'Enable Deferred Update Log' checked, and 'No Deferred Update Log Record Exists'.

- 2c In the list, locate the node that needs maintenance.
- 2d Make sure that **Enable Deferred Update Log** is selected.
- 2e In the **User Mode Access** box, change **Read and Write** to **Write Only**.
- 2f Click **Apply**, then click **Close**.

The new setting is put into effect immediately, so that the Lucene node is no longer accessible to Vibe users.
- 3 Perform the needed maintenance on the Lucene server, then start the Lucene Index Server again.
- 4 Return the out-of-date Lucene node to full service:
  - 4a Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
  - 4b Under **Search Index**, click **Nodes**.

Lucene on Linux (LuceneLinux)

Host: 172.16.5.19  
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access

Read and Write  
 Write Only  
 No Access

Enable Deferred Update Log

**Deferred Update Log Records Exist**

Apply Deferred Update Log Records to the Index  
 Discard Deferred Update Log Records  
 Do Nothing

---

Lucene on Windows (LuceneWindows)

Host: 172.16.5.19  
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access

Read and Write  
 Write Only  
 No Access

Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Apply Close

The out-of-date Lucene node is flagged with **Deferred Update Log Records Exist**.

The **User Mode Access** option shows **Read and Write** because this is the last selected setting. If you are checking the Tomcat `catalina.out` file, as described in “[Observing Lucene Node Activity](#)” in “[Multi-Server Configurations and Clustering](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*, Vibe is not actually accessing the out-of-date Lucene node because it is out of sync with the Vibe site.

**4c** Select **Apply Deferred Update Log Records to the Index**, then click **Apply**.

The Deferred Update Log options disappear if the update is successful.

**4d** Click **Close**.

The Lucene node that was out of service has now been updated with current indexing data.

# 29 Managing Database Logs and File Archives

Vibe allows you to manage the frequency in which database logs are deleted, as well as whether deleted files are archived.

- ♦ [“Managing Database Logs” on page 283](#)
- ♦ [“Managing File Archiving” on page 284](#)

## Managing Database Logs

You can determine the frequency with which database logs (audit trail entries and change log entries) are deleted from the Vibe system.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Click **Database Logs and File Archiving**.
- 4 In the **Manage Database Logs** section, the following options are available:

**Automatically Delete Audit Trail Entries Older Than xx Days:** Enabled by default, this sets the maximum number of days that audit trail log entries are retained. The default is 0, meaning that entries are retained indefinitely.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Vibe uses audit trail entries to build activity and login reports. Removing older entries limits the possible time span for these reports. (For more information about these reports, see [“Generating Reports” on page 292](#).)

Also, the Vibe desktop application relies on audit trail data when doing full synchronizations.

---

**Enable the Change Log:** Enabled by default, this log tracks the edit history of folders, files, and entries, including the following actions:

- ♦ Adding, modifying, deleting, and moving of entries, folders, and workspaces.
- ♦ Changes to access control settings for entries, folders, and workspaces.
- ♦ Changes to workflows, including starting, stopping, changing states, and timeouts.

**Automatically Delete Change Log Entries Older Than xx Days:**

---

**CAUTION:** Generally speaking, Micro Focus doesn't recommend changing this setting because doing so causes entire Workflow histories to be removed.

---

You can specify the maximum number of days to keep change log entries before they are deleted. The default is 0, meaning that entry retention is unlimited.

Removing older log entries will limit how far back changes to an item can be traced.

- 5 Click **OK**.

# Managing File Archiving

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Click **Database Logs and File Archiving**.
- 4 In the **Manage File Archiving** section, the following options are available:
  - Enable Archiving of Deleted Files:** Select this option to move files to the Vibe archive when they are deleted.
  - Files in Mirrored Files folders cannot be archived.
- 5 Click **OK**.

# 30 Backing Up Vibe Data

Reliable backups are critical to the stability of your Micro Focus Vibe site.

- ◆ [“Locating Vibe Data to Back Up” on page 285](#)
- ◆ [“Scheduling and Performing Backups” on page 287](#)
- ◆ [“Restoring Vibe Data from Backup” on page 287](#)
- ◆ [“Manually Restoring Individual Entries” on page 287](#)

## Locating Vibe Data to Back Up

In order to keep adequate backups of your Micro Focus Vibe data, you must back up the following types of data.

- ◆ [“Vibe File Repository” on page 285](#)
- ◆ [“Vibe Database” on page 285](#)
- ◆ [“Lucene Index” on page 286](#)
- ◆ [“Certificates” on page 286](#)

## Vibe File Repository

---

Platform	Default Location
Linux:	<code>/var/opt/novell/teaming</code>
Windows:	<code>c:\Novell\Teaming\filerepository</code>

---

For more information, see [“Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Vibe Database

---

Database Server	Default Linux Location	Default Windows Location
MySQL	<code>/var/lib/mysql</code>	<code>c:\Program Files\MySQL\MySQL Server version\Data</code>
Microsoft SQL	N/A	<code>c:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\Data</code>
Oracle	N/A	N/A
PostgreSQL	<code>/var/lib/pgsql</code>	<code>c:\Program Files\PostgreSQL\PostgreSQL Server version\Data</code>

---

For more information, see [“Creating the Vibe Database on a Separate Server”](#) and [“Running Multiple Database Servers”](#) in [“Multi-Server Configurations and Clustering”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Lucene Index

---

Platform	Default Location
Linux:	<code>/var/opt/novell/teaming/lucene/zone_name</code>
Windows:	<code>c:\Novell\Teaming\lucene\kablank</code>

---

For more information, see [“Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Separate Server”](#) and [“Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers”](#) in [“Multi-Server Configurations and Clustering”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Certificates

If you have changed your password in the `server.xml` when creating a new keystore file (as described in [“Do Not Change the Password for the Keystore File”](#) on page 334), be aware that these changes are not preserved when you upgrade Vibe. You should make these changes again after upgrading Vibe rather than backing up the `server.xml` file.

- ♦ [“Linux Locations”](#) on page 286
- ♦ [“Windows Locations”](#) on page 286

## Linux Locations

---

Certificate Type	Default Location
Tomcat:	<code>/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf/.keystore</code>
Java:	<code>/usr/lib/jvm/java-version/jre/lib/security/cacerts</code>

---

## Windows Locations

---

Certificate Type	Default Location
Tomcat:	<code>c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\conf\keystore</code>
Java:	<code>c:\Program Files\Java\jreversion\lib\security\cacerts</code>

---

## Scheduling and Performing Backups

You do not need to bring your Micro Focus Vibe site down in order to perform backups. You might want to back up the Vibe file repository and the Vibe database every night, perhaps doing a full backup once a week and incremental backups on other days. You can back up the Lucene index whenever it is convenient. You can always reindex the Vibe site in order to re-create the Lucene index, but being able to restore one from backup can save time in case of an outage.

## Restoring Vibe Data from Backup

If you need to restore your Micro Focus Vibe site from a backup, restoring the same backup version for both the file repository and the database creates a Vibe site that is consistent within itself but might be missing information that was added after the backups were created. If you lose the file repository but not the database, you can restore the backed-up file repository and keep the more current database, but some entries then have files that are missing from the file repository. If you lose the database but not the file repository, you can run a report to identify entries created since the last database backup, as described in [“Content Modification Report” on page 298](#). You can then notify the affected Vibe users that they need to re-create the entries that are not available in the backup.

## Manually Restoring Individual Entries

All Vibe users can restore individual entries and attached files if the entry has been deleted but not yet purged. For information on how to do this, see [“Restoring Items from the Trash”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*.

If an entry has been deleted and also purged from the Vibe site, it can usually be recovered from the archive store with the help of Micro Focus Technical Support, but this is not an easy process. If an entry can be restored, it is not identical to the original entry in that the original entry ID is lost, the original creation and modification dates are lost, and some entry metadata is lost. Contact [Micro Focus Support \(http://www.novell.com/support\)](http://www.novell.com/support) for assistance.



# 31 Monitoring the Vibe Site

You can monitor activity on your Micro Focus Vibe site by using Vibe reports and log files. You can also use JMX to monitor Vibe and to perform certain management functions.

- ♦ [“Using JMX to Monitor the Vibe Site” on page 289](#)
- ♦ [“Generating Reports” on page 292](#)
- ♦ [“Using Log Files” on page 306](#)
- ♦ [“Checking the Vibe Site Software Version” on page 308](#)

## Using JMX to Monitor the Vibe Site

Java Management Extensions (JMX) is a Java technology for managing and monitoring applications, system objects, devices, and services. It is a lightweight, non-intrusive mechanism for gathering and monitoring useful runtime statistics. You can use JMX in addition to other tools that are included in the Vibe product to monitor your Vibe site.

- ♦ [“Installing and Configuring JMX for Vibe” on page 289](#)
- ♦ [“Requiring Authentication When Accessing Vibe through JMX” on page 290](#)
- ♦ [“Using JConsole to Monitor the Vibe Site” on page 291](#)

## Installing and Configuring JMX for Vibe

- 1 Install Vibe as described in the [Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide](#).
- 2 Navigate to the following directory on the Vibe server:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\conf`

- 3 Open the `vibe.management.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Uncomment the following line:

```
#com.sun.management.jmxremote.port=8642
```

If this port is already in use on your server, change the port number to a port that is not in use.

- 5 (Recommended) To require authentication when accessing Vibe remotely through JMX, change the value of the following property to `true`:

```
com.sun.management.jmxremote.authentication=false
```

---

**IMPORTANT:** If you require authentication when accessing Vibe remotely through JMX, you must specify a password and restrict access to the password file in order for JMX to run, as described in [“Requiring Authentication When Accessing Vibe through JMX” on page 290](#).

---

- 6 By default, SSL is not enabled when accessing Vibe through JMX. If the JMX user is accessing Vibe from within the firewall (which is recommended), there is no reason to require an SSL connection. If SSL is required by your organization, you can enable it.

To require an SSL connection when accessing Vibe remotely through JMX, change the value of the following property to `true`:

```
com.sun.management.jmxremote.ssl=false
```

If you require an SSL connection when accessing Vibe through JMX, you must also set up a certificate and configure SSL as instructed in the [online JMX documentation \(http://download.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/management/agent.html\)](http://download.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/management/agent.html).

- 7 Save your changes, then close the text editor.
- 8 Stop and restart the Vibe server.

## Requiring Authentication When Accessing Vibe through JMX

For security reasons, you must configure JMX to require authentication when accessing Vibe. In a clustered environment where a firewall is protecting your entire system but where there is no firewall running between individual nodes (which is the recommended configuration), it is extremely important that authentication is required when accessing Vibe through JMX in order to prevent an unauthorized entity from gaining access to the Vibe system.

After you have required authentication for the JMX user as discussed in [“Installing and Configuring JMX for Vibe” on page 289](#), you need to finish setting up the authentication:

- ♦ [“Specifying a Password for One or Both JMX User Types” on page 290](#)
- ♦ [“Restricting Access to the Password File” on page 291](#)

## Specifying a Password for One or Both JMX User Types

The properties discussed in this section represent JMX user types that can have access to Vibe through JMX. These are not Vibe users, but rather are JMX users. These users are not reflected anywhere in your Vibe system.

- 1 Navigate to the following directory on the Vibe server:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf
```

```
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\conf
```

- 2 Open the `jmxremote.password` file in a text editor.
- 3 Uncomment one or both of the user types, depending on whether you want the JMX user to have Read Only access or Read/Write access through JMX. If you plan to use only one user type (for example, Read/Write), leave the other one commented out.

**Read Only access:** Allows the JMX user to monitor or view Vibe data through JMX.

To configure the JMX user to have Read Only access, uncomment the following user type:

```
# monitorVibeRole XYZ
```

**Read/Write access:** Allows the JMX user to perform state-changing actions such as initiating garbage collection of the JVM, changing an attribute of an MBean, or executing an operation on an MBean, as well as monitoring and viewing Vibe data through JMX.

To configure the JMX user to have Read/Write access, uncomment the following user type:

```
# controlVibeRole A&B
```

- 4 Replace the `XYZ` and/or `A&B` values to a secure password. For example, if you want to change the password for Read/Write access to `Novell`, the line would look like the following:

```
controlVibeRole Novell
```

Passwords are case-sensitive.

- 5 Save the `jmxremote.password` file and close the text editor.

## Restricting Access to the Password File

The `jmxremote.password` file displays the user names of the JMX users who can access the Vibe site through JMX, together with the passwords for these users, in plain text. For this reason it is important that you restrict access to this file to only the file owner, which is the operating system account where the Vibe server is running.

- ♦ [“Restricting Access to the Password File on Linux” on page 291](#)
- ♦ [“Restricting Access to the Password File on Windows” on page 291](#)

### Restricting Access to the Password File on Linux

If your Vibe server is running on a Linux operating system, the file permissions are changed automatically when Vibe is installed. (The Vibe program runs this command: `chmod 600 vibe.jmxremote.password`.)

### Restricting Access to the Password File on Windows

If your Vibe server is running on a Windows operating system, you must change the permissions manually after Vibe is installed. For instructions on how to set file permissions on Windows, see [How to Secure a Password File on Microsoft Windows Systems \(http://download.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/management/security-windows.html\)](http://download.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/management/security-windows.html).

## Using JConsole to Monitor the Vibe Site

JConsole is a Java monitoring tool that comes with JDK. You can use JConsole to monitor your Vibe site through JMX.

- ♦ [“Starting JConsole” on page 291](#)
- ♦ [“Using JConsole to Monitor Vibe” on page 292](#)
- ♦ [“Using Zenoss Core to Supplement JConsole Monitoring” on page 292](#)

## Starting JConsole

Because JConsole requires a considerable amount of system resources in order to run, you should not run JConsole from the same machine where Vibe is running. The section describes how to connect JConsole to Vibe from a remote machine.

The machine that you run JConsole from must have a JDK installed.

- 1 Navigate to the location where your JDK is installed, then in the `bin` directory launch the following file appropriate for your operating system:

Linux: `jconsole`

Windows: `jconsole.exe`

The New Connection dialog box is displayed.

- 2 Select **Remote Process**, then specify the hostname and port number of the server where Vibe is running.
- 3 In the **Username** and **Password** fields, specify the user name and password that you created in “[Specifying a Password for One or Both JMX User Types](#)” on page 290.
- 4 Click **Connect**.

The Java Monitoring & Management Console is displayed.

## Using JConsole to Monitor Vibe

JConsole contains several tabs that help you monitor various aspects of your server. Information specific to Vibe is found in the **MBeans** tab in the **Vibe** folder. For specific information about the other tabs in JConsole, see [Using JConsole \(http://download.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/management/jconsole.html\)](http://download.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/technotes/guides/management/jconsole.html).

## Using Zenoss Core to Supplement JConsole Monitoring

Zenoss Core is not a replacement for JConsole, but it can provide additional monitoring functionality. Zenoss provides the following capabilities:

- ♦ Define alerts on an MBean attribute based on the attribute's acceptable value range, without relying on the JMX notification mechanism.
- ♦ Display performance graphs to view how data points change over time (JConsole displays only the current snapshot).

For more information about Zenoss, see [Zenoss Core - Enterprise IT Monitoring \(http://sourceforge.net/projects/zenoss/\)](http://sourceforge.net/projects/zenoss/).

## Generating Reports

Most Micro Focus Vibe reports are created in CSV format, so that you can import them into a spreadsheet and easily manipulate the data to suit your needs. The default CSV filename is `report.csv`. If you create multiple reports without manually renaming them, the default filename is incremented (`report-n.csv`).

The maximum report length is 10,000 rows, at which point the report is truncated.

The default location to save the report varies by platform:

Linux: `/tmp`

Windows: Your current Windows default directory

- ♦ “[Login Report](#)” on page 293
- ♦ “[User Activity Report](#)” on page 294
- ♦ “[User Access Report](#)” on page 296

- ◆ “Content Modification Report” on page 298
- ◆ “Data Quota Exceeded Report” on page 300
- ◆ “Data Quota Highwater Exceeded Report” on page 301
- ◆ “Disk Usage Report” on page 302
- ◆ “Email Report” on page 303
- ◆ “License Report” on page 304
- ◆ “XSS Report” on page 305

## Login Report

The Login report lists the Vibe users who have logged in to the Vibe site during a specified period of time. In addition, it can include a dated list of every login by each user.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **Login Report**.

### Reports

**Run a Report:** Login Report ▼

*Reports may be truncated if too large.*

### Report on User Login Information (CSV format)

#### Report on Login Activity Between

and

People

Remove

Summarize Login Entries  
Sort report by: --none-- ▼

List All Login Entries  
Sort report by: Login Date ▼

Create Report

- 5 Specify the date range for the Login report.
  - 6 Leave the **People** field blank to list all user logins.
- or

In the **People** field, begin typing the first name of a Vibe user, then in the drop-down list of names that match what you have typed, select a user whose logins you want to be reported. Repeat this process to include multiple users in the report.

- 7 Select the type of Login report that you want to generate.

**Summarize Login Entries:** Lists how many times the selected users have logged into the Vibe site. In the **Sort Report By** drop-down list, select **User**, **Last Login**, or **Number of Logins** to organize the data.

**List All Login Entries:** Lists each individual user login and includes the following data about the action:

- ◆ First name
- ◆ Last name
- ◆ User name
- ◆ Date
- ◆ Time

In the **Sort report by** drop-down list, select **Login Date** or **User** to organize the data most helpfully.

- 8 Click **Create Report** to generate the Login report.

- 9 Select a text editor to view the report in, then click **OK**.

For a short report, you might obtain the information you need by viewing the CSV file.

- 10 (Optional) Save the CSV file with a meaningful name in a convenient location, then retrieve it into a spreadsheet program for further examination.

## User Activity Report

The User Activity report lists how many times specified users have viewed, added, modified, or deleted content on the Vibe site during a specified period of time. In addition, it can include the date and time of each action, along with the location of the action.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under System, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **User Activity Report**.

## Reports

**Run a Report:**

*Reports may be truncated if too large.*

### Report of User Activity (CSV format)

#### Report on User Activity Between

The screenshot shows a web form for generating a User Activity Report. At the top, there are two date input fields: "Feb 20, 2015" and "Mar 20, 2015", separated by the word "and". Below this is a "People" section with a text input field and a dropdown list. A "Remove" button is located to the right of the dropdown. At the bottom, there are two radio button options: "Activity Summary" (which is selected) and "Report Workspace or Folder Activity (view, add, modify, delete)". A "Create Report" button is at the very bottom.

5 Specify the date range for the User Activity report.

6 Leave the **Select User** field blank to list all user activity.

or

In the **Select User** field, start typing the first name of a Vibe user.

In the drop-down list of names that match what you have typed, select a user whose activity you want to be reported. Repeat this process to include additional users.

7 Select the type of User Activity report that you want to generate.

**Activity Summary:** Lists how many times the selected users have performed the following actions in the Vibe site:

- ◆ View
- ◆ Add
- ◆ Edit
- ◆ Delete (purge)
- ◆ Pre-Delete (delete but not purge)
- ◆ Restore (restore a deleted item that has not been purged)

**Report Workspace or Folder Activity:** Lists each individual user action and includes the following data about the action:

- ◆ User
- ◆ Activity
- ◆ Date
- ◆ Time
- ◆ Folder
- ◆ Entry title
- ◆ Entry type

- 8 Click **Create Report** to generate the User Activity report.
- 9 Select a text editor to view the report in, then click **OK**.  
For a short report, you might obtain the information you need by viewing the CSV file.
- 10 (Optional) Save the CSV file with a meaningful name in a convenient location, then retrieve it into a spreadsheet program for further examination.

## User Access Report

The User Access report lists the locations on the Vibe site where a specified user has access rights. In addition, you can view, and if necessary, change or remove the access rights for any location. This report is especially useful on Vibe sites where Guest user access has been granted, as described in [“Setting Up Guest Access for the Vibe Site” on page 105](#).

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under System, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **User Access Report**.

### Reports

**Run a Report:**

*Reports may be truncated if too large.*

### Report on the Objects a User has Access To

Select a user to view their accessible objects in the system.

User:

- 5 In the **User** field, begin typing the first name of a Vibe user.
- 6 In the drop-down list of names that match what you have typed, select the user whose site access you want to be reported.

Run a Report:

Reports may be truncated if too large.

Report on the Objects a User has Access To

Select a user to view their accessible objects in the system.

User:

Select an object's name to change the access control rights on that object.

Name	Type
/Home Workspace/Personal Workspaces/Guest (guest)	Workspace
/Home Workspace/Personal Workspaces/Janet Desoto (jdesoto)/Blog	Folder
/Home Workspace/Personal Workspaces/Janet Desoto (jdesoto)/Calendar	Folder
/Home Workspace/Personal Workspaces/Janet Desoto (jdesoto)/Guestbook	Folder
/Home Workspace/Personal Workspaces/Janet Desoto (jdesoto)/Photo Album	Folder
/Home Workspace/Personal Workspaces/Janet Desoto (jdesoto)/Tasks	Folder
/Home Workspace/Personal Workspaces/Janet Desoto (jdesoto)	Workspace

In this example, the Guest user has access to the Guest workspace and also to Janet DeSoto's personal workspace. This could be appropriate if Janet DeSoto's job is to maintain a publicly available workspace, but would not be appropriate if the Guest access has been granted in error.

7 (Conditional) If you want to change the current access:

7a Click the name of a location to display the Configure Access Control page for that location.

Configure Access Control

Configure Access Control

Close

Workspace: Janet Desoto (jdesoto)  
 Workspace Owner: Janet Desoto(jdesoto) [edit]  
 Home Workspace // Personal Workspaces // Janet Desoto (jdesoto)

This folder does not inherit its access control settings from its parent.

Inherit role membership from the parent folder or workspace?  
 yes  no

Sharing

This workspace has not been shared.

✓ designates the access control setting of the parent workspace

Add User Names from Clipboard

		Add a Role										
		Allow Sharing With Internal Users	Allow Sharing With External Users	Allow Forwarding of Sharing Rights	Allow Sharing With The Public	Allow Sharing File Links	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator		
	Owner of Workspace or Folder	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>										
	Team Members	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>						
Add a Group		Group Title	Group Name	Allow Sharing With Internal Users	Allow Sharing With External Users	Allow Forwarding of Sharing Rights	Allow Sharing With The Public	Allow Sharing File Links	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	All Internal Users <sup>1</sup>		allusers <sup>1</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>				
Add a User		User Title	User Id	Allow Sharing With Internal Users	Allow Sharing With External Users	Allow Forwarding of Sharing Rights	Allow Sharing With The Public	Allow Sharing File Links	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
	Guest		guest	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>				
Add an Application Group		Application Group Title	Application Group Name	Allow Sharing With Internal Users	Allow Sharing With External Users	Allow Forwarding of Sharing Rights	Allow Sharing With The Public	Allow Sharing File Links	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no application groups--												
Add an Application		Application Title	Application Name	Allow Sharing With Internal Users	Allow Sharing With External Users	Allow Forwarding of Sharing Rights	Allow Sharing With The Public	Allow Sharing File Links	Visitor	Participant	Team Member	Workspace and Folder Administrator
--no applications--												

In this example, the Guest user has been granted Visitor access to Janet DeSoto's personal workspace.

**7b** Select or deselect access rights as needed.

**7c** Click **Save Changes**, then click **Close** to return to the User Access Report page

**7d** Rerun the report to view the results of your changes.

For example, if you removed the Guest access rights from Janet DeSoto's personal workspace, her workspace is no longer listed in the User Access report for the Guest user.

Reports

---

**Run a Report:**

*Reports may be truncated if too large.*

---

**Report on the Objects a User has Access To**

Select a user to view their accessible objects in the system.

User:

---

Select an object's name to change the access control rights on that object.

Name	Type
/Home Workspace/Personal Workspaces/Guest (guest)	Workspace

**8** (Conditional) If you want to save the user access information, select it and copy it into a text editor.

**9** Click **Close** when you are finished checking user access rights.

## Content Modification Report

The Content Modification report lists changes to workspaces, folders, and folder entries, as well as users, groups, access rights, and workflows. By generating a Content Modification report, you can determine who has performed any of the following actions:

- ◆ Added, modified, moved, or deleted a workspace
- ◆ Added, modified, moved, or deleted a folder
- ◆ Added, modified, renamed, or deleted a file or one of its versions
- ◆ Added, modified, moved, or deleted an entry

For purposes of this report, users and groups are handled as if they are folder entries.

- ◆ Started or modified a workflow
- ◆ Modified or deleted access rights

The Content Modification report can also help you recover data that has been accidentally deleted.

- 1** Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2** Determine the exact name of the workspace, folder, file entry, and so on where you want to check for content modifications.
- 3** Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 4** Under System, click **Reports**.
- 5** In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **Content Modification Log**.

## Reports

**Run a Report:**

*Reports may be truncated if too large.*

Select a folder or workspace, then select an entry within that folder or workspace.

Folder or Workspace:	Binder Id:
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Entry:	Entity Id:
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	Entity Type:
	<input type="text" value="folderEntry"/>
Filter by operation:	
<input type="text" value="&lt;Show All Changes&gt;"/>	
<input type="button" value="Create Report"/>	

- 6 Fill in the fields to specify where to check for content modifications and the type of modifications to check for:

**Folder or Workspace:** Start typing the name of a folder or workspace. In the drop-down list of names that match what you have typed, select the folder or workspace where you want to check for content modifications. The internal ID of the folder or workspace is displayed for reference.

**Entry:** (Optional) To restrict the content modification check to a specific entry in a folder, start typing text in the title of the entry. In the drop-down list of entry titles that match what you have typed, select the entry where you want to check for content modifications. The internal ID of the entry is displayed for reference.

**Entity Type:** (Optional) To further restrict the content modification check, select one of the following:

- ◆ Workspace (not the contents of the workspace, but the workspace itself)
- ◆ Folder (not the contents of the folder, but the folder itself)
- ◆ Folder entry (the contents of the folder entry)
- ◆ Profiles (the contents of the Personal Workspaces folder where there is a personal workspace for each user)
- ◆ User (the contents of a user's personal profile, such as the user's name, email address, and locale)
- ◆ Group (the contents of the group)

**Filter by Operation:** Further restrict the content modification check by selecting a specific action performed on the selected workspace, folder, or entry (add, modify, rename, delete, and so on).

- 7 Click **Create Report** to generate the Content Modification report.

The results are displayed as an XML file.

```

<folder databaseId="59" logVersion="1" operation="addBinder" modifiedBy="jchavez"
modifiedOn="Fri Feb 18 16:14:16 GMT 2011">
  <_entryAcl>all</_entryAcl>
  <_folderAcl>2 own team</_folderAcl>
  <_teamAcl>xx</_teamAcl>
  <historyStamp author="8" when="18 Feb 2011 16:14:16 GMT" name="created"/>
  <historyStamp author="8" when="18 Feb 2011 16:14:16 GMT" name="modified"/>
  <property name="parentBinder">58</property>
  <property name="entryDef">402883c6115753d8011157619e35000b</property>
  <attribute name="iconName" type="string">/icons/folder_blue_blog.gif</attribute>
  <attribute name="title" type="string">Blog</attribute>
  <property name="library">>false</property>
  <property name="inheritFunctionMembership">>true</property>
  <property name="inheritDefinitions">>false</property>
  <property name="inheritTeamMembers">>true</property>
  <property name="uniqueTitle">>false</property>
  <property name="teamMembers"/>
</folder>

```

- 8 (Conditional) If the results are too extensive, restrict the scope of the content modification check until you locate the modification that you are seeking.
- 9 Click **Close** when you are finished checking for content modifications.

A specialized use of the Content Modification report is to restore accidentally deleted data. For example, you can use the following steps to recover an accidentally deleted folder entry:

- 1 Run the Content Modification report to list all entry deletions in the folder where the entry was accidentally deleted.
- 2 Record the entry ID of the deleted entry.
- 3 Run the Content Modification report on the entry ID, selecting **folderEntry** in the **Entity Type** field.
- 4 Use the modification history of the entry to reconstruct the accidentally deleted entry.

## Data Quota Exceeded Report

The Data Quota Exceeded report lists individual users who have exceeded the data quota. The report provides a spreadsheet with the following information for each user:

- ♦ **Data Quota Used (MB):** Displays the amount of disk space the user is currently using.
- ♦ **Data Quota:** Displays the user's individual quota if one has been set.  
For information on how to set a quota for individual users, see [“Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#).
- ♦ **Max Group Quota (MB):** Displays the largest data quota for any group that the user is a member of. Users are assigned the highest of all data quotas for any group for which they are a member.
- ♦ **Default Data Quota (MB):** Displays the site-wide default quota.  
For information on how to set a default data quota, see [“Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#).

To generate the Data Quota Exceeded report:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **Data Quota Exceeded Report**.

### Data Quota Exceeded Report

Report of users exceeding their data quota (CSV format).

Create Report

- 5 Click **Create Report** to generate the report.  
The report is launched in a spreadsheet.

## Data Quota Highwater Exceeded Report

The Data Quota Highwater Exceeded report lists individual users who have exceeded the data quota high-water mark. The report provides the following information for each user:

- ♦ **Data Quota Used (MB):** Displays the amount of disk space the user is currently using.
- ♦ **Data Quota:** Displays the user's individual quota if one has been set.  
For information on how to set a quota for individual users, see [“Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#).
- ♦ **Max Group Quota (MB):** Displays the largest data quota for any group that the user is a member of. Users are assigned the highest of all data quotas for any group for which they are a member.
- ♦ **Default Data Quota (MB):** Displays the site-wide default quota.  
For information on how to set a default data quota, see [“Managing Workspace and Folder Data Quotas” on page 239](#).

To generate the Data Quota Highwater Exceeded report:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under System, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **Data Quota Highwater Exceeded Report**.

### Data Quota Highwater Exceeded Report

Report of users exceeding the highwater percentage of their data quota (CSV format).

Create Report

- 5 Click **Create Report** to generate the report.  
The report is launched in a spreadsheet.

# Disk Usage Report

The Disk Usage report lists the amount of disk space for workspaces on the Vibe site by user, by workspace, or by both. In addition, you can restrict the reporting to only those workspaces that exceed a specified number of megabytes.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under System, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **Disk Usage Report**.



The screenshot shows a web interface for generating a Disk Usage Report. At the top, there is a teal header with the text "Disk Usage Report". Below this, the subtitle reads "Report of User and Workspace Disk Usage (CSV format)". The main configuration area contains three radio button options: "Total Usage by User" (which is selected), "Total Usage by Workspace", and "Total Usage by User and Workspace". Below these options is a text input field labeled "Include only users or workspaces with usage greater than:" containing the number "0", followed by "MB". At the bottom of the configuration area is a button labeled "Create Report".

- 5 Select the type of Disk Usage report that you want to generate.

**Total Usage by User:** Lists all Vibe users whose disk space usage is above the amount specified in the **Usage Greater Than** field.

**Total Usage by Workspace:** Lists all workspaces where disk space usage is above the amount specified in the **Usage Greater Than** field. Disk space usage for each folder in each workspace is listed separately. The data is organized by workspace and folder ID.

**Total Usage by User and Workspace:** Combines the user and workspace data into a single report.

**Include only users or workspaces with usage greater than:** Specify the number of megabytes above which you want to list disk space usage. This eliminates smaller disk space usages from the report.

- 6 Click **Create Report** to generate the Disk Usage report.
- 7 Select a text editor to view the report in, then click **OK**.

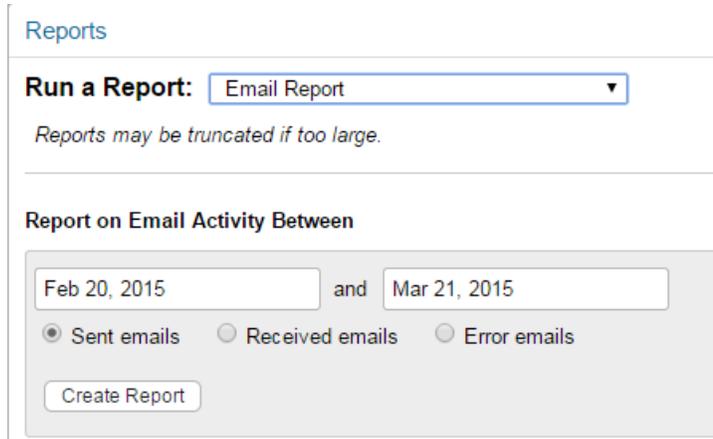
For a short report, you might obtain the information you need by viewing the CSV file.

- 8 (Optional) Save the CSV file with a meaningful name in a convenient location, then retrieve it into a spreadsheet program for further examination.
- 9 Click **Close** when you are finished checking disk space usage.

# Email Report

The Email Report lists mail messages that have been sent from and into the Vibe site. It also lists email errors that have been encountered.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under System, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **Email Report**.



- 5 Specify the date range for the Email report.
- 6 Select whether you want a report on email that was sent from Vibe, email that was sent into Vibe, or email errors that occurred.
- 7 Click **Create Report**.

The report contains the following information:

**Send Date:** Date when the email was sent.

**From Address:** Address that the email was sent from.

This is the email address that the user has defined in his or her user profile.

**To Address:** Address that the email was sent to.

This is the email address if the message was sent from Vibe, or it is the folder or workspace if the message was sent into Vibe.

**Type:** For messages that are sent from Vibe, this is the action that caused the message to be sent. For example, `workflowNotification` indicates that the email message was sent as a result of a workflow notification. For messages that are sent into Vibe, this is `emailPosting`, which indicates that the email message was converted to a Vibe entry via the internal Email Posting Agent.

**Status:** Status of the message, such as Sent or Received.

**Subject Line:** Subject line of the message.

**Attached Files:** Filename of any attachments that were included in the email message.

**Errors:** Any errors that are associated with the email message.

# License Report

The License report lists information about your Vibe license, as well as information about the number of users in your Vibe site and how many of those users have accessed the site.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under System, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **License Report**.

## Reports

**Run a Report:** License Report ▼

*Reports may be truncated if too large.*

### Report on License Activity Between

Feb 20, 2015 and Mar 20, 2015

Create Report

- 5 Specify the date range for the License report, then click **Create Report**.

The License report lists the following information:

- ♦ Vibe version
- ♦ User access information
  - ♦ **Current Number of Local Users:** Number of local users accessing the system at the precise moment when you view the license report
  - ♦ **Current Number of External Users:** Number of external users accessing the system at the precise moment when you view the license report
  - ♦ **Current Number of LDAP Synchronized Users:** Number of LDAP-synchronized users accessing the system at the precise moment when you view the license report
  - ♦ **Current Active User Count:** Number of users who have accessed the Vibe system in the past 365 days.
  - ♦ **Guest Access Enabled:** Displays whether Guest access is currently enabled on the Vibe site.
- ♦ License information
  - ♦ License key type
  - ♦ Date the license key was issued
  - ♦ Date range when the license key is valid
- ♦ Allowed number of registered users during the date range
- ♦ Allowed number of external users during the date range

- ◆ List of dates in the date range with the following user license information:
  - ◆ **Local and External Users:** The user account was created within Vibe, and is not being synchronized from an LDAP directory.
  - ◆ **Users Synchronized from LDAP:** The user account was created from an LDAP source. (Only synchronized accounts that are not marked as Deleted or Disabled are counted.)
  - ◆ **Users Who Used Vibe During the Previous 365 Days:** Users who have logged in at least once in the past 365 days.

User logins are counted only after your Vibe system is upgraded to Vibe 3 or later. The number of users who have logged in is always 0 for dates prior to the upgrade to Vibe 3 or later.

To see how many people accessed the Vibe site prior to the upgrade to Vibe 3 or later, or just for more detailed information in this area, run the Login report. For more information about the Login report, see [“Login Report” on page 293](#).

The Vibe software does not limit the number of Vibe users that you can create, but sites where Vibe licenses have been purchased and the Vibe software installed are periodically audited against their purchased number of licenses.

- 6 Click **Close** when you are finished reviewing the License report.

For information on how to install a new Vibe license, see [“Updating Your Vibe License”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## XSS Report

Cross-site scripting (XSS) is a client-side computer attack that is aimed at web applications. Because XSS attacks can pose a major security threat, Micro Focus Vibe contains a built-in security filter that protects against XSS vulnerabilities. For more general information about XSS, see [“Securing the Vibe Site against XSS” on page 353](#).

The XSS report in Vibe lets you remove potentially harmful XSS threats from your Vibe site.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under System, click **Reports**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **XSS Report**.

**Reports**

**Run a Report:** XSS Report

*Reports may be truncated if too large.*

This report scans the binders and entries in each selected binder looking for potential without any noticeable effect. The scan takes about 1 minute for every 1000 entries.

Select the binders to be checked:

- Home Workspace
- Global Workspaces
- Personal Workspaces
- Team Workspaces

**Create Report**

- 5 Select the workspace or folder where you want to run the report. Any sub-workspaces or sub-folders of the workspace or folder that you select are included in the report.
- 6 Click **Create Report**.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Because XSS attacks often are designed to wait for users with extra privileges (such as the administrator) to view the page where the attack was set, it is important that you don't navigate to the page after you run the report.

For information about how to run the XSS report and safely remove XSS threats, see "TID 7007381: Running the XSS Report in Micro Focus Vibe" in the [Micro Focus Support Knowledgebase](http://www.novell.com/support) (<http://www.novell.com/support>).

---

## Using Log Files

- ♦ "Vibe Log File" on page 306
- ♦ "Tomcat Log File" on page 307

### Vibe Log File

The Micro Focus Vibe log file (`ssf.log`) is available from the Vibe site.

- 1 Log in as the Vibe site administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .
- 3 Under **System**, click **Reports**, click **System Error Logs**.
- 4 In the **Run a Report** drop-down list, select **System Error Logs**.
- 5 Click **Download Log**.

You are prompted to open or save a file named `logfiles.zip`, which contains the current `appserver.log` file. This file contains any stack traces or warning messages because of unexpected events encountered by the Vibe program.

## 6 Save the `appserver.log` file to a convenient location on the Vibe server.

This file is helpful when you need assistance resolving a problem with your Vibe site.

If you are unable to start Vibe and therefore cannot retrieve the log file as described above, the Vibe log file is also available in the following directory of your Vibe installation:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/logs`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\`  
`webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\logs`

## Tomcat Log File

In addition to the Micro Focus Vibe error log file (`ssf.log`), the Tomcat error log file (`catalina.out` on Linux and `stdout_*.log` on Windows when Vibe runs as a service) is also useful. The Tomcat log file contains more information than the Vibe log file, because it includes problems encountered by Tomcat outside of the Vibe application itself. The location of the Tomcat log file varies by platform:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\logs`

---

**NOTE:** When Vibe and Tomcat run as a Windows application, rather than as a Windows service, the information displayed in the command prompt window where you started Vibe is your only source of information. The data displayed in the command prompt window is not logged by Tomcat on Windows.

---

The Tomcat log file provides the following useful information:

- ♦ At the top, the Tomcat log file lists Tomcat startup messages.
- ♦ The System Properties section lists information about the supporting software packages that Tomcat relies on (for example, Java) and information about their current location and configuration.
- ♦ The System Environment section lists the currently set environment variables (for example, `HOSTNAME`, `PATH`, and `JAVA_HOME`).
- ♦ Exception and error data includes sufficient information for you to determine what user was trying to perform what action in what location on the Vibe site, to help you isolate and reproduce the problem.

---

**NOTE:** The Micro Focus Vibe product name prior to version 3 is Novell Teaming. If your Vibe site was originally installed as a Teaming 2.0 or Vibe site, the root of your site is referred to as `org.kablinc` in the Tomcat error log. If you updated from a Teaming 1.0 site or a Teaming 2.0 beta site, the root of your site is referred to as `com.liferay`.

---

This file is helpful when you need assistance resolving a problem with your Vibe site.

## Adjusting the Log Level for the Tomcat Log File

The log levels for various Tomcat functions are set in the `log4j.properties` file. Each type of information that is logged can have a log level of `INFO`, `WARN`, `ERROR`, `FATAL`, or `DEBUG`, depending on the type and quantity of information that you want logged. Some lines in the

`log4j.properties` file are commented out with a pound sign (`#`), so that no information of that type is gathered. You can change the log level for each type of information and comment or uncomment lines to adjust the information gathered in the Tomcat log file to meet your troubleshooting needs.

- 1 Open the `log4j.properties` file in a text editor.

The location of the `log4j.properties` file varies by platform.

Linux: `/opt/novell/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\conf`

- 2 Change log level settings as needed for the type of information you want to gather.
- 3 Comment or uncomment lines, depending on the type of information you want to gather.
- 4 Save the `log4j.properties` file, then exit the text editor.
- 5 Stop Vibe, then start Vibe to put the new logging level into effect.

## Checking the Vibe Site Software Version

To display the version number and software date of the Micro Focus Vibe software:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the **Administration Console** icon .

The Vibe software version and date are displayed.

# 32 Reconfiguring the Vibe Site

Many aspects of your Micro Focus Vibe site can be changed when you are logged in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator. Some aspects of reconfiguring the Vibe site require you to rerun the Vibe installation program, as described in [“Setting Configuration Options after Installation”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

- ♦ [“Basic Installation”](#) on page 309
- ♦ [“Advanced Installation”](#) on page 309

## Basic Installation

The configuration settings that can be changed using a Basic installation are:

Default Locale for Micro Focus Vibe

Network Information

Host

HTTP Port and Secure HTTP Port

Listen Port and Secure Listen Port

Shutdown Port and AJP Port

WebDAV Authentication Method

Database Selection

Database Type

JDBC URL

Credentials

Java Heap Size

Outbound Email Configuration

Protocol

Host, Port, and Time Zone

User name, Password, and Authentication

Allow Sending Email to All Users

Inbound Email Configuration

Internal SMTP Email Server

SMTP Bind Address

SMTP Port

Announce TLS

For information about these basic configuration options, see [“Planning a Basic \(Single-server\) Vibe Installation”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Advanced Installation

An Advanced installation includes the options available in a Basic installation, as well as the following additional options:

## Web Services

- Enable WSS Authentication
- Enable Basic Authentication
- Enable Token-Based Authentication
- Enable Anonymous Access

## Lucene Configuration

### RSS Configuration

- Max Elapsed Days
- Max Inactive Days

### Presence Configuration

### Reverse Proxy Configuration

- Access Gateway Address
- Logout URL
- WebDAV Access Gateway Address

### Integration with IIS for Windows Authentication

### Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration

### Vibe Cluster Configuration

For information about these advanced configuration options, see [“Planning an Advanced Vibe Installation”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.



# Interoperability

Micro Focus Vibe can be used in conjunction with various other software products. By incorporating these products into your Vibe system, you can add functionality, increase security, and maximize the value of Vibe.

- ◆ [Chapter 33, “NetIQ Access Manager,” on page 313](#)
- ◆ [Chapter 34, “Internet Information Services \(IIS\),” on page 315](#)
- ◆ [Chapter 35, “Micro Focus GroupWise,” on page 317](#)
- ◆ [Chapter 36, “GroupWise Messenger,” on page 319](#)
- ◆ [Chapter 37, “Skype,” on page 321](#)
- ◆ [Chapter 38, “Twitter and Other Remote Applications,” on page 323](#)
- ◆ [Chapter 39, “YouTube,” on page 325](#)



# 33 NetIQ Access Manager

Using Micro Focus Vibe in conjunction with NetIQ Access Manager adds enterprise-level security to your Vibe system.

Only a version of Access Manager that supports Transport Layer Security (TLS) can be used when using Access Manager with Vibe. For information about which versions of Access Manager support TLS and how to enable it, see [Enabling Transport Layer Security 1.1 and 1.2 for Access Manager](https://www.netiq.com/documentation/netiqaccessmanager4/enable_tls_nam40/data/enable_tls_nam40.html#) ([https://www.netiq.com/documentation/netiqaccessmanager4/enable\\_tls\\_nam40/data/enable\\_tls\\_nam40.html#](https://www.netiq.com/documentation/netiqaccessmanager4/enable_tls_nam40/data/enable_tls_nam40.html#)).

---

**IMPORTANT:** When NetIQ Access Manager (or another single sign-on tool) is used in conjunction with your Vibe system, external users and the Guest user cannot access your Vibe site.

For more information about external users in Vibe, see [“Understanding External Users” on page 125](#).

---

Before you can access your Vibe site through NetIQ Access Manager, you must first configure specific protected resources in Access Manager to be public, as described in [Chapter 8, “Allowing Access to the Vibe Site through NetIQ Access Manager,” on page 137](#).

Furthermore, you can configure NetIQ Access Manager to work with Micro Focus Vibe in the following ways:

- ◆ Configure NetIQ Access Manager to provide single sign-on access to the Vibe site.

For more information, see [“Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

- ◆ Configure NetIQ Access Manager to allow access to iOS and Android mobile applications for Vibe.

For more information, see [“Configuring Mobile Device Access with NetIQ Access Manager”](#) on [page 114](#).

When you set up NetIQ Access Manager to work with Vibe, ensure that you specify the correct HTTP/HTTPS port numbers during the Vibe installation, as described in [“HTTP/HTTPS Ports When You Use Novell Access Manager with Vibe”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.



# 34 Internet Information Services (IIS)

You can integrate Micro Focus Vibe with Internet Information Services (IIS) to achieve Integrated Windows Authentication functionality. For more information about IIS and Integrated Windows Authentication with Vibe, see [“Configuring Single Sign-On with Internet Information Services for Windows”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.



# 35 Micro Focus GroupWise

When you use Micro Focus Vibe with GroupWise, some configuration steps are required to integrate the applications, as described in “[Configuring GroupWise for Use with Micro Focus Vibe](#)” in the *GroupWise 18 Interoperability Guide*:

- ◆ “[Configuring GroupWise for Use with Micro Focus Vibe](#)”
- ◆ “[Enabling GroupWise/Vibe Integration for GroupWise Client Users](#)”
- ◆ “[Accessing Your Vibe Site from the GroupWise Client](#)”



# 36 GroupWise Messenger

Micro Focus Vibe lets you integrate with GroupWise Messenger 2.2 and later. This integration displays users' Messenger presence information within Vibe. For information about how to configure Vibe to work with Messenger, see [“Integrating Messenger with Vibe” on page 169](#).



# 37 Skype

Micro Focus Vibe lets you integrate with Skype, so Vibe users can easily set up instant Skype meetings with other Vibe users, as described in [“Using Skype from within Vibe”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.

Before users can use Skype from within Vibe, Vibe administrators must enable this functionality. For instructions on how to set up Vibe to work with Skype, see [“Integrating Skype with Vibe”](#) on page 170.



# 38 Twitter and Other Remote Applications

Micro Focus Vibe lets you incorporate third-party products such as Twitter into Vibe, through the use of remote applications.

For information on how to incorporate existing remote applications into your Vibe site, see [Chapter 16, "Using Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site,"](#) on page 181.



# 39 YouTube

Micro Focus Vibe lets you display YouTube videos directly from the Vibe site. This functionality is enabled by default and does not need to be activated by a Vibe administrator.

For more information about how to display YouTube videos on the Vibe site, see “[Displaying YouTube Videos in a Folder Entry](#)” in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 User Guide*.



# IV Site Security

- ◆ Chapter 40, “Security Administration,” on page 329
- ◆ Chapter 41, “Security Policies,” on page 349



# 40 Security Administration

SSL (Secure Socket Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) can be used to secure the connections between your Micro Focus Vibe site and other network services.

- ♦ “Dealing with Security Scan Results” on page 329
- ♦ “Securing LDAP Synchronization” on page 330
- ♦ “Securing Email Transfer” on page 331
- ♦ “Securing HTTP Browser Connections” on page 332
- ♦ “Securing against Brute-Force Attacks with CAPTCHA” on page 340
- ♦ “Securing User Passwords” on page 341
- ♦ “Securing Web Service Connections” on page 342
- ♦ “Securing Tomcat” on page 343
- ♦ “Requiring That External Users Accept Terms and Conditions” on page 343
- ♦ “Vibe Sanitizes HTML to Prevent Security Risks” on page 344

## Dealing with Security Scan Results

Running regular security scans on your network is critical to security administration. As exemplified in [Chapter 41, “Security Policies,” on page 349](#), security is a top priority for the Vibe development team.

Occasionally, reputable security scanning software reports risks that the Vibe team considers to be less significant than reported. The following are specific examples:

- ♦ **PHP as a Security Vulnerability:** Although in many cases the presence of PHP scripts is a legitimate concern, in the case of Vibe, there is no PHP access without first authenticating through port 9443. Since access through port 9443 is secure by definition, Vibe’s PHP implementation is secure.
- ♦ **Diffie-Hellman 1024 Keys:** If you run a Nessus or equivalent security scan, you might receive a report of “Medium Risk” associated with Diffie-Hellman 1024-bit keys.

The Vibe team is aware of this and is considering increasing the key size in a future release. At this time, however, the team does not feel that this is a significant threat to Vibe installations; breaking 1024-bit keys requires computing resources that only a nation-state would have at its disposal.

If you are concerned or feel that your organization might be vulnerable to nation-state attacks, you can specify a stronger key through the Java security policy.

# Securing LDAP Synchronization

If your LDAP directory service requires a secure LDAP connection (LDAPS), you must configure Micro Focus Vibe with a root certificate. The root certificate identifies the root certificate authority (CA) for your Vibe site, which lets you generate a self-signed root certificate based on your eDirectory tree.

- ♦ “[Understanding How Vibe Uses the Root Certificate for Your eDirectory Tree](#)” on page 330
- ♦ “[Generating a Root Certificate in ConsoleOne](#)” on page 330
- ♦ “[Importing the Root Certificate into the Java Keystore](#)” on page 331

## Understanding How Vibe Uses the Root Certificate for Your eDirectory Tree

You can generate a self-signed root certificate for your eDirectory tree by using either ConsoleOne or iManager, then import the root certificate into the Java keystore file (`cacerts`) on the Vibe server to make it accessible to Vibe. The default location for the Java keystore file is:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/jre/lib/security`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\jre\lib\security`

---

**NOTE:** For iManager instructions, see “TID 3176104: How to Enable SSL for Teaming LDAP Synchronization and Authentication” in the [Novell Support Knowledgebase](http://www.novell.com/support) (<http://www.novell.com/support>). If you are using Active Directory rather than eDirectory, consult your Active Directory documentation for a procedure comparable to the one provided in “[Generating a Root Certificate in ConsoleOne](#)” on page 330.

---

## Generating a Root Certificate in ConsoleOne

- 1 On Linux or Windows, start ConsoleOne and authenticate to your eDirectory tree.
- 2 Expand the Security container, right-click the `Tree_Name` CA object, then click **Properties**.
- 3 Click **Certificates > Self Signed Certificate**.
- 4 Click **Validate** to update the certificate status, then click **OK** to close the Certificate Validation dialog box.
- 5 Click **Export** to export your eDirectory root certificate into a file that can be imported into the Java keystore file.
- 6 Click **Next** to accept the default of `No` for exporting a private key file along with the root certificate.
- 7 Select the output format for the root certificate file.  
Either DER or Base64 format can be imported into the Java keystore file.
- 8 In the **Filename** field, specify the location where you want to create the root certificate file and the filename to use, such as `SelfSignedRootCert.der`.

---

**IMPORTANT:** You need to be able to access this file from the Vibe server. Specify an accessible location or copy it to the Vibe server after you create it.

---

- 9 Click **Next** to display a summary of the options you have selected, then click **Finish** to generate the root certificate file.
- 10 Click **Cancel** to close the Self Signed Certificate properties page of the `Tree_Name` CA object.

- 11 Exit ConsoleOne.
- 12 (Conditional) If necessary, copy the root certificate file to a convenient location on the Vibe server.

## Importing the Root Certificate into the Java Keystore

- 1 On the Vibe server, make sure that you have access to the root certificate file.
- 2 Make sure that you can access the `keytool` tool:

SLES: `/opt/novell/teaming/jre/bin/keytool`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\jre\bin\keytool.exe`

For convenient use, you might need to add its location to the PATH environment variable.

- 3 Use the following command to import the root certificate into the Java keystore:

```
keytool -importcert -alias alias_name -file path_to_root_cert_file -cacerts
```

where *alias\_name* is an arbitrary name that you assign to the certificate being imported into the Java keystore (`cacerts`) and *root\_certificate\_file* is the name of the certificate file.

For example:

```
keytool -importcert -alias gw_ldap_srvr -file /certs/SSignedCert.der - cacerts
```

- 4 When prompted, enter `changeit` as the password for the Java keystore.
- 5 Enter `yes` to accept the certificate import.
- 6 Use the following command to verify that the root certificate has been imported into the Java keystore:

```
keytool -list -alias alias_name -cacerts
```

For example:

```
keytool -list -alias gw_ldap_srvr -cacerts
```

- 7 Enter the root certificate password to list the root certificate information.
- 8 Restart Vibe so that Tomcat rereads the updated Java keystore file.

You are now ready to configure your Vibe site for secure LDAP synchronization, as described in [“Adding Vibe Users from Your LDAP Directory”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Securing Email Transfer

When you install Micro Focus Vibe, you can choose whether or not the Vibe internal mail host uses TLS (Transport Layer Security) when it communicates with other SMTP mail hosts. For more information, see [“Inbound Email Security”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

If your Vibe site needs to send email messages to an email system that requires secure SMTP, such as GroupWise 2018, the Vibe site must have the same type of root certificate that is required for secure LDAP (LDAPS). If you have not already set up secure LDAP for your Vibe site, follow the instructions in [“Securing LDAP Synchronization”](#) on page 330 to set up secure SMTP for communications with your email system.

# Securing HTTP Browser Connections

Using secure HTTP (HTTPS) improves the security of your Micro Focus Vibe site. During installation, you can choose to configure your Vibe site for HTTP or HTTPS. After installation, you can force secure HTTP connections.

- ◆ [“Preparing for Secure HTTP Connections” on page 332](#)
- ◆ [“Implementing Secure HTTP Connections” on page 336](#)
- ◆ [“Forcing Secure HTTP Connections” on page 336](#)
- ◆ [“Defaulting to Secure HTTP URLs” on page 338](#)

## Preparing for Secure HTTP Connections

If you want users to access the Vibe site with a secure HTTP connection, you must configure Vibe with a root certificate and a server certificate. The root certificate identifies the root certificate authority (CA) for your Vibe site. The server certificate is customized for the specific server where Vibe is installed.

- ◆ [“Understanding How Vibe Handles Certificates” on page 332](#)
- ◆ [“Creating a New Keystore File” on page 333](#)
- ◆ [“Generating a Certificate Signing Request” on page 334](#)
- ◆ [“Submitting the Certificate Signing Request to a Certificate Authority \(CA\)” on page 334](#)
- ◆ [“Using the Certificate Signing Request to Generate a Self-Signed Certificate” on page 335](#)
- ◆ [“Importing the Certificate Files into the Vibe Keystore” on page 335](#)
- ◆ [“Replacing the Original Vibe Keystore File with Your Permanent Keystore File” on page 336](#)

## Understanding How Vibe Handles Certificates

Vibe uses a keystore to store certificates. The default keystore file that is installed along with Vibe is:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf/.keystore`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Micro Focus\Teaming\apache-tomcat\conf\.keystore`

The original certificate in the default keystore is sufficient for you to set up secure HTTP connections during initial installation, but it is self-signed and has an expiration date, so you cannot use it permanently. Soon after installation, you must obtain a permanent certificate. You can use a commercially signed certificate or a self-signed certificate. There are advantages and disadvantages to each approach.

- ◆ **Commercially Signed Certificate:** The advantage to using a certificate signed by a commercial certificate authority (CA) is that browsers automatically accept these certificates. The disadvantage is that an additional step is required, with some wait time while you obtain the commercially signed certificate.
- ◆ **Self-Signed Certificate:** The advantage to using a self-signed certificate is that it is quick and easy for you to do as the Vibe administrator. The disadvantage is that users receive a warning in the browser about the self-signed certificate the first time they access the Vibe site using secure HTTP. Users must manually accept the self-signed certificate, then the warning never occurs again.

After you obtain your permanent certificate, you can store it in the default Vibe keystore, or in a location of your own choosing. Vibe reads the location of its keystore from the following file:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf/server.xml`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\  
apache-tomcat\conf\server.xml`

If you do not want to use the default keystore location, you must update the `server.xml` file to match the location you choose for your keystore.

## Creating a New Keystore File

Rather than updating the Vibe `.keystore` file that is provided during installation, it is easier to create a new `.keystore` file, then import your signed certificate into it.

- 1 Create a new directory where you want to create the new `.keystore` file, such as a `certs` directory in a convenient location.
- 2 Change to the new `certs` directory.
- 3 Make sure that you can access the `keytool` tool:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/jre/bin/keytool`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\jre\bin\keytool.exe`

For convenient use, you might need to add its location to the `PATH` environment variable.

- 4 Use the following command to create a new `.keystore` file:

```
keytool -genkey -alias tomcat -keyalg RSA -keystore .keystore
```

- 5 When prompted, specify and confirm `changeit` as the password for the new `.keystore` file.
- 6 When you are prompted for your first and last name, specify the fully qualified DNS name of the Vibe server, such as `vibe.yourcompanyname.com`.

You are then prompted for additional information about your organization:

- ◆ Organizational unit
- ◆ Organization
- ◆ City or locality
- ◆ State or province
- ◆ Two-letter country code

- 7 (Conditional) If you are planning to obtain a your certificate from a commercial certificate authority (CA), respond to the additional information prompts with accurate information appropriate to your organization.

or

(Conditional) If you are planning to generate a self-signed certificate, press Enter to skip through the prompts.

- 8 When you are prompted whether the information you provided is correct, enter `yes`.
- 9 Press Enter to use the same password that you specified in [Step 5](#) as the key password for Tomcat.
- 10 List the files in the `certs` directory to see that a new `.keystore` file has been created.

## Do Not Change the Password for the Keystore File

The password for the `.keystore` file is hard coded and should not be changed.

The password adds no additional protection because the keystore is secured by being located in a root-owned directory, not by the password. Port 9443 Vibe and Filr Cert management are hard coded to expect the password as it is created on the system.

Changing the password breaks 9443 certificate management.

## Generating a Certificate Signing Request

- 1 Use the following command to create a certificate signing request (CSR):

```
keytool -certreq -alias tomcat -keyalg RSA
        -file certreq.csr -keystore .keystore
```

- 2 Enter the keystore password (`changeit`) to create the CSR.
- 3 List the files in the `certs` directory to see that a new `certreq.csr` file has been created along with the existing `.keystore` file.
- 4 Use the `certreq.csr` file to obtain a signed certificate.:
  - 4a To use a commercial certificate authority (CA), continue with [“Submitting the Certificate Signing Request to a Certificate Authority \(CA\)”](#) on page 334.
  - or
  - 4b To use a self-signed certificate, skip to [“Using the Certificate Signing Request to Generate a Self-Signed Certificate”](#) on page 335.

## Submitting the Certificate Signing Request to a Certificate Authority (CA)

You can find a commercial certificate authority (CA) on the Internet by searching for “certificate authority.” The process of obtaining a signed certificate varies from company to company. Each company provides instructions to assist you.

The certificate authority sends you a set of certificate files that you import into the Vibe keystore. Import these files into the same keystore that you used to create the original certificate request. You must import all of the files that you receive.

The following procedure is a guideline for importing the certificate into the Vibe keystore. Instructions might vary depending on the certificate authority.

- 1 Change to the `certs` directory where you created the root certificate file and the server certificate file.
- 2 Use the following command to import the root certificate file:

```
keytool -import -alias root -trustcacerts -keyalg RSA -keystore .keystore
        -file CertificateAuthorityCert.der
```

- 3 Enter the keystore password (`changeit`) to add the root certificate to the Vibe keystore.
- 4 Use the following command to import the SSL certificate file that you received from the certificate authority:

```
keytool -import -alias tomcat -keyalg RSA -keystore .keystore
        -file certificate_name.cer
```

- 5 Enter the keystore password (`changeit`) to add the server certificate to the Vibe keystore.

## Using the Certificate Signing Request to Generate a Self-Signed Certificate

If you do not want to wait to receive your signed certificate from a commercial certificate authority (CA), you can generate your own self-signed certificate using iManager. You must generate both a self-signed eDirectory root certificate file and a server certificate file.

For help, refer to “[Understanding the Certificate Server](#)” in the *NetIQ eDirectory Administration Guide*.

---

**NOTE:** If you are using Active Directory rather than eDirectory, consult your Active Directory documentation for comparable procedures.

---

## Importing the Certificate Files into the Vibe Keystore

After you have obtained or generated a signed certificate, you must import the certificate files into the Vibe keystore. This section describes how to import the files associated with a self-signed certificate. For information about how to import the files for a certificate that you receive from a certificate authority, see “[Submitting the Certificate Signing Request to a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)” on [page 334](#).

- 1 Change to the `certs` directory where you created the root certificate file and the server certificate file.
- 2 Use the following command to import the root certificate file:

```
keytool -import -alias root -keyalg RSA -keystore .keystore
        -file SelfSignedRootCert.der
```

- 3 Enter the keystore password (`changeit`) to add the root certificate to the Vibe keystore.
- 4 Use the following command to import the server certificate file:

```
keytool -import -alias tomcat -keyalg RSA -keystore .keystore
        -file SelfSignedServerCert.der
```

- 5 Enter the keystore password (`changeit`) to add the server certificate to the Vibe keystore. The new `.keystore` file is now ready to be added to your Vibe system.
- 6 Use the following command to verify that the server certificates have been imported into the Vibe keystore:

```
keytool -list -keystore .keystore
```

- 7 Enter the keystore password (`changeit`), then verify that the certificates have been imported. You should see the text `Your keystore contains 2 entries`, followed by information about each certificate that you imported.
- 8 Continue with “[Replacing the Original Vibe Keystore File with Your Permanent Keystore File](#)” on [page 336](#).

## Replacing the Original Vibe Keystore File with Your Permanent Keystore File

- 1 Change to the following directory on the Vibe server:

Linux:           /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf

Windows:    c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\  
                                                          apache-tomcat\conf

- 2 Rename the existing `.keystore` file to `keystorebackup`.
- 3 Copy your new `.keystore` from the `certs` directory to the `conf` directory.
- 4 Adjust the ownership and permissions of the new `.keystore` file to match those of the backed-up keystore file.
- 5 Restart Vibe so that Vibe rereads the updated keystore file.

## Implementing Secure HTTP Connections

When you run the Vibe installation program, you can choose between non-secure and secure HTTP connections, as described in “HTTP/HTTPS Ports” in “Single-server (Basic) Installation” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Forcing Secure HTTP Connections

With additional configuration, you can force users from a non-secure HTTP connection to a secure HTTPS connection.

- ♦ “Using NetIQ Access Manager to Force Secure HTTP Connections” on page 336
- ♦ “Configuring Tomcat to Redirect to Secure HTTP Connections” on page 336
- ♦ “Adding the Apache Web Server to Force Secure HTTP Connections” on page 338

## Using NetIQ Access Manager to Force Secure HTTP Connections

With Micro Focus Vibe, you can use NetIQ Access Manager to force secure HTTP connections. For more information, see “Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager” in “Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Configuring Tomcat to Redirect to Secure HTTP Connections

To reconfigure Tomcat, you must update two configuration files (both named `web.xml`) under two different directories (`ssf` and `ROOT`). The `ssf` directory name refers to SiteScape Forum, a legacy product name. The `ssf` directory contains the main Vibe web application that you use when you interact with your browser. The `ROOT` directory name refers to SiteScape File System. The `ROOT` directory contains the Vibe WebDAV application that you use to access files on a remote WebDAV server from the Vibe site.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe server with sufficient rights to edit the `web.xml` files (`root` on Linux, Administrator on Windows).
- 2 Modify the `web.xml` file under the `ssf` directory:
  - 2a Change to the directory where the `web.xml` file is located.

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/
  webapps/ssf/WEB-INF

Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\
  webapps\ssf\WEB-INF
```

- 2b** Make a backup copy of the `web.xml` file, then open the `web.xml` file in a text editor.
- 2c** Add the following security constraint at the bottom of the file, immediately above the `</web-app>` tag.

```
<security-constraint>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>Entire Application</web-resource-name>
    <url-pattern>/*</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <user-data-constraint>
    <transport-guarantee>CONFIDENTIAL</transport-guarantee>
  </user-data-constraint>
</security-constraint>
```

- 2d** (Conditional) If users access the Vibe site with Internet Explorer, find the following single line in the security constraint you just added:

```
<url-pattern>/*</url-pattern>
```

- 2e** Replace it with the following set of lines:

```
<!-- Patterns from web.xml.tpl. -->
<url-pattern>/a/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/ws/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/rss/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/atom/*</url-pattern>
<!-- Patterns from subdirectories of webapps/ssf. -->
<url-pattern>/applets/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/css/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/help/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/help_doc/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/i/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/images/*</url-pattern>
<url-pattern>/js/*</url-pattern>
```

For Internet Explorer, this list of URL patterns forces secure HTTP connections for everything except the `/s/*` pattern (document files with extensions such as `.odt` and `.doc`) and the `/ical/*` pattern (calendar `.ics` files).

- 2f** Save the modified `web.xml` file, then exit the text editor.
- 3** Modify the `web.xml` file under the `ROOT` directory:
  - 3a** Change to the directory where the `web.xml` file is located.

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/
  webapps/ROOT/WEB-INF

Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\
  webapps\ROOT\WEB-INF
```

- 3b** Make a backup copy of the `web.xml` file, then open the `web.xml` file in a text editor.

- 3c Add the following security constraint at the bottom of the file, immediately above the `</web-app>` tag.

```
<security-constraint>
  <web-resource-collection>
    <web-resource-name>Entire Application</web-resource-name>
    <url-pattern>/*</url-pattern>
  </web-resource-collection>
  <user-data-constraint>
    <transport-guarantee>CONFIDENTIAL</transport-guarantee>
  </user-data-constraint>
</security-constraint>
```

- 3d Save the modified `web.xml` file, then exit the text editor.

## Adding the Apache Web Server to Force Secure HTTP Connections

You can set up the Apache web server to front your Vibe site and use a [meta refresh](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Meta_refresh) ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Meta\\_refresh](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Meta_refresh)) to redirect users to a secure URL.

- 1 Install the Apache web server on one server.
- 2 Configure Apache to listen on port 80.
- 3 Create an `index.html` file similar to the following example:

```
<html>
<head>
  <meta http-equiv="refresh" content="0;url=https://vibe_url" />
  <title>Redirected to Secure Vibe</title>
</head>
<body>
  This page is used to redirect to the Secure Vibe server. If your
  browser does not automatically redirect you in a few seconds, click
  <a href="https://vibe_url">here</a> to go to the secure page.
</body>
</html>
```

- 4 Replace `vibe_url` with the URL to your Vibe site.
- 5 Place the `index.html` file in the document root directory of the Apache web server.

Linux: `/srv/www/htdocs`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Apache Software Foundation\Apache2.2\htdocs`

- 6 Restart the Apache web server.

## Defaulting to Secure HTTP URLs

- ♦ “Defaulting to Secure HTTP URLs in Vibe Links” on page 339
- ♦ “Defaulting to Secure HTTP URLs in Email Notifications” on page 339

## Defaulting to Secure HTTP URLs in Vibe Links

Vibe includes URLs to locations on the Vibe site in various links throughout the Vibe system. By default, the URLs are formed with HTTP rather than HTTPS. You can reconfigure Vibe to default to HTTPS for Vibe site URLs.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe server with sufficient rights to edit the `ssf-ext.properties` file (root on Linux, Administrator on Windows).
- 2 Change to the following directory:

```
Linux:      /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
           webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config
```

```
Windows:   c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
           webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config
```

- 3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.
- 4 Locate and copy the following lines:

```
adapter.web.protocol=context-http  
servlet.web.protocol=context-http  
rss.web.protocol=context-http  
ical.web.protocol=context-http  
ssfs.web.protocol=context-http  
simpleurl.web.protocol=context-http
```

- 5 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, located in the same directory with the `ssf.properties` file.
- 6 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.
- 7 Paste the lines that you copied in [Step 4](#) to the bottom of the file.
- 8 Change `http` to `https`.

```
adapter.web.protocol=context-https  
servlet.web.protocol=context-https  
rss.web.protocol=context-https  
ical.web.protocol=context-https  
ssfs.web.protocol=context-https  
simpleurl.web.protocol=context-https
```

- 9 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving.
- 10 Save the `ssf-ext.properties` file, then exit the text editor
- 11 Restart Vibe to put the change into effect.

## Defaulting to Secure HTTP URLs in Email Notifications

When an email notification is sent from Vibe, Vibe includes a URL to the location on the Vibe site where the notification was sent. By default, the URLs in email notifications are formed with `http` rather than `https`. You can reconfigure Vibe to default to `https` for Vibe site URLs.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe server with sufficient rights to edit the `ssf-ext.properties` file (root on Linux, Administrator on Windows).
- 2 Change to the following directory:



Linux: /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config

Windows: c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config

3 Open the `ssf.properties` file in a text editor.

4 Locate and copy the following lines:

```
#failed.user.authentication.history = true
#failed.user.authentication.history.max.user.size = 5
#brute.force.attack.in.last.num.seconds = 30
#brute.force.attack.num.failed.logins = 5
```

5 Close the `ssf.properties` file without saving.

6 Make a backup copy of the `ssf-ext.properties` file, located in the same directory with the `ssf.properties` file.

7 Open the `ssf-ext.properties` file in a text editor.

8 Paste and uncomment the lines that you copied in [Step 4](#) to the bottom of the file:

```
failed.user.authentication.history = true
failed.user.authentication.history.max.user.size = 5
brute.force.attack.in.last.num.seconds = 30
brute.force.attack.num.failed.logins = 5
```

9 Change the values to match your desired functionality. The function of each setting is as follows:

**failed.user.authentication.history:** When this option is set to `true` it enables tracking of failed login attempts on a per-user basis. The subsequent settings allow you to further customize the functionality.

**failed.user.authentication.history.max.user.size:** The number of failed login attempts per user of which Vibe keeps a history.

**brute.force.attack.in.last.num.seconds:** The number of seconds for which Vibe will look for the number of failed login attempts. The default value for this setting is 30 seconds.

**brute.force.attack.in.last.num.failed.logins:** The number of failed login attempts allowed per user (within the specified number of seconds) before Vibe requires all users to specify the CAPTCHA response. The default of failed login attempts allowed per user is 5.

For example, suppose `brute.force.attack.in.last.num.seconds` is set to 300 (5 minutes) and `brute.force.attack.num.failed.logins` is set to 4. If user A unsuccessfully attempts to log in to the Vibe web application 4 times within a 5-minute period, the next time any user in the Vibe system attempts to log in he or she will be required to enter a CAPTCHA response.

10 Save the `ssf-ext.properties` file, then exit the text editor

11 Restart Vibe to put the change into effect.

## Securing User Passwords

You can require that user passwords to the Vibe site meet certain criteria by enabling password complexity checking. Only locally created users and external users are affected by this setting; users whose accounts are synchronized to Vibe via LDAP are not affected.

Users' existing passwords are not forced to comply with the password policy; only when a user changes his or her password is the password policy put into effect.





# Vibe Sanitizes HTML to Prevent Security Risks

Vibe 4.0.2 and later uses the OWASP HTML Sanitizer to allow or remove HTML elements, attributes, and CSS Style properties that Micro Focus regards as “safe” or “unsafe,” as explained in the following sections:

- ◆ [“HTML Elements” on page 344](#)
- ◆ [“HTML Element Attributes” on page 344](#)
- ◆ [“Conditional HTML Element Attributes” on page 345](#)
- ◆ [“CSS Style Properties” on page 346](#)

## HTML Elements

The following HTML Elements are considered “safe.”

---

a	dfn	h4	ol	table
abbr	dir	h5	p	tbody
area	div	h6	pre	td
b	dl	hr	q	textarea
big	dt	i	s	tfoot
blockquote	em	img	samp	th
br	figcaption	input	small	thead
caption	figure	ins	span	tr
center	font	kbd	strike	tt
cite	h1	li	strong	u
code	h2	map	sub	ul
dd	h3	o	sup	var
del				

---

You can configure your Vibe site to regard additional HTML elements as “safe” by doing the following:

1. Using a text editor, add the following parameter with the elements you are adding, to the `ssf-ext.properties` file.

```
html.safe.elements=Element1,Element2,Element3
```

2. After adding or modifying the file, you must restart Apache Tomcat for your configuration changes to take effect.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Additions to the default OWASP HTML Sanitizer settings are not supported and are regarded as unsafe by Micro Focus Support.

If you want Micro Focus to consider supporting your additions in a future Vibe release, you must submit them for consideration to Micro Focus via Customer Care.

---

## HTML Element Attributes

The following HTML Element Attributes are considered safe by default

---

abbr	compact	rowspan
acronym	coords	rules
align	dir	scope
alt	face	size
axis	frame	sortable
bgcolor	haling	sorted
border	headers	style
cellpadding	height	summary
cellspacing	href (on area elements)	target
char	hspace	title
charoff	id	type
class	lang	usemap
color	longdesc	valign
colspan	name	vspace
	nowrap	width
	rel	

---

You can configure your Vibe site to regard additional HTML attributes as “safe” by doing the following:

1. Using a text editor, add the following parameter with the attributes you are adding, to the `ssf-ext.properties` file.

```
html.safe.attributes=Attribute1,Attribute2,Attribute3
```

2. After adding or modifying the file, you must restart Apache Tomcat for your configuration changes to take effect.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Additions to the default OWASP HTML Sanitizer settings are not supported and are regarded as unsafe by Micro Focus Support.

If you want Micro Focus to consider supporting your additions in a future Vibe release, you must submit them for consideration to Micro Focus via Customer Care.

---

## Conditional HTML Element Attributes

Vibe limits the following HTML elements as indicated.

### href

- ◆ Allowed on `<a/>` tags
- ◆ Allowed URL protocols are `http`, `https` and `mailto`

### src

- ◆ Allowed on `<img/>` tags
- ◆ Allowed URL protocols are `http`, `https`, `mailto` and `data`
- ◆ For embedded images, allowed mime-types are:
  - ◆ `data:image/jpeg;`
  - ◆ `data:image/png;`
  - ◆ `data:image/gif;`

## CSS Style Properties

The following is a list of CSS style properties in “style” attributes are considered “safe.”

---

-moz-border-radius	border-spacing	outline
-moz-border-radius-bottomleft	border-style	outline-color
-moz-border-radius-bottomright	border-top	outline-style
-moz-border-radius-topleft	border-top-color	outline-width
-moz-border-radius-topright	border-top-left-radius	padding
-moz-box-shadow	border-top-right-radius	padding-bottom
-moz-outline	border-top-style	padding-left
-moz-outline-color	border-top-width	padding-right
-moz-outline-style	border-width	padding-top
-moz-outline-width	box-shadow	pause
-o-text-overflow	caption-side	pause-after
-webkit-border-bottom-left-radius	color	pause-before
-webkit-border-bottom-right-radius	cue	pitch
-webkit-border-radius	cue-after	pitch-range
-webkit-border-radius-bottom-left	cue-before	quotes
-webkit-border-radius-bottom-right	direction	radial-gradient()
-webkit-border-radius-top-left	display	rect()
-webkit-border-radius-top-right	elevation	repeating-linear-gradient()
-webkit-border-top-left-radius	empty-cells	repeating-radial-gradient()
-webkit-border-top-right-radius	float	rgb()
-webkit-box-shadow	font	rgba()
azimuth	font-family	richness
background	font-size	speak
background-attachment	font-stretch	speak-header
background-color	font-style	speak-numeral
background-image	font-variant	speak-punctuation
background-position	font-weight	speech-rate
background-repeat	height	stress
border	image()	table-layout
border-bottom	letter-spacing	text-align"
border-bottom-color	line-height	text-decoration
border-bottom-left-radius	linear-gradient()	text-indent
border-bottom-right-radius	list-style	text-overflow
border-bottom-style	list-style-image	text-shadow
border-bottom-width	list-style-position	text-transform
border-collapse	list-style-type	text-wrap
border-color	margin	unicode-bidi
border-left	margin-bottom	vertical-align
border-left-color	margin-left	voice-family
border-left-style	margin-right	volume
border-left-width	margin-top	white-space
border-radius	max-height	width
border-right	max-width	word-spacing
border-right-color	min-height	word-wrap
border-right-style	min-width	z-index
border-right-width		

---

You can configure your Vibe site to regard additional CSS Style Properties as “safe” by doing the following:

1. Using a text editor, add the following parameter with the properties you are adding, to the `ssf-ext.properties` file.

```
css.safe.properties=Property1,Property2,Property3
```

2. After adding or modifying the file, you must restart Apache Tomcat for your configuration changes to take effect.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Additions to the default OWASP HTML Sanitizer settings are not supported and are regarded as unsafe by Micro Focus Support.

If you want Micro Focus to consider supporting your additions in a future Vibe release, you must submit them for consideration to Micro Focus via Customer Care.

---



# 41 Security Policies

- ♦ “Securing the Vibe Data” on page 349
- ♦ “Securing the Vibe Software” on page 350
- ♦ “Securing the Vibe Site” on page 351

## Securing the Vibe Data

- ♦ “Limiting Physical Access to Vibe Servers” on page 349
- ♦ “Protecting the Vibe File Repository” on page 349
- ♦ “Protecting the Vibe Database” on page 349

### Limiting Physical Access to Vibe Servers

Servers where Micro Focus Vibe data resides should be kept physically secure, so unauthorized persons cannot gain access to the server consoles.

### Protecting the Vibe File Repository

The Micro Focus Vibe file repository contains unencrypted data. See “[Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations](#)” in “[Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide* for details about how Vibe uses the local file system for data storage. These directories contain uploaded information in various formats (both native file formats and potentially a number of rendered formats (such as cached HTML versions of files, thumbnails, and RSS feeds) as well as archived data. These files are managed exclusively by the Vibe application software.

For data security, encrypted file systems should be used on servers where Vibe data resides. Only Vibe administrators should have direct access to Vibe data.

### Protecting the Vibe Database

During installation, you select the encryption method that you want to use for the Vibe database, as described in “[Database Encryption Algorithm](#)” in “[Single-server \(Basic\) Installation](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*. Three levels of encryption strength are available. The encryption algorithm cannot be changed after you have started using the Vibe database, so be sure to select the level of encryption appropriate for your Vibe site during initial installation.

Depending on your local security guidelines, you might want to encrypt the database connections between the Vibe software and the Vibe database. SSL-encrypted data between the Vibe application and the database server imposes a performance penalty because of the increased overhead of encrypting and decrypting the retrieved data.

Support for this is highly dependent on the database client drivers and JDBC connector support, and on how you are configuring your database client and server certificates. You should check with your database vendor on how to set up SSL connections on both the client and server sides of the

connection. You might need to modify the JDBC URL during installation, as described in “[Database Location](#)” in “[Single-server \(Basic\) Installation](#)” in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*. For example, for MySQL, you might add `useSSL=true&requireSSL=true` to the `options` part of the JDBC URL.

## Securing the Vibe Software

- ♦ “[Protecting the Vibe Configuration Files](#)” on page 350
- ♦ “[Protecting the Vibe Properties File](#)” on page 350
- ♦ “[Protecting Log Files](#)” on page 350
- ♦ “[Protecting the Vibe Process on Linux](#)” on page 351

### Protecting the Vibe Configuration Files

The Micro Focus Vibe configuration file (`installer.xml`) for the Vibe software should be protected from tampering. It contains user name and password information for Vibe features that interact with other programs.

The initial `installer.xml` is created in the same directory where the Vibe Installation program is run. Backup copies are stored in:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/teaming-config`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\teaming-config`

### Protecting the Vibe Properties File

The Vibe properties file (`ssf.properties`) should be protected from tampering. Like the Vibe configuration file, it contains user name and password information, as well as many other details about your Vibe site configuration. The Vibe properties file (`ssf.properties`) is located in the following directory:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/  
webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/classes/config`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\classes\config`

### Protecting Log Files

The log files for Vibe and Tomcat should be protected against access by unauthorized persons. Log files contain very detailed information about your Vibe system and Vibe users.

The Vibe log file is available in the following directory of your Vibe installation:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/WEB-INF/logs`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\  
webapps\ssf\WEB-INF\logs`

The Tomcat log file is available in the following directory of your Vibe installation:

Linux: /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs

Windows: c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\logs

## Protecting the Vibe Process on Linux

On Linux, Vibe is installed to run as a user other than the Linux `root` user. See [“Identifying Vibe's Linux User and Group”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Securing the Vibe Site

- ♦ [“Configuring a Proxy Server”](#) on page 351
- ♦ [“Setting the Vibe Administrator Password”](#) on page 351
- ♦ [“Setting Up SSL Connections”](#) on page 351
- ♦ [“Shortening the Vibe Session Timeout”](#) on page 352
- ♦ [“Using Role-Based Access Control”](#) on page 352
- ♦ [“Monitoring Inbound Email”](#) on page 352
- ♦ [“Preventing Web Services Access”](#) on page 352
- ♦ [“Controlling RSS Feeds”](#) on page 352
- ♦ [“Securing Mirrored Folders”](#) on page 353
- ♦ [“Securing the Vibe Site against XSS”](#) on page 353

## Configuring a Proxy Server

Your Micro Focus Vibe system should be located behind your firewall. If Vibe users want to access the Vibe site from outside your firewall, you should set up a proxy server outside your firewall to provide access. You can use NetIQ Access Manager to protect your Vibe site, as described in [“Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Setting the Vibe Administrator Password

The Vibe site is initially installed to allow administrator access by using the user name `admin` and the password `admin`. The Vibe administrator password should be changed immediately after installation, as described in [“Accessing Your Basic Vibe Site as the Site Administrator”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Setting Up SSL Connections

All communication with the Vibe site should be configured to use SSL connections, as described in:

- ♦ [“Securing Email Transfer”](#) on page 331
- ♦ [“Securing LDAP Synchronization”](#) on page 330
- ♦ [“Securing HTTP Browser Connections”](#) on page 332

## Shortening the Vibe Session Timeout

By default, if a user's Vibe session is idle for four hours (240 minutes), Vibe logs the idle user out. For increased security for your Vibe site, you can make the session timeout shorter, as described in [“Changing the Vibe Session Timeout”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Using Role-Based Access Control

Vibe controls all access to folders and entries by using role-based access controls. Vibe is intended to be used primarily for the sharing of information, so many default access rights tend toward allowing at least universal read access. For information on setting access controls for your Vibe site, see:

- ♦ [Chapter 2, “Planning and Controlling User Access to Workspaces and Folders,”](#) on page 21 in this guide
- ♦ [“Controlling Access”](#) in the *Micro Focus Vibe 4.0.6 Advanced User Guide*

## Monitoring Inbound Email

You can configure Vibe to receive email and post the messages as entries in a folder, as described in [“Planning to Enable Inbound Email”](#) in [“Single-server \(Basic\) Installation”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*. Because email is inherently non-secure, there is no way to be sure that the senders are who they claim to be. Entries posted by email include the email address of the sender to alert Vibe users about the origin of the postings.

## Preventing Web Services Access

The default Vibe installation allows authenticated access via web services, as described in [“Configuring Web Services”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*. If you are not using web services, you can disable them.

## Controlling RSS Feeds

Because RSS readers are outside of the authentication Vibe system, the URL provided by Vibe for an RSS feed embeds some authentication information about the user. This means that the RSS URL must be protected and not shared between users. For this reason, RSS is not recommended for use on highly sensitive data. If necessary, you can disable RSS feeds for your Vibe site, as described in [“Managing RSS Feeds”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*.

## Securing Mirrored Folders

Mirrored folders make files that are stored on a file system available to users on the Micro Focus Vibe site. Two levels of security are provided for mirrored folder access:

- ◆ When you create mirrored folder resource drivers, as described in [“Configuring Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers”](#) in [“Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration”](#) in the *Vibe 4.0.6 Installation Guide*, you can choose read-only access or read/write access. In addition, you can identify specific Vibe users and groups that are allowed access to the mirrored folder resource drivers.
- ◆ When you set up the mirrored folders on the Vibe site, as described in [Chapter 17, “Setting Up Mirrored Folders,”](#) on page 187 in this guide, you can set access controls on the Mirrored File folder.

## Securing the Vibe Site against XSS

Cross-site scripting (XSS) is a client-side computer attack that is aimed at web applications. Because XSS attacks can pose a major security threat, Micro Focus Vibe contains a built-in security filter that protects against XSS vulnerabilities. This security filter is enabled by default.

The following sections describe the types of content that the security filter blocks from the Vibe site, where exactly it blocks it from entering, and how you can disable the security filter or enable specific users to bypass the security filter.

- ◆ [“Understanding What Content Is Not Permitted”](#) on page 353
- ◆ [“Understanding Where the Content Is Not Permitted”](#) on page 353
- ◆ [“Listing All XSS Threats in Your System”](#) on page 353
- ◆ [“Disabling the XSS Security Filter”](#) on page 354

## Understanding What Content Is Not Permitted

By default, the XSS security filter in Vibe is very strict, and does not allow users to add certain types of content. For example, the following content is not permitted:

- ◆ HTML that contains JavaScript
- ◆ Forms
- ◆ Frames
- ◆ Objects
- ◆ Applets

## Understanding Where the Content Is Not Permitted

The type of content discussed in [“Understanding What Content Is Not Permitted”](#) on page 353 is filtered by Vibe in the following areas:

- ◆ Text and HTML fields in entries and folders
- ◆ Uploaded HTML files

## Listing All XSS Threats in Your System

Vibe lets you run an XSS report that lists XSS threats that are contained in your Vibe system. For more information, see [“XSS Report”](#) on page 305.

## Disabling the XSS Security Filter

---

**IMPORTANT:** Because of the serious nature of XSS attacks, we strongly recommend that you do not disable the XSS security filter for the entire site. If there are certain users who need to upload information to the Vibe site, you can grant those users access to bypass the XSS security filter, as described in [“Enabling Users to Bypass the XSS Security Filter”](#) on page 224.

---

It is possible to disable the XSS security filter for the entire site for each of these areas by copying the appropriate lines from the `ssf.properties` file, pasting them into the `ssf-ext.properties` file, then changing the values of the lines to `false`. The lines in the `ssf.properties` file that are responsible for enabling and disabling the XSS security filter are:

- ◆ `xss.check.enable`
- ◆ `xss.content.filter.file.extensions`

# V Appendixes

- ◆ [Appendix A, “Managing Product Improvement,” on page 357](#)



# A Managing Product Improvement

**Path to Configuration Dialog:** Vibe Administration Console > **Management** > **Product Improvement**

The first time you log in to Vibe, after changing the admin user's password, a dialog displays that explains that the purpose of the Vibe data collection system is to help improve the Vibe product.

---

**IMPORTANT:** Micro Focus collects nothing that identifies your organization, your data, or your users.

---

## Accessing the Product Improvement Dialog

You can see what is collected, and you can modify, disable, or re-enable the data collection system by using the Product Improvement dialog.

- 1 Open the Vibe Administration Console as the Admin user.
- 2 Click **Product Improvement**.

The data collection process runs for the first time when a Vibe server has been running for 24 hours. Thereafter, it runs weekly.

After the initial run, a **View the information collected** link displays in the dialog that lets you download the `.json` file created by the collection process.

To see the information collected, open the downloaded file in an application such as WordPad.

## About the Data That Is Collected for Product Improvement

As already mentioned, Micro Focus collects nothing that identifies your organization, your data, or your users.

The items in the `.json` file are mostly self-explanatory, but the following points might be helpful to understanding file content.

The data is divided in three sections:

- ♦ **Installation Identifier:** This is a unique string generated for each appliance. Its sole purpose is to let Micro Focus track usage and statistics for a specific appliance over time.
- ♦ **Tier 1:** This section includes the product, version and build, license type, and number of users.
- ♦ **Tier 2:** This section includes additional information about the installation, most of which is self-explanatory.
  - ♦ The **user** information doesn't include the LDAP user count because that is already available under the Tier1.
  - ♦ The user count numbers do not include system user accounts, such as `admin`, `_filesyncagent`, and so on.
  - ♦ The group count numbers do not include system groups, such as `allusers`, `allxextusers`, and so on.

- ◆ `workspaceCount` does not include system workspaces, such as the `/Home` workspace and so on.
- ◆ The mobile device type is derived from the value of the description field associated with the device information captured in the system. Any descriptions that don't match one of the pre-defined keywords are included as `other`.

## How Micro Focus Receives Product Improvement Data

After the weekly data collection process concludes, the system creates a `.json` data file and sends it to `ftp://productfeedback.Novell.com/stats/Vibe`.

If the FTP transfer is unsuccessful, the system attempts to send it again during the next weekly cycle. No send attempts are made outside of the weekly cycles.

Data files are sent through a regular non-secure FTP connection. File contents are not encrypted because no sensitive or identifying information is included.